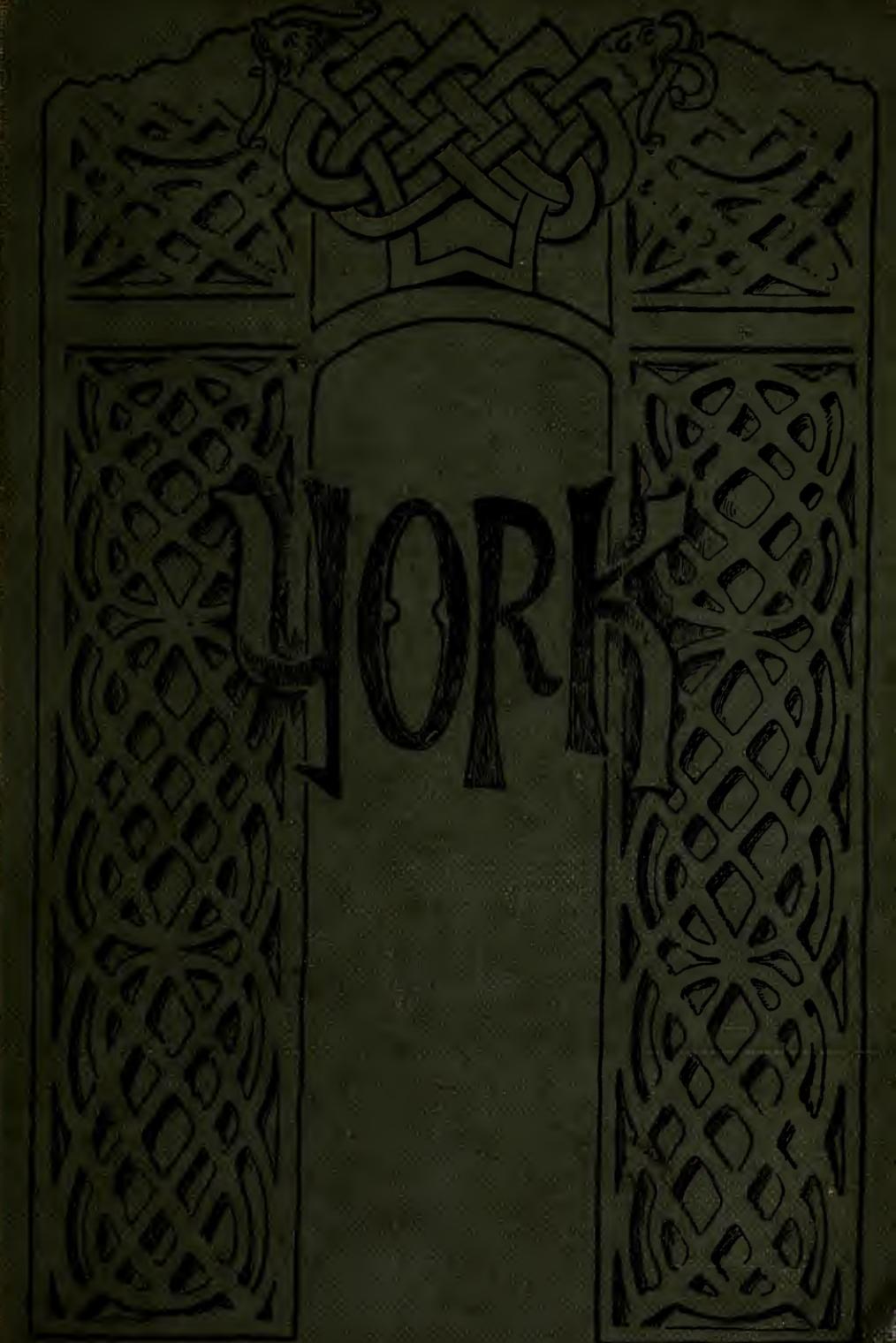


WORK



**E. K. WATERHOUSE.**





F.S. Ramsbotham

Aug. 1906

**YORK AND DISTRICT.**



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2015

<https://archive.org/details/historicalscient00brit>



*Photo: J. H. Walker.*

YORK MINSTER,  
FROM THE SOUTH-EAST.



HISTORICAL  
AND  
SCIENTIFIC SURVEY  
OF  
YORK AND DISTRICT

PREPARED FOR THE 75TH MEETING  
OF THE  
BRITISH ASSOCIATION, 1906.

EDITED BY  
GEORGE A. AUDEN, M.A., M.D. (CANTAB.).

YORK : JOHN SAMPSON.  
LONDON : SIMPKIN, MARSHALL & CO., LTD.  
1906.

*Printed by*  
*Delittle, Fenwick & Co., York.*

## PREFACE.

---

THE addition of yet another to the already considerable number of guides and histories of the City of York would seem altogether unnecessary if there did not appear to be some very special reason for the undertaking. The visit of the British Association to the cradle of its infancy, under the auspices of the Philosophical Society which presided as a tutelary *Lucina* at its birth, seems, however, to be a fitting opportunity for an attempt to deal somewhat comprehensively with a few of the varied interests centreing in the city, which either have received no attention hitherto, or have not been included within the limits of a single volume. This aspect of the work may be urged in extenuation of what some may consider the undue length to which several of the articles have attained, which in some instances goes beyond the scope of a handbook. The same aim has guided the choice of the photographs which illustrate the principal epochs in the history of York, and which represent, where possible, the less familiar aspect of the subjects to which they refer.

In scheme the book is necessarily eclectic, for while an attempt has been made to co-ordinate the subjects chosen, much of very real interest has been unavoidably excluded. More particularly is it to be regretted that no space could be found for the story of that humanitarian movement which, spreading from York in the latter part of the eighteenth century, bore such glorious fruit in the abolition of slavery and in the humane treatment of the insane, a movement which-

in no small measure received its initial energy from the visit to York of the saintly John Woolman.

The design on the cover, for which we are indebted to Miss M. F. Taylor (Paris), merits some explanation. The ornamentation of the side panels is copied from the shaft of a pre-Norman cross brought from Wakefield, and now to be seen in the York Museum ; the interlaced work uniting the panels above is taken from one of the initial letters in the Anglo-Saxon Gospels preserved in the Minster Library. The lettering is that of a contemporary Anglo-Saxon manuscript.

The accompanying map, taken from Mr. R. H. Skaife's splendid archaeological map of York, published in 1864, is intended to illustrate the archaeological features dealt with in the text. It has not been thought necessary to insert the few changes made in the streets since that date.

The varied detail of the contents has made an index impossible, but it is hoped that the introduction of cross-references in the text will to some extent supply the deficiency, while the bibliographies appended to many of the articles may prove useful to those who wish for further information. The list of important manuscripts preserved in York, although in part obtainable elsewhere, has been included for the convenience of students of history and economics.

My thanks are due to all those who have given so much substantial help in the preparation of this work, more especially to Mr. Hugh Richardson, of Bootham School, whose advice and generous assistance in reading the proofs has been of the greatest value.

# CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTORY . . . . .	ix.—xvi.
 PART I.  	
I. PRE-HISTORIC ARCHÆOLOGY. George A. Auden, M.A., M.D. Cantab.	1—14
II. YORK DURING THE ROMAN OCCUPATION. H. M. Platnauer, B.Sc. Lond.	15—27
III. YORK DURING THE ANGLO-DANISH PERIOD. H. M. Platnauer, B.Sc. Lond.	28—41
IV. YORK SINCE THE NORMAN CONQUEST. W. Wallace Hargrove.	42—59
V. OLD STREETS AND BUILDINGS. W. Willis, F.R. Hist. S.	60—78
VI. THE FORTIFICATIONS OF YORK. T. P. Cooper.	79—93
VII. THE MINSTER AND CHURCHES OF YORK. George Benson, A.R.I.B.A.	94—127
VIII. MONASTIC ESTABLISHMENTS IN YORK. Rev. J. Solloway, D.D. Oxon.	128—211
IX. THE MERCHANT ADVENTURERS' GILD. Miss Sellers.	212—227
X. BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCHES OF EMINENT CITIZENS. R. H. Skaife.	228—242
XI. THE MINSTER LIBRARY. Rev. Canon Watson, M.A. Cantab.	243—245
XII. THE IMPORTANT HISTORICAL MSS. IN YORK.	246—247
XIII. PLATE AND INSIGNIA IN THE CITY. Very Rev. A. Purey-Cust, D.D., F.S.A.	248—254

## PART II.

	PAGE
XIV. GEOLOGY. Rev. W. Johnson, B.A., B.Sc. Lond.	259—265
XV. BOTANY	
General Survey.	
W. G. Smith, B.Sc. St. Andrews,	Ph.D. Munich.
Phanerogamic Flora and Vascular	266—275
Cryptogams.	H. J. Wilkinson.
Cryptogamic Flora (non-vascular).	275—293
W. Ingham, B.A. Lond.	294—314
XVI. VERTEBRATA.	
Mammalia, Aves, Reptilia.	
Oxley Grabham, M.A. Cantab., M.B.O.U.	315—332
Pisces.	Riley Fortune, F.Z.S.
	332—339
XVII. INSECTA.	
Coleoptera.	Rev. W. C. Hey, M.A. Oxon.
Lepidoptera.	340—342
	S. Walker.
	343—356
XVIII. MOLLUSCA. Rev. T. A. Brode, B.A. Lond.	
	357—361
XIX. METEOROLOGICAL NOTES.	
	J. C. Clark, B.A., B.Sc. Lond.
	362—365

---

## ILLUSTRATIONS.

	Frontispiece. PAGE
York Minster .. .. .. ..	..
Neolithic Implements found in York.. ..	.. 4
Clifford's Tower, upon pre-Roman Earthwork ..	.. 15
Camp of Eburacum .. .. .. ..	.. 24
The Multangular Roman Tower .. .. ..	.. 25
The Old Ouse Bridge and St. William's Chapel ..	.. 75
Castle of the Old Baile, York .. .. .. ..	.. 89
St. Mary's Abbey .. .. .. ..	.. 143
Well Borings .. .. .. .. ..	.. 261
Map to Illustrate the Archæological Features of York	{ End of Book.

## SKETCH OF THE YORK FOUNDERS OF THE BRITISH ASSOCIATION.

ABRIDGED FROM A PAPER READ IN 1881 BY  
THE VENERABLE ARCHDEACON HEY.

YORK was the birthplace of the British Association. At the close of its first meeting in 1831, Sir Roderick Murchison said :—“To this city, as the cradle of the Association, we shall ever look back with gratitude, and whether we meet hereafter on the banks of the Isis, the Cam, or the Forth, to this spot we shall proudly revert, and hail with delight the time at which, in our periodical revolutions, we shall return to the point of our first attraction.” Now, when none of those who took part in the foundation of the Association survive, and when personal reminiscences of its early days are fading away into traditions, it seems fitting to gather together some brief records of its origin, to point out its connection with the Yorkshire Philosophical Society, to state the objects for which it was founded, and the means which it has pursued for the attainment of those objects.

About one mile from Kirbymoorside, on the road to Helmsley, an old stone quarry may be observed, in which a slight aperture is all that now remains of the famous Kirkdale Cave. This obscure spot supplied the motive power which brought into existence first the Yorkshire Philosophical Society, and then more remotely the British Association itself. The Kirkdale Cave was the first to be scientifically examined of the many ossiferous caverns which have now thrown so much light upon the physical condition of this

country in pre-historic times. Its floor was covered with a thick deposit of earthy sediment, and in that sediment were large quantities of bones, described by Dr. Buckland in his great work, *Reliquiae Diluvianæ*, as being those of the hyaena, lion, tiger, bear, elephant, rhinoceros and many other animals, as also those of birds. A considerable quantity of these remains fell into the hands of three York gentlemen, Mr. James Atkinson (see page 228), Mr. William Salmond, F.G.S., and Mr. Anthony Thorpe, who, considering that such treasures when dispersed in private cabinets lose much of their value, concurred in a resolution to unite them in one collection as a basis of a Yorkshire Museum of Natural History and Antiquities.\* Thus the Yorkshire Philosophical Society came into existence.

The first suggestion for the formation of the British Association was made by Sir David Brewster (then Dr. Brewster) in a letter to Mr. John Phillips, one of the secretaries of the Yorkshire Philosophical Society. The suggestion was cordially adopted, and acted upon with energetic promptitude; the invitations to the first meeting of the Association being issued in the name of our Council, and the premises of the Society formed the place of gathering. The first President of the British Association was the President of the Yorkshire Philosophical Society, Lord Milton (afterwards Lord FitzWilliam). Its first Vice-President was our Vice-President, Mr. William Vernon Harcourt. Its first Treasurer was our Treasurer, Mr. Jonathan Gray. Its first Secretaries were our Secretaries, Mr. John Phillips and Mr. William Gray. To attempt even the briefest sketch of the eminent men who were present at the first meeting would be absolutely impossible; amongst them were Brewster, Buckland, Whewell,

---

\* A scheme for a municipal museum was proposed to the Corporation in 1743 by John Burton, M.D., F.S.A. (see p. 229), who offered to the city a valuable collection of charters and other antiquities, if a suitable repository should be found. The offer was declined and the collections lost.—ED.

Daubeny, Murchison, John Dalton, Lindley, and many more well known in the scientific world. This brief record must confine itself to those amongst the founders of the Association who were connected with York.

The personal appearance of Charles William, third Earl FitzWilliam in the Peerage of England, seemed to indicate the country clergyman rather than what he really was—the most influential nobleman in Yorkshire. In 1830, the year before that in which he presided over the first meeting of the British Association, he lost his wife, to whose death, when entertaining the members of the Association in the De Grey Rooms on the occasion of their second visit to this City in 1846, he alluded in simple and touching words. Lord FitzWilliam was not a practical labourer in the field of science, although he possessed an intelligent acquaintance with several of its branches.

The name of William Vernon Harcourt, whom Dean Peacock styled “the law-giver and proper founder of the British Association,” is entitled to our highest honour and our deepest gratitude. He was one of the founders of the Yorkshire Philosophical Society, and its first President. To his exertions it is indebted for the land upon which the Museum stands, and for a large part of those gardens which now form one of the chief ornaments of our City. What is now the Museum Gardens was then a waste piece of ground called the Manor Shore. The ancient ruins of St. Mary’s Abbey were defiled by the vicinity of pigstyes and cowsheds, and told of desolation and neglect. It was on Mr. Harcourt’s application, supported by the influence of his father, the Archbishop, that the Crown made the original grant of this land to twelve trustees, of whom he himself was the last survivor, for the purposes of the Society. Under his auspices the subscription to the Museum Building Fund was commenced, which ultimately reached nearly £9,000. The present building, begun in 1830, was in 1831 in a state of sufficient completeness to receive within its

walls the members of the British Association. William Venables Vernon, for this was his name at first, was born in 1789 at Sudbury, Derbyshire, close by the ancient home of the Vernon family, in the rectory house then occupied by his father Edward Venables Vernon, who became successively Bishop of Carlisle and Archbishop of York. The name of Harcourt was assumed by the whole family except one son (the late Granville Vernon), when the Archbishop succeeded to the estate and honours of Nuneham, though not to the title of his relative Earl Harcourt. William was the fourth son in a family of sixteen. It was the boast of the Archbishop that he was the sole instructor of his elder sons until they were prepared to become scholars of Westminster School, and that his sons thus educated, when admitted into College, appeared as captains of their respective elections. William, like his brothers, had the advantage of his father's tuition, but he had not, like them, the advantage of a public school education. For family reasons he was sent to sea, and served five years as a midshipman in the Royal Navy, but a nautical life was never much to Mr. Harcourt's taste, and on the death of his elder brother he successfully urged his father to allow him to become a clergyman. At Rose Castle, the residence of the Bishop of Carlisle, he formed a friendship with Isaac Milner, Dean of Carlisle, a man of remarkable mental powers, successively Professor of Chemistry and Mathematics in the University of Cambridge, who imbued him with a taste for the study of chemistry to which he clung through his subsequent life. After his admission to Christ Church, Oxford, this taste was encouraged by Dr. Kidd, then Professor of Chemistry, and at a later period by intercourse with Dr. Wollaston and Sir Humphrey Davy. At the same time, from Dr. Buckland and the brothers Conybeare, Mr. Harcourt acquired a settled partiality for the advancing science of geology. In 1811 he began his duties as a clergyman at Bishopthorpe, close to his father's residence, where

he constructed a laboratory and employed his leisure time in chemical analysis. When the circumstances already noted led to the formation of the Yorkshire Philosophical Society, he took an active part in its organisation, and, as President, used all the means in his power to extend its influence and direct its energies. At the first meeting of the British Association his was the master mind which gave order and symmetry to the whole undertaking. The address in which, as Vice-President, he set forth the objects and plan of the Association, bears evidence of sagacity and constructive power in every line ; it has been retained to the present day as the standing manifesto of the objects of the Association. "I propose," said he, "that we should found a British Association for the advancement of science, having for its objects to give a stronger impulse and more systematic direction to scientific enquiry, to obtain a greater degree of national attention to the objects of science, and a removal of those disadvantages which impede its progress, and to promote the intercourse of the cultivators of science with one another and with foreign philosophers."

The work of Mr. Harcourt in connection with the British Association was not limited to its foundation ; for many years he held the responsible office of General Secretary, and in 1839, when the Association met at Birmingham, it was under his presidency.

There is no space in this brief memoir to give any detailed account of the philosophical investigations of Mr. Harcourt, a notice of which was presented to the British Association by Professor Stokes. At one time he was employed in investigating the action of long-continued heat on minerals, availing himself for this purpose of the furnaces of Low Moor Ironworks. For a long period he studied the refractive powers of glass formed of different materials, and its adaptability to the construction of lenses.

The Wilberforce School for the 'Blind, the adjoining National School, the Training Schools for Masters and

Mistresses at Ripon, the Castle Howard Reformatory, the re-modelling of St. Peter's School and the re-building of the County Hospital, all attest the enlightened and practical philanthropy of William Vernon Harcourt. In 1861 he succeeded, by the death of his elder brother, to the patrimonial estates in Oxfordshire, and henceforth felt himself bound to reside at Newnham. His death occurred on the 2nd of April, 1871, in the eighty-second year of his age.

So early as 1824, when the geology of Yorkshire was beginning to attract public notice, Dr. William Smith, for some years land agent to his friend and patron Sir John Johnstone of Hackness, lectured in York. Professor Sedgwick has described him as the father of English Geology,\* and not improperly so, as he was the first to give any definite arrangement to the strata of England, and the first to enunciate the principle that the strata are to be identified not so much by their lithological character as by their fossil organic remains. When Dr. Smith came to York he brought with him an orphan nephew, who assisted him in hanging his maps and displaying his diagrams. This nephew was John Phillips, and from that time forth he was taken by the hand by Mr. Harcourt, and by Dr. Goldie and Mr. Copsie, the Secretaries of the Philosophical Society. York first discovered his merits, and York was the home which he loved most truly to the last day of his life. His permanent connection with the City arose out of his appointment in 1826 to be keeper of the Museum, then lodged in a small house. The Abbey Gatehouse, now known as St. Mary's Lodge, was then in a ruinous condition, after its occupation

---

\* This title has also been applied with equal appropriateness to another student of Nature, long connected with York, viz., Dr. Martin Lister (see pp. 235 and 320), whose paper was read before the Royal Society, 12th March, 1683(4): "An ingenious proposal for a new sort of Maps of Countrys, together with Tables of Lands and Clays." Davies—*Yorks. Archæol. Journ.*, Vol. II., p. 316.—ED.

as a public-house. Having secured the house by a lease, Mr. Phillips proceeded to restore it, and adapt it for his own residence. Here he lived with his sister for many years, observing, studying, and writing, and becoming a mainspring of intellectual activity in York. By degrees, as his great attainments and eminent ability as a lecturer became more widely known, distant engagements pressed upon him. For several years he held the office of Assistant Secretary to the British Association. He was for some time Professor of Geology in King's College, London. Subsequently Oxford crowned his honours by conferring on him a Degree, electing him Honorary Fellow of Magdalen College, and seating him in the geological chair of Buckland, when he reluctantly abandoned his York home and made his permanent residence in the house provided for him as guardian of the University Museum. In estimating the character of John Phillips, it should be borne in mind that, whilst he was prominent as a man of science, as a geologist and palaeontologist, he was at the same time a man of the widest general culture. Considering the irregular character of his education, the extent of his classical knowledge was remarkable. It has been already said that astronomy was one of his favourite pursuits. His attention was also constantly given to meteorology. During a period of forty-seven years he wrote and published, and more than that, thought and worked, contrived and adapted, observed and recorded. Trained in habits of rigid induction, he was cautious in accepting new theories, whilst candid and not inaccessible to conviction.

Our notice of the York Founders of the British Association would be incomplete without reference to one who was associated with Professor Phillips as one of its secretaries at the first York meeting, and held the office of Treasurer to the Yorkshire Philosophical Society up to the time of his death. William Gray was the only son of Jonathan Gray, first Treasurer of the British Association, an Alderman of York, much

respected for his personal character, and perhaps slightly dreaded for the pungency of his wit. He was the grandson of William Gray, a man whose name deserves to be held in remembrance as the earnest and munificent promoter of every good work, the friend of William Wilberforce, the firm ally of that little band which broke down the cruel system prevailing in our lunatic asylums ; one of the first founders of and workers in our Sunday Schools. He outlived his son Jonathan, and died in 1845 in his ninety-fifth year. William Gray the younger was a man who through life was engaged in active professional duties. For some years he was a member of the Corporation, and served the office of Lord Mayor. Through life he was a lover of science and a cultivator of literature.

Such were some of the York men whose names are most prominent as founders of the British Association ; others worked with them whose names deserve to be remembered by the members of the Yorkshire Philosophical Society, although they were less prominently connected with the British Association. Amongst these were Thomas Allis, to whom we are indebted for the collection of skeletons which forms so remarkable a feature of our Museum, and who presented to it the splendid collection of British lepidoptera made by his son ; John Ford, for many years our Curator of Meteorology ; in the department of antiquities Charles Wellbeloved, the historian of Roman York ; his learned son-in-law, John Kenrick ; and Robert Davies, for some years custodian of the City Municipal Records, and the historian of mediæval York.

## PART I.

“We were hinted by the occasion, not catched  
the opportunity to write of old things, or intrude  
upon the antiquary.”

SIR THOMAS BROWNE (*Hydriotaphia.*)



## PRE-HISTORIC ARCHÆOLOGY.

GEORGE A. AUDEN, M.A., M.D.

SITUATE upon the northern of the two great crescents of morainic debris which sweep across the level valley of the Ouse, the position occupied to-day by the City of York has always afforded a site for human habitation at once admirably protected and abundantly supplied with the necessities of life. To the south and east in primitive times lay a wide expanse of marshy land, only a few feet above sea level, draining itself into the Ouse and the Foss, whose union marked the limit of tidal water and enclosed a tongue of land which was bounded to the north by the vast forest known in historic times as the Forest of Galtres. Flint flakes and finished stone implements scattered upon the surface of the gravel along the banks of the Ouse at Overton and Naburn, attest a settlement of this area in Neolithic times, and seem to warrant the assumption that the rich hunting grounds and fisheries of the valley offered attractions to the dwellers upon the less fertile but flint-bearing regions of the chalk wolds of the East Riding. The discovery of numerous flakes of native flint in association with worked cores, and, occasionally, with well-finished implements, upon the surface of the plough-land, and where the gravel has been dug at Fulford, indicates a local centre of the flint-working industry, which may with some probability be taken to connote the existence of a primitive form of commerce or exchange, for no natural flint is to be found nearer than the foot of the Wolds. In the same way, flint chippings and implements are found in large numbers scattered upon the moors and cultivated uplands in the neighbourhood of

Halifax, Keighley and Bradford, the source of which has been, in all probability, the flint-bearing chalk of the East Riding, some sixty miles distant.\*

Dr. Sophus Müller† has recently proved the existence of routes of communication across the country in Denmark during the Stone and Bronze Ages, and there can be little doubt that definite lines of communication existed between the eastern and western portions of Yorkshire in the period under consideration. The finished weapons of the Wolds, and perhaps also the flint nodules, may have formed a valuable commercial commodity,‡ but it is an interesting fact that, except for the rougher kinds of tools, such as hammerstones, hand weapons, and some of the larger axes, the native chalk nodules are not well adapted for the manufacture of implements. The material is not sufficiently pure for the finer types, and the majority of arrowheads, knives, borers, scrapers, etc., appear to have been made from foreign flints, such as the erratic boulders and flints derived from the bed of the North Sea, and left by the great Scandinavian Ice-sheet along the eastern coast of Yorkshire, which have also afforded material for implements of a similar type in Denmark and the neighbouring countries. Some of them, however, are made from flints which must have been imported either unworked or, more probably, as finished tools from the flint-bearing areas to the south of Yorkshire. It does not, in fact, appear an untenable hypothesis to suppose that some of the great highways which formed the main military roads during the Roman occupation may have already existed for centuries, even during the later Stone Age, as definite routes of communication between the various

\* *Yorks. Arch. Journal*, Vol. VI., p. 125.

† *Mem. de la Société Roy. des Antiq. du Nord*, 1903.

‡ Compare *Science in South Africa*, p. 103, British Association Meeting, 1905, and *Pre-historic Archaeology*, p. 248. Cambs. Meeting Handbook, 1904.

inhabited parts of Britain. In this connection, it is interesting to notice that the so-called Ermington Street, from London to the Firth of Forth, after its union at Lincoln with the Fosse Way from Exeter, appears to have continued its course along the oolite ridge which overlooks the low-lying valley of the Trent, until it descended to cross the Humber between Winteringham and Brough. It is then carried along the ridge of the Yorkshire Wolds, where it can be traced through Londesborough and Warter towards Malton. A branch leading to York left it near Market Weighton, and crossed the Derwent at Kexby. These roads, it will be noticed, placed Yorkshire in direct communication with the flint-bearing areas of the South. Without unduly straining this point, a consideration of the conformation and primæval physical characteristics of the Vale of York will indicate with more certainty the probable line through which passed the interchange between east and west. The great terminal moraines of the York Glacier stretch from side to side of the valley, and form a kind of natural causeway elevated above the bogs and marshy ground, through which the drainage waters found their way to the Humber. These elevated ridges are still traversed by ancient roads : thus the Roman road which leads from Tadcaster through York to Stamford Bridge,\* keeps to the ridge throughout its course, until it crosses the valley of the Derwent to mount the steep slope of the Wolds at Garrowby Hill.

One of the most important discoveries of a hoard of flint implements which has yet been reported was made within the City boundaries in September, 1868, when, in digging for the foundations of the Railway Gas Works, a large number of finely polished implements were found at a depth of ten feet, some

---

\* The strategical value of these ridges was well exemplified by the course taken by the rival armies in the campaign which terminated at Stamford Bridge in 1066. (See p. 40.)

396 yards from the river, and 26 feet above its present level. The find\* gave rise at the time to considerable controversy as to the period to which the hoard should be referred, buried as it was in strata of clayey loam, which had an undisturbed appearance. There can be no doubt, however, that the carefully polished character and the shape of the celts point to a time which cannot be earlier than the so-called Middle Period of the Stone Age.† Another hoard of flint implements was discovered in the latter part of 1904, in the neighbourhood of Thirsk. Sporadic finds of polished celts and adzes have been made in York, Haxby, Dringhouses, Aldwark Moor, The Mount, and in other places in the vicinity, as also have fine examples of the perforated axes of a later period, many of which are now in the Museum. (Case C., Handbook, p. 195.)

The large number of barrows upon the Wolds, which have been investigated by Thurnam, Bateman, Kendall, Greenwell and Mortimer, give evidence of a considerable population in Neolithic times, and this is further borne out by the series of dykes and entrenchments which are traceable there and along the ridges of the Cleveland Hills, which form the northern boundary of the Vale of Pickering.‡ Although it may be taken as a proved fact that in the earlier Neolithic times the district was inhabited by a homogeneous population, which exhibited dolicho-cephaly to a considerable degree, yet the confused intermingling of cephalic types in the barrows of the East Riding points to an intermingling of races. The survival of the practice of inhumation side by

\* *Yorks. Archæol. Journal*, Vol. I., p. 47. The hoard consisted of at least fifteen celts, one of which was chipped from greenstone, the rest from flint; and of other implements, together with a large number of flakes. They appeared to lie close together. See plate.

† Sophus Müller—*Nordische Alterthumskunde*, p. 49.

‡ Mortimer—*Burial Mounds of East Yorkshire*, p. 365.

PART OF A HOARD OF NEOLITHIC IMPLEMENTS  
FOUND IN YORK IN 1868.

*Photo : W. Watson.*





side with that of cremation is evidence in the same direction (see table), and apparently denotes some degree of fusion of the Neolithic aborigines with the later bronze-using immigrants.\*

A consideration of the evidence obtained from the barrows of Eastern Europe leads to the conclusion that at the close of the Stone Age—in the so-called Aeneo-lithic period—a fusion took place between the more ancient dolichocephalic stock and a younger brachycephalic people, resulting in a mixed race, which gradually spread westwards over Europe. Wright† argues with great probability from his examination of the skulls in the Mortimer collection at Driffield, that it was from this already mixed people that the first colonists passed over into Yorkshire, the forerunners of that more extensive migration hither of the bronze-using Goidelic Celts, whose characteristic forms of interment were cremation and burial within a round barrow. Thus, some skulls show a considerable degree of dolichocephaly; two skulls, for example, from Rudston gave a cephalic index of 68 and 72 respectively;‡ others, however, which are typically brachycephalic, have been found associated with worked flints.§

\* The following table is compiled from Thurnam, *Archæologia XLIII.* 310, and Mortimer (*op. cit.*).

	Unburnt.	Burnt.	Total.	Proportions.	
				Unburnt.	Burnt.
Derby, Staffs. and Yorks. (Bateman)	150	121	271	55·4	44·6
Yorks. (Greenwell)	301	78	379	79	21
Wilts. (Hoare) ..	82	272	354	23·2	76·8
Dorset (Warne) ..	21	91		18·8	81·2
Yorks. (Mortimer)	565	328	873	63	37
BRONZE ARTICLES ASSOCIATED WITH INTERMENTS.					
	Unburnt.	Burnt.	Total.		
Mortimer .. ..	25	10	35		
Greenwell .. ..	12	2	14		

† *Journal of Anatomy and Physiology*, Vol. XXXIX., p. 428.

‡ Greenwell and Rolleston—*British Barrows*, p. 613.

§ Wright—*op. cit.*, p. 428.

Although numerous specimens of the earthenware associated with burials of this period have been discovered, the study of their workmanship and ornamentation has not as yet thrown much additional light upon the subject. Only one example is known to have been found in York. This belongs to the "beaker" class of vessel, such as is found associated with large well-made flint daggers; it is relegated by Abercromby\* to Subtype  $\gamma_5$  of his classification of this species of fictile ware.

In sharp contrast with the western portion of Yorkshire, where stone circles are numerous, there are, in the part of the country under consideration, no examples of cromlechs, dolmens or circles, such as in other parts of England are associated with stone implements,† and in that portion north and east of York but few megalithic monuments of any kind exist; some of these are, however, typical examples of their kind. At Boroughbridge is the alignment of three monoliths known as "The Devil's Arrows."‡ The stones, two of which are over twenty-five feet in height above ground, are of coarse grit-stone, and appear to have been transported from Brimham or Plumpton—a distance of some fifteen miles. The orientation is almost due north and south. A number of flint flakes were discovered in their immediate neighbourhood in 1883,§ a fact which, although it offers no evidence of contemporaneity, is worthy of record. Three

\* *Proc. Ant. Soc. Scot.* XXXVIII., 323.

† *Cp., Derby Archæol. Soc. Report on Arbelow*, 1904, also *Notes on Stonehenge. Nature*, Feb. 9th, 1905.

‡ Leland (*circ. 1545*) mentions four stones as standing when he visited Boroughbridge: "A little without this Towne on the west part of Watiling Streate standith 4 great maine stones wrought above *in conum* by Mannes hand . . . . they be sore worn and scalid with wether." The fourth stone is said to have been destroyed in the eighteenth century. Excavations in 1709 disclosed that the central example measures 36 feet 6 inches in all.

§ *Yorks. Archæolog. Jour.*, Vol. VII., p. 496.

standing stones are to be seen on Fylingdales Moor, one-and-three-quarter miles south-west of Robin Hood's Bay, and upon the ridge of Bilsdale Moor is a small series of stones, evidently artificially arranged, known as the Bride Stones. Philips\* gives a description and plate of a cist surrounded by two concentric stone circles known as Obtrush Roque, about two miles north of Kirbymoorside. This is not a circle in the ordinary acceptation of the term, but, like Simon Howe, near Goathland, belongs to the category of burial structures of the Stone Age, known to continental antiquaries as *Rundgräber* (*Runddysser*). A single monolith, twenty-five feet in height, stands in the churchyard of Rudston—a village five miles from Bridlington, in the midst of a cluster of barrows of both the long and the round type, in a neighbourhood which is thickly strewn with the *vestigia* of the stone-using people. This stone is a finely grained calcareous sandstone, the so-called "moorland grit," which caps the oolite of the Cleveland Hills, and which, being very resistent to the agencies of denudation, in places forms a natural alignment such as the "High Bride Stones," which overlook Dovedale Griff, a branch of Staindale. Rocks exhibiting the characteristic cup-and-ring and spiral markings attributed to the early Bronze Age are not uncommon on either side of the Vale of York, notably upon the moors between Scarborough and Whitby (where they have been found associated in several instances with burials in round barrows, or as coverstones of urns). The fine example in the vestibule of the Museum was brought from the Peak, near Whitby. They are especially frequent upon Rumbald's Moor, north of Halifax, while the best-known examples of this type are the rock markings at Ilkley, which were brought from Rumbald's Moor,† where the sculptures shew both

\* *Yorkshire Coast*, p. 210.

† *Brit. Arch. Soc. Journal*, XXXV., p. 18.

cup-and-ring and the curved Svastika ornament which may be said to form a link between the art of the Bronze Age in Britain, and that of the Mycenæan period of civilisation.

Several unflanged bronze celts of primitive type have been found from time to time in York (Museum, Case C), but the larger number of weapons found in the neighbourhood are flanged celts and palstaves, and must therefore be referred to the second period of the Bronze Age, according to Sir John Evans's classification. Some of these have found their way into the Museum (Case IIC., VII., XXI., etc.), which also contains some of the implements from a large hoard which was discovered\* in 1845 at Westow, near Malton, fourteen miles from York. This find included more than fifty looped celts, together with bronze chisels intended for fixture to wooden handles, a number of gouges, and a mortice chisel ; it must, therefore, be relegated to the latest period of Bronze culture. A similar hoard of celts was found in 1860 at Acklam, only a short distance from Westow, some of which are now in the Mortimer Museum at Driffield.

The interesting series of interments in dug-out oaken coffins,† found in an ancient burial ground at Church Hill, Selby, some of which are now in the York Museum (Case B), has several points in common with a burial undoubtedly of the Bronze Age at Gristhorpe‡ (now in Scarborough Museum), and may with some probability be assigned to this period. The bones were not associated with any kind of weapon or ornament, with the exception of a necklace of clay beads, which accompanied a female skeleton, and a

\* *Arch. Soc. Journal*, 1849, p. 381.

† *Yorks. Philosoph. Soc. Trans.* 1876, p. 19.

‡ *Crania Britannica*, where the interment is described, and the extraordinarily brachy-cephalic skull is figured. Thurnam gives 85 as the Cephalic index.

small fragmentary plate of bronze (Case Db) in the same coffin. In several of the coffins were found the remains of hazel twigs, which appeared to have been grasped in the hand. A series of burials, identical in character with those at Selby, has been brought to light at Featherstone Castle, Northumberland.\* Interments in hollowed-out oak trunks have been found in Denmark† associated with implements and ornamentation typical of the Bronze Age, and the skull of the female above mentioned has a small circular hole drilled through the vertex into the cranial cavity, which is comparable to a similar condition exhibited in a skull found in the late-Celtic *oppidum* at Hunsbury (Northants.), now in the British Museum.‡ The tibiæ shew a considerable degree of platycnemism, and although no adequate anthropological examination has been made, the whole evidence seems to point to a much earlier period than that suggested by the late Canon Raine (*vide* Museum catalogue), who assigned them to the Anglian period.

To the same era, perhaps, may also be referred the Pile-dwellings, which were discovered in 1893, on the banks of the River Costa, in the lacustrine bed of the Pickering valley, although Mr. C. H. Read, from a consideration of the pottery found there, inclined to the belief that the settlement belonged to a somewhat later period, and that it was more or less contemporary with the Roman-British site at Rushmore (Dorset).§ The piles were found below a mass of peat, six feet in thickness, above which lay a yard of blue clay and cultivated soil. No flint, bronze or iron remains have been discovered, but one complete female skeleton was found, upon

\* *Archæologia*, Vol. 44, Part I., p. 8.

† Müller—*Nordische Alterthumskunde*, p. 34.

‡ *Iron Age Guide*, p. 130.

§ *Journal Anthropol. Inst.*, Series II., Vol. I., p. 151.

the sternum of which was a perforated tine of deer's horn. The human bones exhibited no distinctive characteristic beyond the fact that the femora were markedly pilastered. In any case, it may be safely asserted that these dwellings belong to a period subsequent to that of the Pile-dwellings in Holderness, where the presence of numerous flint tools and flakes are evidence of an antiquity unusual for structures of this type.\*

It is possible that some of the names of places, and of the rivers which water this part of the country, may recall the occupation by this Goidelic branch of the Celtic family. Prof. Sajo, indeed, derives the name Eburacum from a stem *Eb*, denoting the yew tree, which he states is of Scythian origin†—a derivation, perhaps, neither more nor less fanciful than others which have been proposed.

Of the later Brythonic (Cymric) wave of Celtic immigration, which appears to have reached our shores about 350-300 B.C., we have abundant evidence in the antiquities found in many of the tumuli of the East Riding, and there is in the Museum (Case C) a splendid series of antiquities exhibiting the late Celtic type of culture, from the tumuli excavated at Arras (three miles east of Market Weighton), and from the "Danes' Graves," near Driffield, explored by Mr. Mortimer in 1897.‡ Both of these excavations disclosed chariot burials, and, although probably of somewhat later date, the finds recall the

\* Monro—*Lake Dwellings of Europe*, p. 490.

† *Prometheus* 555, p. 613. An analogous derivation may be cited in support of this theory in that of Youghal from Eochaill, a yew wood. Taylor with others derives the word from the river name Ure, and instances Ivry (Eburovicus) from Ebura, now Eure; also Yverdun, the Celto-Roman Eburodunum. A writer in the *Gentleman's Magazine*, 1847, p. 371, proposes a derivation from Yvroc, the Welsh *y fforch*, i.e., the fork of the river. For further information see pp. 15 and 28.

‡ *Yorks. Philosoph. Soc. Reports*, 1897.

typical Gaulish chariot burials found at La Gorge Meillet and at Somme Bionne, in the Department of the Marne, which have given rise to the term Marnian, applied to this period of Early Iron Age culture. Attention should be particularly directed to a pendant and a brooch discovered in the "Queen's Barrow" at Arras, which are ornamented with coral,\* and to a bronze wheel-headed pin similarly inlaid from "Danes' Graves" (now unfortunately missing from the Museum), which shew the generic affinity of the art of this part of the country with that of the rest of Europe, to which the discoveries at La Tène have given the distinctive title. Other characteristic interments of this period have been brought to light: thus, in a tumulus at Hanging Grimston, near Kirby Underdale, Mr. Mortimer found a short iron sword, twenty inches in length, having a bronze handle with branching terminals, recalling the antennæ of the Halstatt swords, the grip terminating in a knob at the intersection, which represents a human head. The whole handle thus forms an anthropoid figure with extended limbs.† Equally characteristic is the interment at Grimthorpe, near Pocklington, opened in 1868, in which the body was found lying in the contracted position, wrapped originally in animal skins fastened together with the metatarsal bones of a goat. The metallic remains of a buckler lay upon the breast, and an iron sword in a scabbard of bronze, with

\* Rep. Archæolog. Institute, York, 1846, pp. 26-32. In one of the interments (Hessleskew) was found a miniature looped bronze celt, one inch in length, of exquisite workmanship (ivC.).

† Mortimer—*Op. cit.*, 355, also Müller—*Urgeschichte Europas*, p. 132. There is in the York Museum an extremely interesting sword, 23 inches in length, found at Thorpe, near Bridlington, unaccompanied by any evidence of an interment. The grip,  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches long, is of bone, while the lower part of the hilt is inlaid with four circular discs of chequered enamel, and its knob-shaped terminals recall these anthropoid swords.

a characteristically moulded chape, was at the side. One of the most beautiful, and at the same time most characteristic examples of the decorative metal work of La Tène type is the sword sheath found at Bugthorpe, eleven miles east of York, which is now in the British Museum. The cephalic index of these Iron Age burials reveals a moderately dolichocephalic population.\* It is interesting in this connection to recall the statement of Ptolemy,† that this part of Yorkshire was inhabited by the Parisi, although the objection has been raised that this historian may have been led into a misapprehension from the similarity of names, and that the populace may have been colonists from Frisia.‡ The identity of the place-name Arras with that of the chief town of the Department of Pas de Calais, the former capital of the Teutonic Atrebates, is an interesting coincidence, but one which probably has no archæological significance. What relation the tribe of the Parisi bore to their neighbours the Brigantes, is a question for the answer of which no material is available, but, from the fact that each is said to have had a coinage of its own in the times immediately preceding their final subjugation to the power of Rome, it appears that they were mutually independent. Ptolemy§ states that

\* i.e., Grimthorpe 71, Hanging Grimston 73, Arras 74, and Danes' Graves (average 34 skulls of both sexes), 74-73.

† Lib. II., Cap. III.

‡ Taylor—*Words and Places*, p. 92.

§ Ptolemy (*loc. cit.*) mentions the following towns of the Brigantes:—Epiacum (? *Ebchester*, Rhys conjectures *Keswick*). Vinnovium (*Binchester*); Cataractonium (*Catterick*), Calatum (undetermined), Isurium (*Aldborough*), Rigodunum (undetermined; not *Ribchester*, which has been proved to have been *Bremetennacum*), Olicana (*Ilkley*), and Eburacum.

The folio edition of Ptolemy (*Argentinae Grieningerus*, 1525), in the Minster Library, has in autograph on the title page: “*Martino Bucero, Ann. Dni., 1525.*”

their chief town was Petuaria, the site of which was identified by Prof. Phillips with Beverley, but which was more probably Hedon. He mentions also Delgovicia (possibly Market Weighton), and Derventio, which has been conjecturally located at Kexby or Elvington, some six miles south-east of York. Their territory thus corresponded more or less with the area of the East Riding, with the addition of Cleveland and the eastern portion of the North Riding, as far as the Tees. The rest of the country between shore and shore, from the Humber to the Tyne, was occupied by the Brigantes, whose territory is described by Tacitus\* as the most populous in Britain, and whose capital appears to have been at York, or, as some writers aver, at Aldborough. Their coinage is known in four or five types, all of which appear to have been modelled upon the gold stater of Philip II. of Macedon. Some examples of these are to be seen in the coin cabinet of the York Museum, and are figured by Evans,† who was led to believe that the Brigantes had probably ceased to issue their own coinage shortly before A.D. 50. The discovery, however, in 1893 of a number of British coins of this period, concealed in a hollow bone, at Honley, near Holmfirth, one of which bore the name of Cartimandua,‡ associated with coins of Vespasian, points to the assumption that the native coinage was continued until the subjugation of the country. It was in the year A.D. 51 that Caratacus, defeated after a nine years' struggle by P. Ostorius Scapula, took refuge with Cartimandua, the Brigantian Queen, by whom he was

\* Tacitus—*Agricola*, cap. 17. *Brigantium civitas, quæ numerosissima provinciæ totius perhibetur.*

† *Ancient British Coins*, Plate XVII., figs 4 and 5; and also *Arch. Assoc. Journal*, VI., Plate III., 3 and 4. In 1827 four Brigantian coins were found at Lightcliffe, near Halifax, associated with a few imperial coins of Caligula and Agrippina, dating circ. A.D., 40.

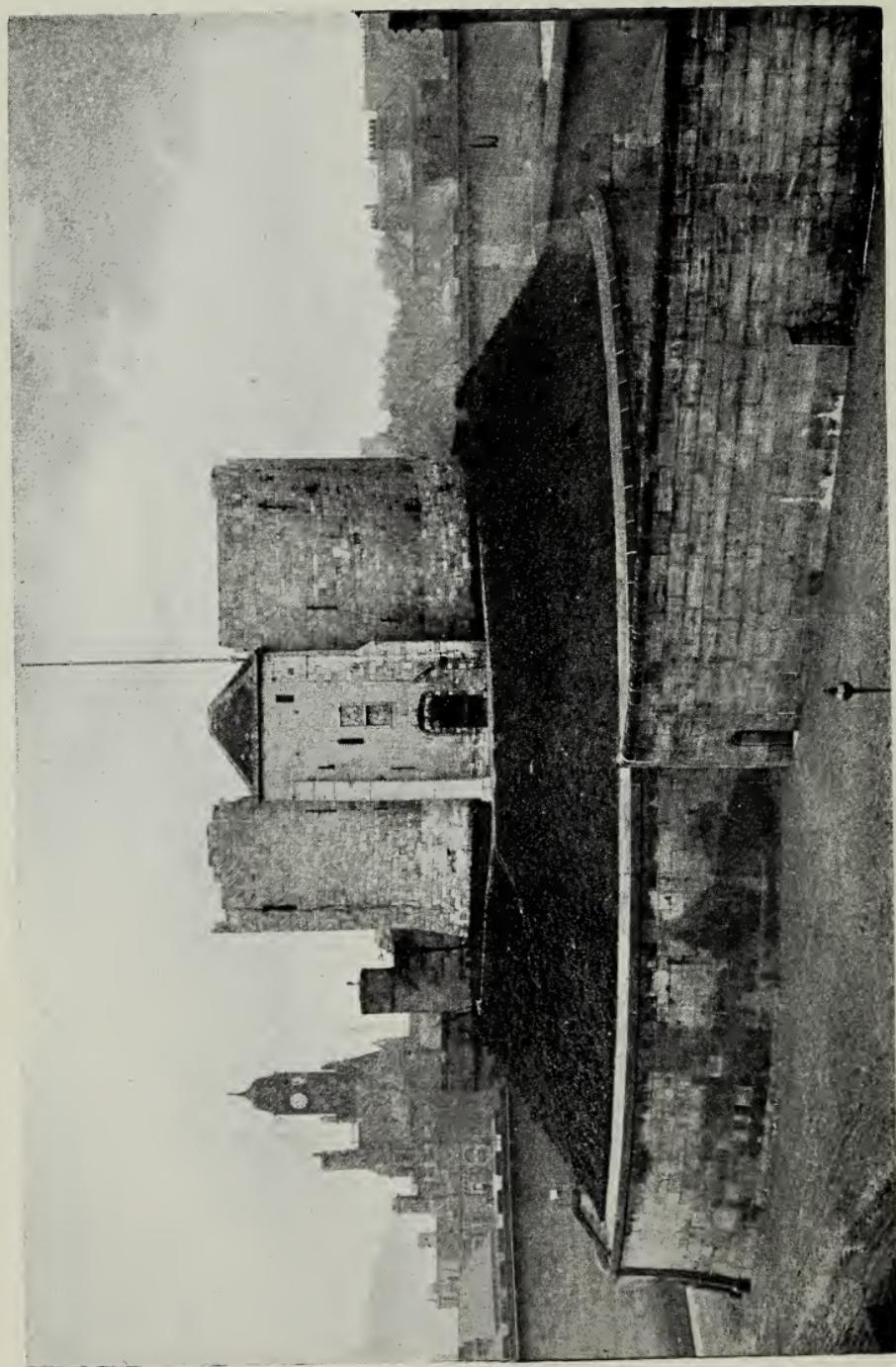
‡ *Numismatic Chronicle*, 1897, p. 299.

basely betrayed to the Romans, who carried him a prisoner to Rome. This act of treachery did not long stave off the evil day, and at length, in A.D. 79, after a fierce and bloody struggle (*multa prælia aliquando non incruenta*) against the invading legions under Petilius Cerealis, they were finally subdued, and their territory became an integral part of the Roman Empire.



*Photo : W. Watson.*

CLIFFORD'S TOWER,  
BUILT UPON A PRE-ROMAN EARTHWORK.



# YORK DURING THE ROMAN OCCUPATION.

H. M. PLATNAUER, B.Sc.

THE history of York during Roman times cannot in the earlier part of that period be considered apart from that of Britain in general. The first mention of Eburacum is by Ptolemy, the geographer, about 140 A.D., nearly two centuries after the first invasion of this country by the Romans. From the form of the name, romanized celtic, we may infer with certainty that a town, village, or settlement of some kind existed before the Roman occupation, but of the nature and extent of this settlement we are ignorant. The most probable derivation of Eburacum is from *Aber*, a river mouth or confluence ; and *ach*, a field.\* The flat ground lying in the angle between the Foss and the Ouse, and answering to the present St. George's Fields, exactly corresponds to this description, and if the mound on which Clifford's Tower now stands is of pre-Roman origin† (as is most probable), we may consider that the position of the old British settlement is fixed with accuracy. It will be at once seen by anyone examining the ground that this triangular patch, surrounded

---

\* According to some authorities, "the *mound* by the confluence." The name has also been derived from *Ebura* (supposed to be the old form of the River Ure or Yore) ; and Professor Rhys suggests "the place of yew trees," from *ibur*, the Erse for "yew." The form *Eburacum* has been adopted as older and more consonant with etymology. The change from *u* to *o* is no doubt due to Greek influence. Most probably the usual pronunciation is faulty, and we should say *Eburacum*. See Preface to Wellbeloved's "Eburacum" for a full discussion of the subject (also see p. 28).

See *Ann. Rep. Yorks. Phil. Soc.*, 1902, pp. 68-74.

on two sides by water, constitutes a very defensible site. The Romans, as we shall see, trusting to a very different system of defence, founded their city on less marshy ground to the north of the British town.

In considering the subjugation of Britain by the Romans, we may dismiss the punitive expeditions undertaken by Julius Cæsar, in B.C. 55 and 54, with a mere passing notice. They furnished the Romans with some information as to the country and the people, but in other respects remained unproductive of results. The action of Augustus against the island was limited to levying a heavy duty on British goods imported into Gaul.\* Claudio<sup>s</sup> was the first emperor who made a serious and systematic attempt to conquer Britain. Four legions† (the 2nd, 9th, 14th and 20th) were despatched in A.D. 43, under the command of Aulus Plautius,‡ with Vespasian as lieutenant, and the Emperor himself followed next year. In the course of a very short campaign, he gained a victory over the Britons, and captured Camulodunum (Colchester). The work of subjugation was then left to Aulus Plautius and Vespasian. The former remained in command till A.D. 50, and was succeeded by Ostorius Scapula. This able commander pushed the Roman conquests northwards and westwards, subduing the Ordovices and Silures (in the Western

---

\* Tariff walls are by no means confined to modern times. The early years of the first century saw a fiscal war made upon this island, and followed some years later by a military attack. *Absit omen!*

† The strength of a Roman legion varied greatly according to circumstance and period—the tendency being for the legion to increase in numbers in later times. A legion consisted of (a) Roman infantry, varying from 4,500 to 6,000; (b) Roman cavalry, about 300; (c) allied or auxiliary infantry (*socii*), generally as numerous as the Roman, sometimes in excess of it; (d) allied cavalry, about 300. A fully equipped legion would average 10,000 to 12,000 men. The cavalry acted mainly as scouts, or as a gendarmerie.

‡ Some of our readers may remember that this distinguished officer plays a somewhat prominent part in Sienkiewicz's novel, *Quo vadis.*

Midlands and Wales), the Cangi (Cheshire and Derbyshire), and the Iceni (the Eastern counties). By A.D. 53, he had pushed the Roman frontier to the line of the Mersey and the Humber, and had come into contact with the Brigantes, who inhabited the district north of that line. His first dealings with them were diplomatic. He demanded of their Queen, Cartimandua, the surrender of Caratacus (or Caradoc), the defeated British king, who had taken refuge with her, and succeeded in inducing her to yield up the fugitive. His military operations against the Brigantes were most probably simply directed towards protecting his newly acquired territory against their incursions. The efforts of Didius Gallus (53-57) and Suetonius Paulinus (58-62) were fully taken up in consolidating these conquests. The reduction of the Cambrian tribes proved a long and difficult task, and for a long time the invaders were obliged to keep a strong guard over these warlike mountaineers. The progress of the Roman arms was seriously delayed by the revolt of Iceni, under Boudicca,\* in A.D. 61. This outbreak was particularly dangerous, as it occurred when the bulk of the Roman troops was occupied in North Wales. It was not till A.D. 70 that the Romans were able to resume the offensive. In that year, Petilius Cerealis began the conquest of the Brigantes. His advance was slow, and was stubbornly contested. Nearly five years were consumed in subjugating what is now Yorkshire. The work of Cerealis was resumed and carried to a triumphant conclusion by Cneius Julius Agricola (78-84). Agricola may be looked upon as the founder of Eburacum. At the time of his arrival, the Roman headquarters, and probably the Brigantian capital, were at Isurium (Aldborough).† He appears to have seen the greater

\* i.e., "The Victorious." The form *Boadicea* rests upon no authority but that of long usage. The same may be said also of the customary spelling *Cartismandua* and *Caractacus* (*vide supra*).

† About a mile from Boroughbridge.

advantages of Eburacum as an administrative and military centre, and during his command the camp began a period of development which soon made it the capital of Britain. A curious piece of indirect evidence proves the importance of Eburacum at this period. In the collection of Roman relics in the Museum is a small bronze tablet found during the building of the old Railway Station. Inscribed upon it, in perforated Greek uncials, is a dedication to the gods of the *Prætorium* by "Demetrius the Scribe." This Demetrius has been identified by King with Demetrius the Grammarian, who was sent into Britain by Domitian, and whose visit to Plutarch, on his return to Tarsus from Britain, is mentioned by the historian himself. It would seem that about the year 80, Eburacum was sufficiently important to serve as a temporary home for this distinguished envoy.\* Agricola placed the Roman conquest of Britain on a permanent footing, building roads, establishing camps, and reconciling the Britons by his moderation and justice. He built a chain of forts from the Firth of Forth to the Firth of Clyde, and this was subsequently developed into the famous Wall of Antoninus. Agricola was recalled by Domitian in A.D. 84, and the history of Britain is practically a blank for the next thirty years. But a large stone dug up in King's Square<sup>t</sup> commemorates the performance of a work by the Ninth Legion during the twelfth tribunate of Trajan. This corresponds to the period A.D. 108-9. What this work was we do not know, but its being worthy of an imperial ascription is strong testimony to the importance of the work itself, and of the city which contained it.

Hadrian, abandoning Trajan's ambitious schemes of eastern conquest, aimed at consolidating the empire,

---

\* See *Handbook to Antiquities*, 8th ed. (1891), p. 121.

† See *Handbook to Antiquities*, pp. 46-7; *Proc. of Yorks. Phil. Soc.*, I., 282-6.

and strengthening the neglected western frontiers. In 117 he sent over the Sixth Legion, under M. Pontius, from Treves, and he himself followed in 120. He gave up Agricola's chain of forts, and erected the famous wall which bears his name, from the mouth of the Tyne to the Solway Firth. That Hadrian visited Eburacum may be considered as certain, but no record of such a visit has been preserved. Drake, it is true, not only mentions it as a fact, but narrates a circumstance in connection with it. But he does not give his authority, and no subsequent historian has been able to find any. Antoninus Pius committed the Government of Britain to Lollius Urbicus, an able soldier, who recovered the district between the Tyne and the Forth abandoned by Hadrian, and replaced Agricola's chain of forts by a rampart, called the Wall of Antoninus, stretching from the Firth of Forth to the Firth of Clyde. This work was accomplished about the year A.D. 140. Very little is known of what happened in Britain during the reigns of Marcus Aurelius and Commodus, but the reign of Septimius Severus (193-211) is notable in the history of Britain. That emperor, accompanied by his sons Caracalla and Geta, and by the great lawyer Papinian, arrived in Eburacum about 206, and took up his abode in that city. In 208 he marched northwards against the Caledonians, leaving the province in the care of Geta.\* Severus returned to Eburacum after a victorious campaign, but died shortly after (early in 210). There is a tradition that he was buried at Eburacum, and that the eminence known as

---

\* One of the conjectures as to the Roman statue in the entrance hall of the Museum is that it represents Geta. Caracalla, after the murder of his brother, ordered his statues to be thrown down and destroyed. The statue in question was found broken in two or three places, and without pedestal or inscription. This, coupled with the important fact that the face resembles a bust of Geta preserved in the Vatican Museum, renders the supposition at least very probable.

“Severus Hill,” or “Severs Ho,” was a tumulus erected over his body. But the hill in question is a gravel mound of glacial origin, and it is almost certain that his body was burned (probably at Eburacum, and perhaps on “Severus Hill”) and the ashes taken to Rome. During the long period that intervened between the accession of Caracalla (211) and that of Diocletian (284) great unrest prevailed over the whole empire. Little is known of Britain during this period ; probably that province generally followed the fortunes of Gaul. Coins of Victorinus, Posthumus, Tetricus (father and son) and other Gallic adventurers who usurped authority in the western part of the empire, are found abundantly in and near York. In 287, Carausius, the admiral of Maximian, the commander of the fleet appointed to protect the shores of Gaul and Britain, from Frisian and Saxon pirates (who were already growing troublesome), revolted and seized the sovereignty of Britain. He is said to have fixed his headquarters at York—certainly very many of his coins have been found in and near the city. His fleet retained mastery of the seas, and enabled him to baffle all attempts of Diocletian and Maximian to dislodge him. Indeed, these emperors were compelled finally to acknowledge his independence. He was assassinated in 294 by his minister Allectus, who seized upon his crown, but was defeated and killed in 296 by Constantius Chlorus, who had been nominated by Diocletian ruler of Spain, Gaul and Britain, with the title of Caesar. Under this division Britain, formerly governed by a prefect, and subsequently (after the time of Severus) by two prefects, was attached to the prefecture of Gaul, and governed by a *vicarius* resident in Eburacum. After settling the affairs of Gaul—which, owing to the weak and negligent government of past years, were in great confusion—Constantius crossed into Britain and took up his residence in Eburacum, where he was no stranger. Here he was joined by his son Constantine,

and here he died in 306, shortly after his return from a successful expedition into Caledonia. Constantine was at once proclaimed emperor by the legionaries, amid the acclamations of the Britons, who no doubt welcomed him as a fellow-countryman.\* He shortly quitted Britain and never returned. With him departed the glory of Eburacum and of all Britain. For the next half-century nothing is known of the province except the names of successive governors. No doubt during this time the island usually enjoyed quiet and good government. The last half-century of Roman rule was a period of disaster, of foreign invasion and internal dissension. Early in the second half of the fourth century the Roman emperors, hard pressed by barbarian invasions, began to withdraw troops from Britain for service in parts of the empire that were more directly menaced. The undefended country was soon raided, and then over-run by the Picts and Scots, and in 367—in response to an appeal for help—Valentinian sent over Theodosius (father of Theodosius the Great), who speedily cleared the country of invaders, and repaired the Wall of Antonine. Some years later, the incursions were renewed, but were checked by Maximus, a Spaniard, who assumed the purple at Eburacum. Unfortunately, Maximus took the army with him into Gaul, in prosecution of his ambitious schemes, and Britain again became a prey to the northern barbarians. An appeal was made to Honorius, and a legion sent over by Stilicho, in 396, restored order. The invasion of Italy by Alaric

---

\* The writer is well aware that in making this assertion he is running counter to the opinion of Gibbon, Wellbeloved and several other historians of note. While fully respecting the authority of these eminent men, he ventures to assert that their reasons for rejecting a tradition many centuries old, and supported by a contemporary panegyrist, seem to him insufficient. The last word on the subject has yet to be spoken, and the *onus probandi* lies with those who reject the tradition. For objections see *Hist. of Decl. and Fall*, etc., chap. XIV., and *Eburacum*, pp. 23-27.

rendered the recall of this legion necessary, and its withdrawal was followed by the usual consequences ; but, in 403, Stilicho was able to detach three legions. In 407 these legions revolted, and set up their own emperors. Two of these had reigns of a few weeks only ; the third, called Constantine, restored peace and order, but, aiming at universal empire, he led his army into Gaul, and left Britain finally denuded of troops. Another appeal to Honorius elicited a letter from that emperor bidding the Britons to defend themselves. A renewed entreaty resulted in the despatch of Gallio of Ravenna, who organised the defence of the province, and repaired the Wall of Hadrian. His retirement in 420 severed the last tie that bound Britain to the empire, and marked the close of the Roman period in British history, which had lasted nearly four centuries.

The Roman occupation of Britain was so essentially a military one, that no survey of it is complete without some reference to the troops that achieved and maintained the conquest. Of the two legions with which Julius Cæsar made his first incursion, and the five that he brought on his second expedition, only two are known—the 7th and 10th. Neither of these has any connection with the subsequent history of the island. The four legions with which the systematic conquest of the island was commenced were the 2nd, the 9th, the 14th and the 20th. When the southern part of Britain was conquered, and the necessary camps and military roads constructed, it was considered that three legions would suffice for the subjugation of the north, and the 14th legion (one of the best in the Roman service) was withdrawn about the year 70. After the completion of the conquest, the three legions had fixed headquarters assigned to them. The 2nd was stationed at Isca Silurum (Cærleon-on-Usk), guarding South Wales ; the 20th, at Deva (Chester), to watch North Wales and garrison the western part of the Roman Wall ; the 9th, at

Eburacum, furnished guards for the eastern part of the Wall. This disposition continued throughout the Roman occupation—except that the 9th legion was replaced by the 6th. The two legions most intimately connected with the history of Eburacum are the 9th and the 6th. The 9th, or Spanish Legion, seems to have been a weak or an unfortunate one. It suffered most severely from the attack of Boudicca, and again suffered heavy losses in a night attack during Agricola's sixth campaign against the Caledonians. Shortly after this, the legion disappears from history. Whether it was disbanded, reduced, or incorporated with any other legions, we do not know. It may have proved difficult to recruit a legion that had such persistent bad luck. Several monuments, inscribed tiles, etc., in the Museum at York, bear the inscription Leg. VIII. Hisp. (or Hispan.). The 6th Legion, surnamed *Victrix* (the victorious), and sometimes also *Pia Fidelis* (devoted and faithful), was brought from Germany in 117, to replace the 9th. It has left abundant memorials of its presence in and about York.

Some reference to military matters is as essential in explaining the topography of Roman York as it was in narrating its history. Eburacum began as a camp, and a camp it remained in all its principal features. A Roman camp was usually a rectangular space enclosed by fosse (ditch) and earthen rampart or stone wall, according to circumstances. Fig. I shews the plan of a Roman consular camp.\* It was divided into two equal parts by a longitudinal road (*cōo*), running from front to rear, and into two unequal parts by a transverse road (*the via principalis*). In the smaller (rear) part stood the *Prætorium* (general's quarters), the public offices and officers' quarters; the larger (front) part contained the quarters for the bulk of the soldiers. There were

\* Such a camp was designed to accommodate two legions, and covered a space of about 480,000 square yards. Eburacum was intended for one legion, and covered a space of about 250,000 square yards.

four gates or entrances ; the right and left principal gates at the ends of the transverse road (B2 and B4) ; the decuman gate (B1) at the front end,\* and the prætorian gate at the rear end (B3), of the longitudinal road. The original camp of Eburacum can

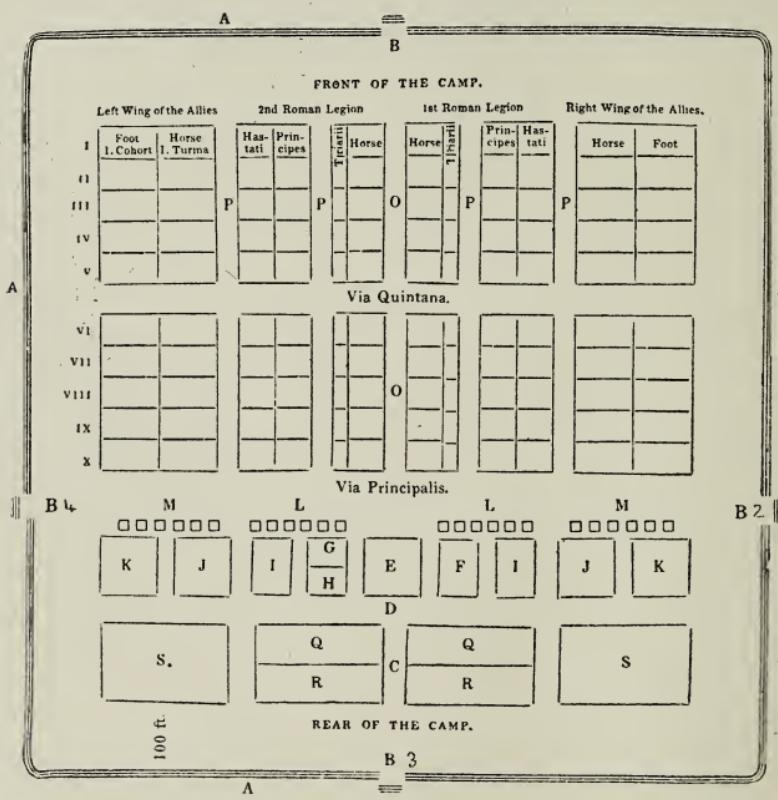


Fig. 1.

- A A A A—Ramparts.
- B B B B—Gates.
- C—Street.
- D—Cross Street.
- E—Prætorium.
- F—Quæotorium.
- G—Legation.

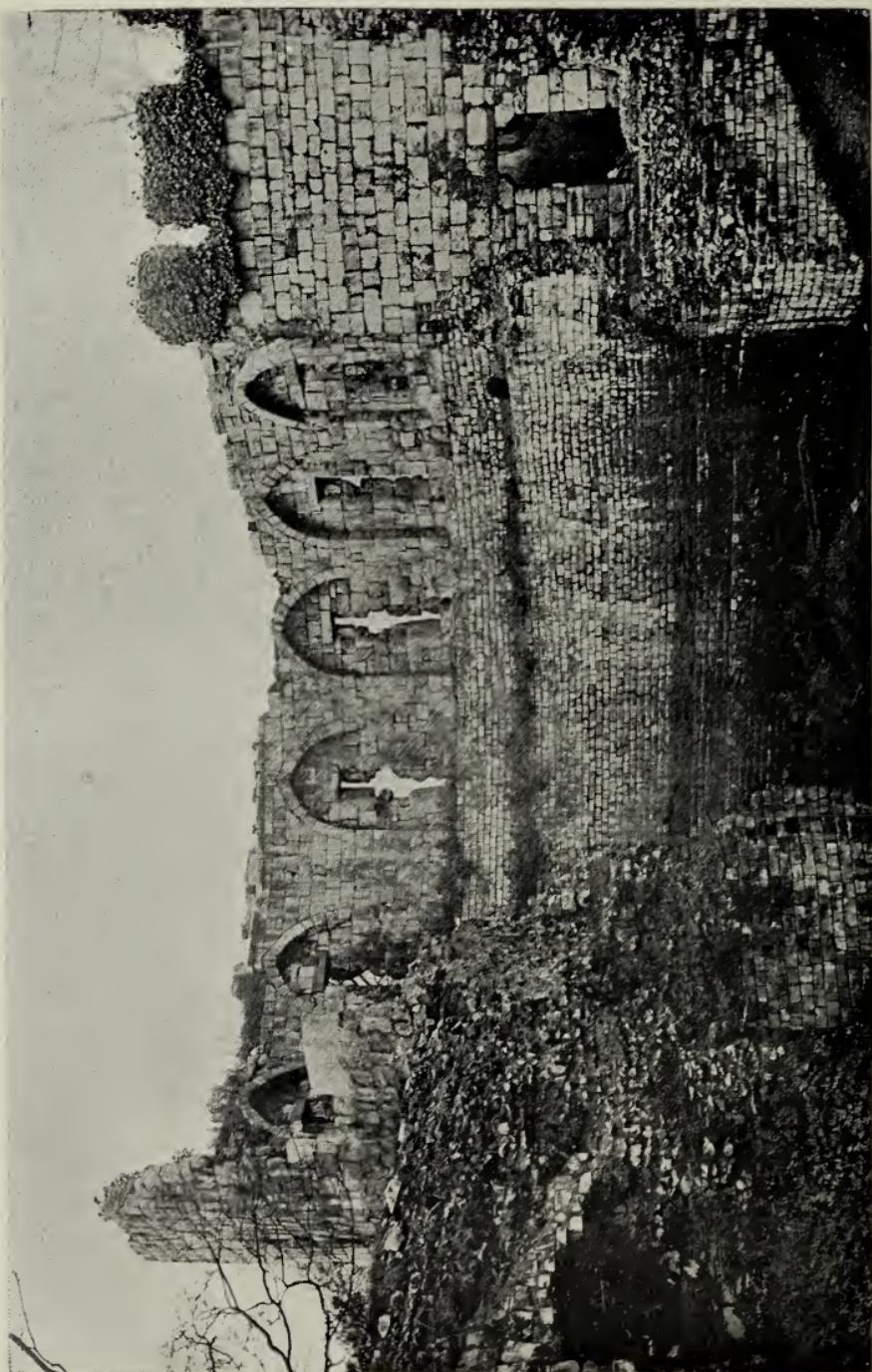
- H—Forum.
- L—Tents of Tribunes.
- M—Tents of Prefects.
- I J K Q R S—Quarters of troops, servants, etc.
- O P—Streets.

\* Roy and most subsequent authorities place the prætorian gate at the *front*, and the decuman gate at the *rear* of the camp. The point is a disputed one ; the writer accepts King's contention that the gate nearest the Prætorium should be called the prætorian gate.



*Photo : W. Watson.*

THE MULTANGULAR TOWER  
FROM WITHIN, SHewing ROMAN MASONRY



be traced with a fair amount of certainty. It was a rectangle of about 540 yards by 480 yards. Four large towers stood at the angles; one of these (with portions of the adjoining walls) still remains, and is in the Museum Gardens. Another was in Feasegate, near its junction with Market Street; a third in the present rampart, about 100 yards south-east of Monk Bar; and a fourth in the rampart near the junction of Gillygate with Lord Mayor's Walk. The prætorian gate was in what is now St. Helen's Square; the right principal gate in King's Square; the left principal where Bootham Bar now stands; and the decuman in the present rampart, about 100 yards north-east of Monk Bar. The present Petergate probably corresponds roughly to the *via principalis*. Chancellor Raine has given good reasons for supposing that additional space was gained by a re-construction of the south-east wall, which converted the original rectangle into a pentagon.\* From the gates went four main roads. One, to the south-west, crossed the Ouse by a bridge about where the present Guildhall stands, and led to Calcaria (Tadcaster), joining the present high road somewhere in Blossom Street. A road to the north-west ran a little south of our present high road to Isurium (Aldborough) and thence to Cataractonium (Catterick), forming part of the northern portion of "Watling Street." Another road, to the north-east, went to a station (name unknown) close to Malton. A fourth ran to the south-east, and probably divided, one branch going to Derventio (Kexby, or perhaps Stamford Bridge) and another to Lindum (Lincoln), thence to join the "Ermington Street" to Londinium (see p. 3).

The space allotted to the camp always remained a separate area, enclosed in walls, and constituting the official part of Eburacum. But the city spread

\* The fortifications of Eburacum are more fully described further on in this Handbook (see pp. 79-93).

far beyond these limits, and the suburbs (especially on the south-west side) were covered with villas, temples, baths, etc. A large cemetery was found on the site of the new Railway Station ; many interments have been found in the suburbs, and the main roads (particularly that to Calcaria) were bordered by tombs and monuments. The position of the Prætorium is not known. It has been placed in various parts of the city by different antiquaries ; the most generally received opinion is that it was near the present Church of Christ Church, in Curia Regis (King's Square). The natural position would be in the middle of Stonegate, if we consider the south-west side to be the rear of the camp ; or at the north-east of the Minster, if we consider that side to be the front.

From two inscriptions we learn that Eburacum was both a *municipium* and a *colonia*. To which class among the various grades of municipia and colonies it belongs we have no means of determining. We can, however, state positively that with these combined dignities, it must have stood high among the cities of the empire, and its inhabitants must have enjoyed privileges above those of the average Roman subject.

The religious cults of Eburacum and of all Britain were those of Rome, with only such differences as might be expected from local circumstances. Our knowledge on this subject is largely derived from inscribed altars, of which a good many have been found. Dedications to Mars are not infrequent, as we might expect in a country in military occupation. Neptune, as god of the sea, and Silvanus, as god of hunting, are also not neglected. Ascriptions to Jupiter, Juno, Apollo and Minerva are found, but not commonly. The Romans seem to have been anxious to propitiate local deities, and there was a tendency to replace, or supplement, the worship of the older gods by that of vaguer powers. Thus we find frequent dedications to the *Genius loci*, to the

*Deæ Matres* (or *Matrones*), to *Fortuna*, and so on. This dread on the part of the pagan mind of offending any power by opposition or neglect had probably much to do with the toleration—and even encouragement—afforded to foreign cults by the Roman authorities. Hence we find that the Egyptian worship of Serapis and the Persian cult of Mithras\* were both established in Eburacum. Quite lately, unequivocal evidence was obtained of the introduction of Christianity into the city. A coffin† was found containing the bones of a young woman, and a small inscription : “AVE SOROR VIVAS IN DEO.” The last three words will have a familiar sound to all who have visited the Roman Catacombs.

In conclusion, we cannot too strongly recommend all who feel an interest in this period to visit the Grounds and Museums of the Yorkshire Philosophical Society, taking in their hands the admirable Handbook of Antiquities published by that Society.

BIBLIOGRAPHY.—Wellbeloved—*Eburacum* (York, 1842); *Proc. Yorks. Phil. Soc.* (1849-55); Kenrick—*Arch. and Hist. Papers* (London, 1864); Raine—*York* (“Historic Towns” series, London, 1893); Cæsar Caine—*Martial Annals of the City of York* (London and York, 1893); Cooper—*York; the Story of its Walls, etc.* (London, 1904).

---

\* See *Eburacum*, pp. 79 *et seq.*

† See *Ann. Rep. Yorks. Phil. Soc.*, 1901, p. 104, Pl. VII.

# YORK DURING THE ANGLO-DANISH PERIOD

H. M. PLATNAUER, B.Sc.

THE third period with which we have to deal is the epoch during which Romano-British *Eburacum* became Anglo-Danish *York*.\* Britain, united under Roman dominion, became England united under a Norman conqueror. This period, lasting for about six and a half centuries, is one of constant discord and strife. On several occasions a forced unification took place, but in no case for any long period. Only when a crushing blow united the peoples of England in a common misfortune were the strong cleavage planes obliterated and the contending races welded into one.

The province of Britain was at all times exposed to attacks from without. The danger from Wales ceased at a comparatively early date, and the Welsh soon imbibed some measure of Roman civilization. But the inhabitants of Caledonia continued to be a serious menace. It is not certainly known whether the Picts, who were so prominent in the latter part of the Roman dominion, were the old Caledonians under a new name or (as tradition asserts) an intrusive race. Towards the

---

\* Some authorities derive York directly from *Eburacum*, by such stages as *Evoracum*, *Evorcum*, *Ejorcum*, etc. The change from *b* to *v* is not uncommon (*cf.*, *Abrincatui* to *Avranches*, *Eburovices* to *Evreux*), but the derivation as a whole seems improbable. The Danes called the city *Yorwic* or *Urewik*, *i.e.*, the “*wik*” (bay or haven, see pp. 10 and 37) on the *Yore* or *Ure*. The Saxon name, *Eoferwic*, may be the “*wik* on the bank” (*cf.*, German “*ufer*”) or the “*wik* of the wild boar.” The British name is *Caer Ebrauc* (*Caer* = camp. *cf.*, *Caerlegion*, now *Caerleon*). *Ebrauc* is doubtless an abbreviation of *Eburacum*.

end of the fourth century they were joined by a tribe of Irish marauders, the Scots, and the united forces of these invaders threatened the province with destruction. Even during the third century the inroads of Saxon and Frisian pirates became so troublesome that the Romans appointed a special officer ("Count of the Saxon shore") to guard the coasts of Gaul, Belgium and Britain. One of these, Carausius (see p. 20), made use of the fleet and forces entrusted to him for this purpose to obtain independent empire. Their incursions increased in number and extent during the fourth century; during one daring raid in 367 they captured and plundered Londinium. It is probable that during this period they not only made inroads, but settlements and colonies on the east coast. The frequent periods of unrest in the empire must have given them many opportunities; and some Roman governors (*e.g.*, Carausius, who owed his power largely to their help) may have connived at such colonization, hoping to form a bulwark against their piratical fellow tribesmen. Saxons and Frisians appear to have settled in the disturbed district between the Tyne and the Tweed at an early date, and Frisians were probably to be found on the Yorkshire coast during the first century of the Christian era (see p. 12).

Such were the dangers to which Britain was exposed. In addition to these grave perils from without, there was the local jealousy and dissension that broke out when the strong Roman administration was not present to repress them. And besides local rivalry, there was no doubt throughout the country a feeling of distrust between the Romanized inhabitants of the cities and the less civilized indigenous Celtic population of the rural districts.

The Britons of the south appear to have invited the help of the Saxons against the northern invaders. The enemies were quickly repulsed, but the allies came to stay. Unfortunately, the history of the

latter half of the fifth century is greatly obscured by subsequent accretions, and it is impossible, in the present stage of knowledge, to separate fact from fiction. In this mass of fable and romance there is no doubt a slender core of truth : but all that we can safely assert is that the resistance offered to the Teutonic advance was obstinate and protracted. Caer Ebrauc (as the Britons called Eburacum) figures largely among the scene of the exploits of Aurelius Ambrosianus, Uther and Arthur, in the pages of Geoffrey of Monmouth, Nennius, the Scottish Chronicle and other histories of this period. The reader will find their accounts pleasantly and graphically summarized by Drake.

We know nothing of the early stages of the conquest of the North of England by the Angles\* (or Engle). Most likely it was at first the work of isolated war-bands, each of which seized and settled a small portion of the country. We read of Saxon invaders coming over in three or four ships, and the Angles in the north probably began their invasion in much the same way as did the Saxons in the south. No doubt these small bands united under a vigorous leader for protection or for further conquest, and this tendency towards union increased as the invaders found increasing need for organization. The relation of the victors to the vanquished is a matter of much dispute ; probably no settled line of policy was adopted. Extermination may have occurred locally and occasionally, as at the capture of Anderida, whose long resistance had enraged the south Saxons. The enslavement of the conquered was no doubt common ; in some cases (probably in the larger towns) they may have been allowed to remain as a subject people. But most likely the conquest was, as a rule, one of dispossession.

---

\* The writer has as far as possible retained the older forms of Saxon and Danish names in preference to newer and more accurate spellings, believing that this course would best suit general readers—most of whom are accustomed to the former.

An account of the flight of an Archbishop Sampson from York to Brittany gives A.D. 500 as the date of the fall of Eburacum, and this date is most likely approximately correct. The first historical fact of importance is the erection in 547 of the fortress of Bebbanburgh (Bamborough) by Ida, who had been acknowledged as king by the Angles that were conquering Bernicia—the district between the Tees and the Forth. About twelve years later, Ella united the Anglian clans who were building up Deira,\* the region lying between the Tees and the Humber. But only the eastern portions of these districts were in the hands of the Angles. At the beginning of the seventh century Bernicia was bounded on the west by a line from about Edinburgh past the head waters of the Tweed and the Tyne ; the district from this line to the Irish Sea constituted the British kingdom of Strathclyde. Deira consisted only of the East Riding and Cleveland : the West Riding (which constituted the forest-clad kingdom of Elmet), Cumberland, Westmorland, Lancashire and Cheshire, remained in the hands of the Britons. The advance of the Angles was greatly delayed by internal dissension. Ella, having established his position firmly in Deira, endeavoured to assert his supremacy over Bernicia. This brought him into collision with the house of Ida, and resulted in a long-continued war. Indirectly, this war brought about good results. Some of Ella's subjects were sold into slavery by their Bernician captors. Exposed for sale in the market at Rome, they attracted the notice of Gregory (afterwards Pope Gregory I.), and led to the mission of Augustine about ten years later (597). On Ella's death in 588, Ethelric, King of Bernicia, annexed Deira and formed the kingdom

---

\* Deira is the Latinized form of the old British name of the district, Deifyr. In the same way, Bernicia represents the Celtic Bryneich.

of Northumberland or Northumbria. Under his successor, Ethelfrith, Northumbria was again in a position to advance.

The beginning of the seventh century was marked by a great renewal of energy of the hitherto unconquered Britons. Those of the north, reversing their ancient policy, allied themselves with their old enemies the Scots, and prepared for an attack on the Angles. But they met with a crushing defeat at Dægastan (603) (probably Dawston in Liddesdale), which seems to have permanently broken their power. Ten years later Ethelfrith resumed his advance on the west, and took Chester—an important capture, as it cut off the Britons of the north from Wales. But Ethelfrith's movements were hampered by the disaffection of the Deirans, who clung to the house of Ella. Edwin, second son of Ella, who had been driven from place to place by the hostile influence of Ethelfrith, took refuge in 617 with Rædwald, king of East Anglia. Ethelfrith peremptorily demanded his surrender, and Rædwald, knowing that his refusal would mean war, advanced northwards with such rapidity that he took the Northumbrians by surprise. Ethelfrith was defeated and killed in a battle near the borders of Notts and Yorkshire, and Edwin was seated on the throne of Northumbria. This reign is a notable one, for under him Northumbria became the leading power of Britain. The centre was no longer Bamborough, but Eoferwic (York), and this city became a centre of ecclesiastical influence and of learning, and politically the capital of the country. His conquest of Elmet and of the valley of the Forth, in which he founded Edinburgh (Edwin's burh), completed the settlement of Northumbria. In 627 Edwin and his Witan (Council) accepted Christianity and were baptized at York by Paulinus. A church was built (see p. 95) over the spot on which the king received baptism, and Paulinus set energetically about the conversion of Northumbria. But the religious work of Paulinus

and the political schemes of Edwin were destined to speedy destruction. Penda, king of Mercia, annoyed at the spread of Christianity and alarmed at the progress of Northumbria, allied himself with Cadwallon, king of Wales, against Edwin. The Northumbrian king was defeated and slain at Heathfield (now Hatfield, between Doncaster and Thorne), and Paulinus fled to the South (633).

This defeat was followed by the breaking up of Northumbria. Osric (a nephew of Edwin) became lord of Deira, and Eanfrith, a son of Ethelfrith, took possession of Bernicia. Penda withdrew from the North to pursue his schemes against East Anglia, but Cadwallon remained and took York. It was the last serious aggression of the Britons, and for a while it promised to be successful. Osric was defeated and killed in an attempt to recover York, and Eanfrith was assassinated by order of Cadwallon. But Oswald, brother of Eanfrith, emerged from his refuge in the West of Scotland, and recovered Bernicia. In the following year (635) he defeated Cadwallon at Hevenfield, and the death of the British king on the battlefield marks the completion of Anglian conquest. Oswald invited Aidan to Lindisfarne, and under his direction Christianity speedily took a permanent hold on Northumbria. In this case it was not Rome, but the Celtic mission of Iona, that was the centre of Christian influence. For a time, however, it seemed as if the house of Ida was to fare no better than the house of Ella. A second conflict between Mercia and Northumbria ended with the death of Oswald at the Battle of Maserfeld.\* Penda seized upon Deira and cruelly ravaged Bernicia. But the Bernicians clung to their faith and to their kingly house. Oswy took his brother Oswald's place in Bernicia, and shortly afterwards re-conquered

---

\* The site of this battle is a matter of dispute. There is good authority for Oswestry (Oswald's tree).

Deira. Under his authority Northumbria recovered strength, and the work of the Irish missionaries spread rapidly. Penda again took alarm, and marched northwards against Oswy. But the Mercian king was defeated and slain at the battle of the Winwaed (probably Winmore, near Leeds), and with him ended the Pagan re-action (655). This victory restored peace and supremacy to Northumbria. Oswy's reign is marked by a curious and important religious dissension. The Christianity of the kingdom was derived from Celtic sources, and the usages were those of the old British Church. Oswy's queen, Eanfled, had been brought up at the court of Canterbury : both she and the friends who surrounded her—prominent among whom was Wilfrid, tutor to the royal children—were accustomed to the Roman use, and strongly urged its introduction. The older discipline had the support of Colman, Aidan's successor at Lindisfarne, the Abbess Hilda, and the great bulk of the clergy of the North. The king's own sympathies were with the Celtic friends and protectors of his youth ; but he was prevailed upon to bring the matter before a synod held at Streaneshalch (Whitby) in 664. At this meeting the arguments of Wilfrid and the influence of the queen prevailed, and Oswy declared in favour of Rome. He has been accused of ingratitude, but there is no doubt but that he was acting in the best interests of his kingdom. A contrary decision would have cut him off, not only from Rome, but from almost the whole of Western Christendom—including the southern part of England. Such an isolation would have seriously retarded the progress of civilization in Northumbria. Oswy died in 670, and before the end of his reign the supremacy passed from Northumbria, and York ceased to be the political capital of England. But what she lost in this respect she more than regained as a centre of learning and of religious life and influence. Egfrith, son of Oswy, extended the kingdom by conquering the

remains of Cumbria, but his defeat and death in an expedition against the Picts (685) entailed the loss of all possessions north of the Forth. His brother, Aldfrid (sometimes confused with his elder brother Alchfrid, who took part in the synod of Streatnesshalch and is commemorated in the Runic inscription on the famous Bewcastle Cross\*), occupied his reign (685-705) largely in retrieving the losses of his predecessor. But this period is famous as the time of Caedmon (the poet, died 680), to whom the Runic cross at Ruthwell is erected,† of Cuthbert (died 685), and of Wilfrid (634-709). The last was raised to the See of York after the synod of Streatnesshalch, but not long after he came into conflict with Theodore, Archbishop of Canterbury. Theodore had been appointed in 668 by Pope Vitalian, and he set to work with conspicuous ability and vigour to organize the church government of England. He divided the country into dioceses, and these—up to the latter part of the nineteenth century—coincided almost exactly with the main divisions and sub-divisions of the “Heptarchy.” Theodore divided the See of York without consulting Wilfrid, and the latter, deeply incensed, appealed to Rome and obtained a favourable verdict. But resentment of foreign interference began early in English history. The Northumbrian king disregarded the Papal verdict, imprisoned Wilfrid, and subsequently banished him. It was not till after a long exile (during which he did noble missionary work), and a reconciliation with Theodore, that he was restored to his See. This and various other incidents in his eventful life throw much light on the relation between Rome and the Anglo-Saxon kings. About twenty-five years after the death of Wilfrid, York became an archbishopric,

\* Stephen's *Runic Monuments of Scandinavia and England*, p. 128.

† *Ibid.*, p. 136.

and its bishop Primate of the North—thus completing, at least in principle, the original scheme of Gregory. His intention had been to divide England into two archbishoprics, London and York; but the long-delayed conversion of London caused the primacy of the South to be firmly seated at Canterbury. Aldfrid was succeeded by several obscure kings who for over thirty years held the kingdom together, but did nothing worthy of note. The only interesting figure of this period is Bede (673-735). Eadbert (737-758) reigned with some vigour, and added the last remains of Strathclyde to his dominions. His name appears in a Runic inscription on a font found at Bingley.\* In 758 he resigned, and spent the remaining ten years of his life in a monastery. Eadbert's brother, Egbert, became Archbishop of York in 735. He carried on the work of building, so well begun by Wilfrid, and founded a school, of which the brightest ornament was his pupil Alcuin (735-804). So great was the fame of the school and library of York in the eighth century, that Charlemagne persuaded Alcuin to come to France, and there initiate the kind of work that had been so successful in England. Eadbert's successors were feeble and obscure princes, tributaries of Mercia or Wessex, and their reigns were periods of internal confusion and dissension. In spite of political troubles, York and Jarrow continued to be homes of learning, and to attract students from all over the British Isles, and even from the Continent.

The end of the eighth century saw the beginning of the great stream of Scandinavian invasion that affected the whole of Great Britain, and no part more powerfully than Northumbria. The Northmen or Ostmen (Eastmen) consisted of Danes and Norwegians. The latter ravaged and then colonized the Orkneys,

\* Stephen's *Runic Monuments of Scandinavia and England*, p. 137.

Shetlands and Hebrides, and the west coast of Scotland and Cumberland, with isolated stations in Wales and Cornwall. The Danes were the preponderating power in the attack on the east coasts of England and Ireland, but Norwegians frequently served with them. The Celts whom they invaded distinguished the Dub-ghail (Dougal) or "dark strangers" from the Finn-ghail, "fair strangers." Beginning as raiders, the Northmen soon became settlers, and then conquerors. Their raids were on a larger scale than those of the Saxons. We hear no more of expeditions of five or six ships. Fleets of two or three hundred, or even of six hundred, sail brought the invading hosts. These boats were long and narrow, and of light draught,\* and could easily sail up estuaries and even rivers. Their usual plan was to secure their boats in a "wik," *i.e.*, a creek or bay (or later, any convenient harbour); in these they would frequently winter, after a successful expedition, and thus be ready to resume operations in the spring. Hence they were usually spoken of by the Saxons as "wik-ings," or "vik-ings." Their invasions assumed more and more national magnitude and character, and were led in later times by kings or kings' sons, such as Olaf Tryggveson, Eric Blodax (bloody axe), Eric Haraldson, Svend Tveskjaeg (fork-beard), etc. Their advance was systematic; every fresh settlement was a stepping stone for further progress. Thus the Scottish isles served as a base for their attack on Ireland, and their Irish settlements in turn as a base for the invasion of England—which was thus assailed from west and east.

In 793 the Danes plundered Lindisfarne; in 794 they sacked Jarrow. For more than half a century they confined themselves to making raids or settlements on various parts of the English coasts. Their activity

---

\* One of the best preserved of these boats was dug up at Gokstad in Norway. It was seventy-eight feet long, sixteen feet broad, less than six feet deep, and it drew four feet of water.

was chiefly directed against Ireland and Northern France, and one or two sharp defeats from the Wessex kings, Egbert and Ethelwulf, served to teach them caution. But in 866 their attack became overwhelming.\* In 867 they defeated the Northumbrian army at York, after a brave resistance, and captured the city. Thenceforward York becomes Danish. A codex in York Minster, written about 950, has on the fly-leaf a list of the bondmen (and *fester-men* or sureties) of Archbishop Alfric. This list, which was written about 1023, contains seventy-eight names, of which over sixty are certainly Scandinavian.† To a document of about 1080, now in the York Minster Library, are appended the names of a number of York citizens. Most of these names are unmistakably Scandinavian.‡ The old independence of Northumbria is now a thing of the past. Danish place names§ are thickly scattered over the eastern counties from the Tees to the Nen. But the conquest was not now one of extermination or dispossession. Angle and Dane were sufficiently akin to amalgamate. The efforts of the Danes to conquer the Saxons of the South were met by a determined and successful resistance. Under Alfred and a line of able successors the tide of conquest turned, and the North owned again the supremacy of the Wessex kings. But the “Danelaw” or

\* The most prominent Danish leader was Ingvar Beenles (Boneless), son of Ragnar Lodbrok. There is no historical foundation for the legend according to which the invader was actuated by revenge for the death of his father, who is said to have been cast into a pit of serpents by Ella of Northumbria. The historical Ragnar fell fighting in Ireland.

† See *Trans. Yorks. Dialect Soc.*, part VII. (February, 1906), pp. 43-49.

‡ Such as Arngrim, Udgrim, Ulf, Ulfkil, Hardulf, Beornulf, etc. See *Yorks. Arch. Journ.*, part 72 (1905), pp. 412-416.

§ Most of these end in “by,” “thorp,” “toft” and “wick.” See Taylor, *Words and Places* (1885), Chap. viii.

“Danelagh” (the half Danish region of the North), was allowed the retention of its own customs, and a certain measure of self-government. Petty kings, such as Regnald, Olaf and Erik, reigned in York and minted coins. In 936 the Danes and the men of the North allied themselves with the Welsh and Scotch to break the power of the Saxons, but the allied army was defeated by Athelstan in 937 at Brunanburgh.\* The victorious king visited York on his return to the South, destroyed the Danish fort (which was probably on the Castle Hill), and founded the Hospital of St. Peter (afterwards St. Leonard’s, see p. 140). He made Eric Blodax, son of Harald Harfagr (King of Norway), under-king of York. Eric was expelled by Athelstan’s successor, Edred, who made Northumbria an earldom (or jarldom), with York as the residence of the eorldeorman (or jarl). Eric gathered an army among the Ostmen of Ireland, and made a bold effort to regain his throne; but he was defeated and killed by Edred’s regent, Earl Oswulf, on Stainmoor.† The Danish Conquest, 1013-1042, chiefly affected the South: under Knut and his sons, York probably enjoyed freedom from external interference. In 1041 the earldom fell to Siward the Strong, the conqueror of Macbeth, who died at York in 1055. Harold Godwinson then made his brother Tostig earl—a stern, harsh man, but inflexibly just. Justice, however, seems to have been the last thing that his turbulent subjects wanted, and they expelled him in 1065. Harold then made Morcar earl, and thereby incurred the resentment of his brother. In the early part of 1066, Edward the Confessor died, and Harold was elected king. Tostig, after two ineffectual attempts

\* The site has been much disputed. There is, perhaps, most to be said in favour of Dunbar.

† See Collingwood, *Saga-book of the Viking Club*, Jan., 1901 (Vol. II., part 3).

to regain his earldom, persuaded Harald Hardrada (hard counselled\*) of Norway, half-brother of St. Olaf, to invade Northumbria on his behalf. The Norwegian fleet sailed up the Humber and the Ouse as far as Riccall (about ten miles from York), and Harald, disembarking his troops, marched on York.† At Fulford, a mile to the south of the city, he was met by a Northumbrian force under Morcar and Edwin, Earl of Mercia. The Norwegians were victorious, and York surrendered. Harold hurried North, and at his approach the Norse king fell back beyond the Derwent, and took up a strong position near Stamford Bridge. The English army promptly followed him up. A single Norwegian is said to have defended the bridge, and to have slain forty Englishmen before a lance (or, according to some accounts, a spear thrust by a boatman between the planks of the bridge) despatched him. But this action, even if it took place, did not affect the fortune of the battle. The English attacked furiously, and the Norwegians were totally defeated. Harald and Tostig were among the slain. Harold returned to York, but while there received news that William the Norman had landed at Pevensey. He hurried southwards, and within a month lost his crown and his life at Hastings, and England entered on a new phase of history.

Nothing more strongly shews the racial rivalry and political severance between the Danelaw and the South than the apathy which the North displayed during the Norman invasion. It was the men of the South who fought at Hastings: no help came

---

\* Compare with this nickname that of Ethelred, *the unready*, i.e., the "un-counselled" or "ill-advised."

† The march of the Norwegians in this campaign is along the glacial ridge that formed the terminal moraine of the great glacier of the Vale of York. No doubt this offered the only firm road at the time that was safely raised above the surrounding swamps. (See page 3.)

from the North. After the battle, Edwin and Morcar advanced on London with some Northumbrian and Mercian levies, but they fell back on William's advance without striking a blow. In 1076 a rising was attempted in the North, but the insurgents shewed no cohesion. William entered York, hastily erected some fortifications on the Castle Hill, and left a garrison of 500 men. Another revolt occurred in 1068, but was marked by the same weakness and irresolution. The rebels attacked York, but William quickly marched on the city, and dispersed the attacking army. He repaired and enlarged the fortifications and increased the garrison to 3,000 men. The appearance of a Danish fleet in the Humber in 1069 was the signal for a more formidable uprising. York was captured by a Danish-Northumbrian army, and the garrison massacred. Unfortunately, a fire kindled by the garrison spread to the city, and consumed the Minster and Egbert's library. William bought off the Danes, and captured York after an obstinate resistance in which Waltheof, the son of Siward and the last of the Northumbrian heroes, shewed remarkable courage. This ended the independence of Northumbria, and York ceased to be a metropolis.

BIBLIOGRAPHY.—Drake, *Eboracum*; Hargrove, *History and Description of the City of York*; Worsaae, *The Danes and Norwegians in England*, etc. (1852); J. R. Green, *The Making of England* and *The Conquest of England*; Raine, *York*; Hodgkin, *History of England* (Vol. I. of "The Political History of England").

## YORK SINCE THE NORMAN CONQUEST.

W. W. HARGROVE.

**T**O one interested in the history of his country, York recalls many memories of the past. Around it still remain portions of the ancient walls which guarded the Roman legions ; here died a Roman emperor ; within its towers a Saxon earl opposed the Norman Conqueror. The city yet possesses her noble Minster, some remains of her palaces and glorious abbeys, and still we may walk around the battlements, from which Newcastle and his Royalists defied the Republicans under Fairfax, before the fatal field of Marston Moor.

Though before the devastation by William the Norman, described in the previous article, York was so large a city that its suburbs extended to villages a mile distant in each direction, and Higden, in his *Polychronicon*, says :—“ York seems so fair as the City of Rome, before it was burnt by William the Conqueror, from the beauty and magnificence of its buildings,” yet there is little to recount in its history from that time until the reign of Stephen, when, in the year 1137, a fire in the city, accidentally caused, spread so extensively as to burn down part of the Cathedral, St. Mary’s Abbey, St. Leonard’s Hospital, thirty-nine parish churches in the city, and Trinity Church in the suburbs.

In 1138, David, King of Scotland, besieged York with a powerful army. Archbishop Thurstan called together the nobility and gentry of the county, their names, as recorded by the Prior of Hexham, being William de Albemarle, Walter de Gent, Robert de Brus, Roger de Mowbray, Walter Espec, Gilbert de Lacy, William de Lacy, William de Percy, Richard de Courcey, William Fossard and Robert de Stoutville. These barons, enraged at seeing their country miserably wasted, raised forces and, headed by the Archbishop,

marched against the enemy. The King of Scotland did not wait for their coming, but retired northward. The Archbishop caused a crucifix to be fixed on the pole from which floated the consecrated banners of St. Peter of York, and at the top he placed a silver vessel containing the Eucharist. This standard was borne into the field of battle, an action which so roused the superstitious fears of the one party, and the enthusiasm of the other, that on the 22nd of August, 1138, when the English army came up with David, near Northallerton, the Scots were completely routed. Hence this fight is often called "The Battle of the Standard."

In 1160, Henry II. held, in the city, the first parliament ever mentioned in history by that name, and before it Malcolm, King of Scotland, was summoned to appear.

In 1171, Henry called another convention of bishops and barons at York, to which he summoned William, the successor of Malcolm, to do homage for the kingdom of Scotland, and he, in consequence, deposited on the altar of St. Peter in the Cathedral, his breast-plate, spear and saddle, in token of submission.

The reign of King Richard I. was signalised by a dreadful persecution of the Jews in England. It began in Westminster at his coronation, but soon spread to York. At that time a considerable number of the Jewish race resided here, chiefly in Jewbury and Layerthorpe, and they had a school of some eminence and a splendid library. On the 16th March, 1190, in the dusk of evening, a number of armed men, apparently strangers, entered York, and in the darkness attacked the house of a rich Jew, Benedict, who had been killed in London. His widow and children were butchered, their property carried off, and their house burnt down. On the following day, Joscaeus, another wealthy Jew, who had escaped from London, sought refuge in the Castle with his family and treasures, stating that his house was marked

for destruction on the ensuing night. Most of the Jews in York and the neighbourhood followed his example, and were also received by the Governor within the fortress. This officer left the Castle soon after, and on his return, the Jews (said to number 500 men, besides women and children), fearing he came with evil intent, and that the mob which followed would enter with him should the drawbridge be lowered, refused him admission. Upon this he, in conjunction with the Sheriff, ordered the rabble to attack the Castle. The mob, in ever-increasing numbers, laid close siege, and at the end of several days had made every preparation to take the place by storm. On the eve of the day fixed for the attack, a learned rabbi, who had been but a short time in England, seeing the capture of the place was inevitable, advised his brethren to die by their own hands rather than by those of their enemies. The majority applauded this resolution, and kindled a large fire in which they burnt their costly garments, then, having killed their own relatives, and before stabbing themselves, they set light to part of the Castle, in hope that the whole might be consumed with them in one vast funeral pyre.

The following morning, as the mob rushed to the attack, they saw only a few Jews who had shrunk from the horrors of the previous night. In the hope of saving their lives these expressed their readiness to abjure their religion, and threw open the gates of the Castle, but at once every survivor was barbarously murdered. The crowd then marched to the Cathedral, obtained forcible possession of the bonds of Christian debtors deposited there by the Jews for greater security, and burnt them in the middle of the nave. The Bishop of Ely, in his position as Chancellor and Chief Justiciary of the realm, came to York with an armed force, displaced both Sheriff and Governor, and laid a fine on the richest citizens, though they had taken no part in the riot. The King

was still pressing for money for the holy war, and the amount thus raised was remitted to him on the Continent.

During the reigns of John and Henry III., York was frequently the seat of royalty. Several parliaments also assembled there, and the courts of justice, with Domesday Book and the other national records, were brought from London. John's first visit was in 1199, when he fined the citizens £100 for not going out to meet him. A reconciliation was made in 1201, and he subsequently visited York some twelve times, and was on his way hither when he was taken ill and died in Lincolnshire.

In the month of June, 1221, a stately ceremonial took place, when Henry III. gave his sister Joan in marriage to Alexander II. of Scotland. These kings met here again in 1229-30, and kept their Christmas right royally. Alexander died in 1249, and Henry found a wife for Alexander III. in Margaret, one of the Scottish princesses. They were married in the Minster on the 26th of December, 1251, neither of them being quite eleven years of age. The day before the wedding, Henry conferred the honour of knighthood on Alexander and twenty of his nobles in the Cathedral.

A disagreement took place in 1265 between the citizens and the Abbot of St. Mary's, concerning their respective privileges and boundaries, but this was happily brought to an end by Archbishop Thoresby, though not without some destruction of life and property.

Edward I., son of Henry, stayed some time in York on his way to Scotland in 1291, when a famous Welshman, Rees-ap-Meredith, was brought to this city, tried for high treason, condemned, and drawn through York to the gallows, where he was hanged and quartered.

The Courts of the Exchequer and the King's Bench were both transferred to York, and continued there

for seven years. The mutinous barons were summoned to attend the special parliament, at which the King's confirmation of the *Magna Charta* and the *Charta de Foresta* was read. The Bishop of Carlisle then pronounced a heavy curse against all those who should attempt to break the same.

After the battle of Falkirk, the King returned to York, and in 1299 held another parliament there. In this reign York ranked amongst the English ports, and furnished one vessel to King Edward's fleet.

On the accession of King Edward II., in the year 1307, a disturbed period of history commenced. On October 18th, 1309, a meeting of the National Council took place in the city, at which it was decided to summon a parliament for the following February. None but members of the Upper House were, however, called, and great dissatisfaction prevailed.

In 1311, Edward II. kept his Christmas in York, and, expecting an incursion of the Scots, caused the Castle and walls to be fortified. To York Edward II. fled after the fatal battle of Bannockburn in 1314, and also after his pursuit by Robert Bruce in 1322. The Scotch lords, Randolph and Douglas, at the head of a force of 15,000 men, made a dash hither, with the hope of carrying off Queen Isabella, but a prisoner whom the English took betrayed their scheme just in time to prevent its success.

The Wardrobe Book for the year 1316 shews that the King was then residing in the house of the Friars Minors, where he was joined by the Queen in September. This building was the customary residence of the early kings, as its nearness to the Castle afforded protection in case of necessity. The house must have been on a large scale. It was enclosed within a wall which extended from the lower end of Castlegate to the Ouse, where a barrier, now called the "Friars' Wall," is the only portion remaining. There is an entry in the Wardrobe Book for the above year of a payment of £6 13s. 4d. by the King to John de

Thurgenthalpe, warden of the house, towards the building of the river wall. There is also an entry that Edward paid the friars forty shillings a week during his residence, which must have been as rent, for the royal party provided their own maintenance, as friars' fare would hardly have satisfied the King and his suite. Edward was also much in York during the next three years, and on the 1st September, 1318, another parliament met here and sat in session for fifty-one days. The King pardoned the Earl of Lancaster and his adherents, and held a muster in York of 5,000 able-bodied men from the county, to put down the bands of freebooters and marauders who were ravaging the country in every direction. In May, 1319, there was another session of parliament, but of short duration, as the object was chiefly to obtain funds for carrying on the Scottish war. The Exchequer Rolls, the Pipe Rolls and the Domesday Survey were sent to York in carts. But peace was not restored, for a large body of Scots, amounting to 15,000, under the Earl of Moray and Sir James Douglas, rushed to the very gates of the city, taking an immense booty and burning what remained of the suburbs. The little English army marched out, but suffered terrible slaughter at Myton-on-the-Swale, the Mayor, Nicholas Fleming, being killed, and Archbishop Melton's crosier found afterwards in a ditch. King Edward held another parliament in York in 1320, and in 1323 left the city, never to return.

His son, Edward III., arrived in York in May, 1327, where his first act was to strengthen the fortifications. During his stay he also resided in the house of the Friars Minors. After six weeks he marched into the North, but was not away long, since on the 24th of January, 1328, he was married in York Minster by Archbishop Melton, to Philippa, daughter of William, Count of Hainault.

Richard II. tarried some time in York in 1385, and again in 1389, when he granted a new charter

for the city, and gave his own sword to William de Selby, then Mayor, to be borne before him and his successors, with the point erect, except in the presence of the Crown. From this special appointment of the King, our Chief Magistrate has ever since been honoured with the title of Lord Mayor. A few years later Richard presented a mace to the Lord Mayor (Robert Savage) and a cap of maintenance to the sword-bearer. He also abolished the office of bailiff, and appointed two sheriffs, thus forming a county of the city, to which the Ainsty was subsequently added. In 1392, Richard, displeased with London, removed to York the Courts of Chancery and King's Bench.

Henry IV. ascended the throne in 1399, but paid no visit to York until 1400. The powerful family of the Percys, assisted by Archbishop Scrope, advised that the King should be treated as a usurper, and that they should draw their swords for the rightful heir—the youthful Earl of March. His Grace also preached a sermon which caused the people to take up arms, and soon 20,000 persons resorted to their standard. The Archbishop, with the Earl of Nottingham, took the field at Shipton, three miles from York, with 8,000 men. By delusive promises, however, the Archbishop and Nottingham were induced to disband their troops. Prince John and the Earl of Westmoreland then conducted them before the King at Pontefract Castle, and by his orders they were both summarily beheaded without trial, in a field near Bishopthorpe, and their heads placed on spears above the walls of the city, but permission was given that their bodies might be interred in the Cathedral. Henry also issued a mandate from Pontefract, dated June 3rd, 1405, depriving York of all its liberties, franchises and customs. This, however, was shortly afterwards withdrawn.

In Henry IV.'s reign, during the Wars of the Roses between the rival houses of York and Lancaster, this city was the theatre of much suffering. Richard

Plantagenet, Duke of York, whose claim to the Crown by right of lineal descent was strongly held, fell at the battle of Wakefield, December 30th, 1460, and his head, covered with a paper crown, was, by order of Queen Margaret, placed on a pole over Micklegate Bar, "that York might overlook the town of York."

Edward, eldest son of the late Duke Richard, at once hastened to avenge his father's death, and proceeding to London, where the Yorkist party was strong, he was at once proclaimed King. As Edward IV. he then marched to York to meet the forces of Margaret, who with Henry VI. and the Prince of Wales had stationed themselves there. A battle was fought at Towton, a village near Tadcaster, on Palm Sunday, the 29th of March, 1461, in which the Lancastrian party was defeated with great slaughter. The Dukes of Somerset and Exeter posted to York, and thence fled to Scotland, with the Queen and her unfortunate husband, having escaped out of one of the postern gates. Edward, on reaching the city, took down the heads of his father and Salisbury from Micklegate Bar, and replaced them with the heads of the Lancastrian Earls of Devon and Wiltshire. He spent his Easter in the city, and on June 20th, 1461, was crowned King in London. He returned to York in 1464, and occupied the Palace. After the battle of Hexham, in this year, a number of Lancastrian prisoners were executed at York. In the Tower of London is lodged a grant from Edward IV. to the city, dated 10th June, 1464, in indemnification for the damage it had sustained during the wars between the rival Roses.

Edward's death took place in 1483. His brother Richard, Duke of Gloucester, who was in Scotland, upon receiving the news hastened to York, with a retinue of 600 knights and esquires, all clad, like himself, in deep mourning. He caused a solemn Mass to be performed in the Minster for the repose of the late King's soul, summoned the nobility of the North to

the city, and made them swear fealty to his nephew, the young King Edward V.—he himself being the first to take the oath of allegiance. But not long after, Richard, by cunning and intrigue, seized upon the throne and caused himself to be crowned at Westminster. The new King, accompanied by his Queen and the youthful Prince Edward, arrived at York on the 30th August, 1483, the citizens receiving them with great pomp, and on the 8th of September he took part in the ceremony of investing the young Edward with his full title and dignity of Prince of Wales.

After the battle of Bosworth Field, where Richard fell, the Earl of Richmond ascended the throne as Henry VII., and by his marriage with the Princess Elizabeth of York united the houses of York and Lancaster, and thus happily put an end to the fatal wars of the Red and the White Rose. After his coronation in London, in 1486, in imitation of his predecessor, Henry made a tour to the North. On approaching York he was met by the Corporation and citizens on horseback, joined on nearing the city walls by a procession of Friars and a vast multitude of people. During his residence, which extended over a month, he dispensed favours and honours, and became popular in the city.

In 1503, Henry's daughter, the Princess Margaret, was received in York with much state on her journey to Scotland to become the bride of James IV. She was accompanied by 500 lords and ladies, and at the gates of York was met by a grand procession of civic magnates and cavaliers. Her reception was splendid, and she was received and entertained in the Palace of the Archbishop. In the morning His Grace led her to High Mass in the Minster, attired in cloth of gold, her gown being belted with a precious girdle studded with gems, the ends of which hung down to the ground. She was presented with a silver cup ornamented with gold, and on leaving the city for the

North was accompanied by the Corporation and a goodly array of citizens as far as Clifton, where she made the following gracious speech :—

“ My Lord Mayor, your brethren and all the whole  
“ City of York, I shall evermore endeavour to love  
“ you and this city all the days of my life.”

In order to promote trade, Henry established ten staple towns in England with peculiar commercial privileges, and of these York was the second. In 1509 the first printing press was set up in York by Hugo Goes, who fixed his office within the Minster Yard.\*

The suppression of the abbeys and monasteries by Henry VIII. had a most prejudicial effect upon York, for a large number of wealthy and beneficent communities were thereby dispersed. In consequence of the discontent caused by this act, disturbances broke out in 1536 in the northern counties, and both York and Hull were captured by the rebels. This insurrection, however, known as “ The Pilgrimage of Grace,” was speedily put down by the Duke of Norfolk, and Robert Aske with several other leaders were executed at York. The more effectually to suppress any attempt at further insurrection, Henry, in 1537, appointed the famous “ Council of the North,” which was presided over by an officer called the Lord President of the North. This council, which held its sittings in the Guildhall, continued its existence until the time of Charles I. The Lord President resided at the King’s Manor, near Bootham Bar. Nine abbeys and monasteries, sixteen hospitals and seventeen chapels were suppressed in York, together with eighteen parish churches, the materials and revenues of which were converted to secular purposes.

Henry VIII. spent eleven days in York in 1541, having arranged to hold a conference with his nephew, James V. of Scotland. He arrived on the 15th

\* Cp., Davies—*Memorials of the York Press*, p. 15; also Hargrove—*History of York*, I., p. 124.

September, being received by the Lord Mayor and Corporation, who presented him with a gold cup containing £100, and another gold cup for the Queen with £40. On leaving he ordered the Archbishop to cause all the shrines that still remained in the various churches to be taken down and defaced.

In the reign of Elizabeth, 1569, an insurrection broke out in the North, headed by the Earls of Northumberland and Westmoreland, the object of which was to raise Mary Queen of Scots to the English throne. The rebel army intended to besiege York, but finding it well garrisoned under the Earl of Sussex and Sir George Bowes, retreated northwards, but was soon defeated. The Earl of Westmoreland escaped, but the Earl of Northumberland was brought to York and beheaded on a scaffold erected in the Pavement, near to St. Crux Church, on August 22nd, 1572, and his head was placed on Micklegate Bar, several other prisoners being executed in the same way on Knavesmire.

King James I., on his way to London to receive his crown, visited York on the 16th of April, 1603. The next day being Sunday, the Lord Mayor, Recorder, Aldermen and Sheriffs, the Town Clerk, with the twenty-four, went to the Manor where King James was residing, and there presented him with a "fayre cuppe," with cover of silver and gilt, weighing seventy-three ounces, and placed in the same two hundred angels of gold. He afterwards attended service at the Minster. The next day, before he left he ordered all prisoners in the city to be set at liberty, with the exception of wilful murderers, traitors and Papists, and knighted thirty-one gentlemen. James' next visit was in 1617, when, at the Minster, he touched seventy persons for the "King's evil."

Charles I. visited York in 1639 on his way to meet the Covenanters in Scotland. He was received at Micklegate Bar by the city officials and the trained bands of the city and ainsty, numbering 600 men,

clad in buff and scarlet, with russet boots, black caps and feathers, and was treated with great honour during his stay, which lasted nearly a month. On Good Friday he attended service in the Minster, and touched 200 persons for the "King's evil." At the same time the Bishop of Winchester washed the feet of thirty-nine poor men in white wine, wiped and kissed them, and gave them presents of fish, bread, wine, and a silver penny.

On the 24th of September, 1640, a great Council of the State met in the hall of the Deanery (see page 67) to consider the continued disturbances among the Scottish Covenanters. In 1641, Parliament decreed the abolition of the Council of the North. Finding that he and his Parliament could not agree, Charles fixed his residence in York, where he arrived with his son (afterwards Charles II.) on the 19th of March, 1642, and was soon followed by many of his nobility. His stay lasted for about five months, during which time he received frequent communications from Parliament begging him to return to London. In April the King went to Hull to seize the ammunition stored there, but being refused admittance by Sir John Hotham, returned to York. The answer given by Parliament to the King's complaint at this treatment was taken by both parties as a declaration of war. The Parliament ordered the militia to be enrolled, and the King on his side held a large meeting in York on the 12th of May, 1642, at which a royal bodyguard was formed, and on the 27th issued a proclamation forbidding all men belonging to the militia or trained bands to rise or march without his consent. The Parliament thereupon decreed that whoever assisted the King would be treated as a traitor, and prevented the sending of ammunition to York. Several members of both Houses now thought the Parliament was going too far, and thirty-two Lords and sixty of the Commons hastened to join the King. On the 3rd of June, Charles held another large meeting on Heworth

Moor, on the outskirts of the city. Guizot, in his *History of the English Revolution*, says "More than 40,000 men were present, freeholders, farmers, citizens, on foot and horseback. The Cavaliers soon perceived that a petition was circulating among them, beseeching the King to banish all thought of war, and to reconcile himself with the Parliament. They burst into invective and menaces, rode violently in upon the groups, snatching the copies of the petition from the hands of those who were reading it, and declaring that the King would not receive it."

In the month of June, 1643, Charles was encouraged by the arrival of 10,000 stand of arms and thirty-eight pieces of ordnance, besides mortars and an immense quantity of ammunition, which Queen Henrietta Maria had procured for him in Holland, by pawning the Crown jewels. York was put in a state of defence, and guns were mounted at all the gates, the command of the garrison being given to the Earl of Newcastle.

In the spring of 1644, York was besieged by a Parliamentary army of 40,000 men, under the command of the Earls of Leven and Manchester and Sir Thomas Fairfax. Leven's troops were quartered at Bishopthorpe and Middlethorpe, those of Fairfax at Fulford and Heslington, and Manchester's at Clifton. With the last was Lieutenant-General Cromwell. Several batteries were erected against the city, the most effective being placed on Lamel Hill (now in the grounds of the Retreat), commanding Walmgate Bar, where five pieces of cannon played almost incessantly on the Tower, Castle and city.\* On Trinity Sunday, June 16th, a party of Manchester's troops undermined St. Mary's Tower, at the corner of Marygate, and blew it up, making at the same time a breach in the

---

\* An earthwork, which probably dates from this period, is still raceable on Holgate Hill, marked by a clump of trees which form a readily recognisable landmark, 1,000 feet from the western angle of the walls. This hill would command the Boroughbridge and Wetherby Roads.—ED.

Abbey wall. A storming party forced their way into the King's Manor, but their retreat was cut off by the city troops, and fifty were killed and two hundred and fifty taken prisoners. The siege was continued until June 24th, the Parliamentarians making several attempts at escalade, but were on every occasion driven back. On the 30th June, Prince Rupert was marching to the relief of York with 20,000 men, and Leven, Manchester and Fairfax, feeling themselves too weak to meet him in their present positions, withdrew their troops to Marston Moor. After a siege of twenty-two days, the city received the Prince with the greatest joy. A council of war was immediately held, at which Newcastle advised that the enemy should not be attacked for some days, as he expected Colonel Clavering with 3,000 men from the North, besides 2,000 drawn from other sources.

Rupert, however, was resolved to fight at once, and on the 2nd July, 1644, marched out from York at the head of the Royalist forces, numbering 14,000 foot, 9,000 cavalry, with twenty-five pieces of cannon, towards the fatal field of Marston Moor. The battle began at three o'clock in the afternoon, and ended in an irretrievable disaster for the Cavaliers, who were pursued with great slaughter almost within sight of York. The stream of fugitives and wounded men poured into the city through Micklegate Bar, but the garrison only were allowed to enter. Rupert himself narrowly escaped being made a prisoner, and owed his safety solely to a good horse. Newcastle, incensed at this defeat, set off with many others for Scarborough, whence they sailed for Holland. Rupert then left the city, and the victorious army appeared before the walls of York on the 5th of July, and summoned the citizens to surrender. The Governor, Sir Thomas Glenham, refused, and on the 11th the siege was recommenced ; whereupon Glenham asked for a parley, and the city was surrendered to the Parliamentarians on honourable terms on the 16th of July, 1644.

The next day the conquerors were drawn up on each side of the road from Micklegate Bar, forming a double row about a mile long, and between them marched out the retiring forces of the garrison on their way to Skipton. Leven, Manchester and Fairfax then entered the city, and after taking possession of the ammunition, etc., proceeded to the Cathedral to return thanks for their success, prayer being offered up by the Rev. Robert Douglas, a Presbyterian minister, Chaplain to the Earl of Leven.

Lord Fairfax was constituted governor of the city by the Parliament, and the Corporation, on July 25th, 1644, presented to him a quantity of French wine "in regard of the great love and affection he hath shown to the city." Sir Thomas Fairfax, his son, was about this time appointed commander-in-chief of all the Republican forces.

When the country became wholly under the subjection of the Parliament, the city was deprived, in 1647, of its garrison, with the exception of Clifford's Tower, of which the Lord Mayor was appointed governor.

On New Year's Day, 1648, Major-General Skippon arrived in York, bringing the sum of £200,000, which was paid to the Scots in the Guildhall, for their services to the Parliament during the Civil War. On the 30th January, 1649, the unfortunate Charles was beheaded, and on receipt of the news the garrison at Pontefract Castle proclaimed his son as Charles II., and raised the standard of revolt against the ruling powers, but on the 25th of March, 1649, they were compelled to surrender by capitulation, and the Castle was reduced to a heap of ashes. Colonel Morrice and Cornet Blackburn were tried at the following York Assizes, and executed.

In July, 1650, Cromwell arrived in York on an expedition to Scotland. The Lord Mayor had previously ordered the Royal Arms to be taken down from Micklegate and Bootham Bars, and replaced

by those of the Commonwealth. All the artillery in the Tower were fired to salute his approach. The next day he dined with the Lord Mayor, and on the following proceeded on his journey. This appears to have been the only time Cromwell visited York, except after the battle of Marston Moor. There is, however, a tradition that his remains were brought surreptitiously to Yorkshire by a daughter, and that they were concealed at Newburgh Priory.

In 1659 a premature Royalist rising took place in Cheshire, which Yorkshire was to have joined under the leadership of Fairfax. York was then under the charge of Colonel Lilburn. In January, 1660, Fairfax marched his levies to Marston Moor, to meet, by invitation, a portion of Lambert's army, and was afterwards sent to the Hague to invite Charles to return. Finally, on May 11th, 1660, Charles II. was publicly proclaimed King in York by the Lord Mayor.

On the outbreak of the Plague in London, in 1665, James, Duke of York (afterwards James II.), resided here for two months. On this occasion he was heartily welcomed, but when he made a second visit, in 1679, his strong Roman Catholic sympathies roused the resentment of the citizens. In 1684, Charles obtained possession of the city charter on the promise that he would grant a new one, but his death occurred before this could be carried out.\*

Charles died in February, 1684-5, at a time when political and religious feelings ran high in York. James was proclaimed King on the 8th of that month, by the Lord Mayor. The proclamation was also announced in the Castle Yard for the county, and in Thursday Market for the garrison, by the Governor. A new Parliament was summoned, and the election in York caused a severe contest. When James renewed the charter, promised by Charles, it was received on the 8th of August, 1684, at the Mayor's house, with martial music and the ringing of the city bells.

---

\* *Cp., Memoirs of Sir John Reresby.—ED.*

The citizens of York continued loyal to James until they recognised that his zeal for religious tenets imbibed in France was leading him into measures subversive to the English constitution. They then expressed their dissatisfaction, whereupon James displaced the Lord Mayor and some of the Aldermen, and appointed as their successors men who belonged to the Roman Catholic Church, and who were not even freemen of the city. The Chief Magistrate declined to deliver up the sword and mace, and James, finding he had gone too far, adopted a different course. In the interim York was remarkably situated. "It was," observes the Governor, "an Archbishopric without a bishop; a city without a mayor; and a garrison without a soldier." Lord Danby and his adherents endeavoured to persuade Sir John Reresby to join the revolutionary party, arguing that they were in arms for the Protestant religion and government, which James had nearly subverted, but which the Prince of Orange had landed to restore. All their entreaties, however, failed, and he and his inferior officers were made prisoners. Reresby pledged his honour not to leave his own house in York. The Guard House was seised by the Prince's friends, and none who displayed any disapprobation of the proceedings were allowed to leave. On the 29th of November, 1688, a mob assembled, and proceeding to the Roman Catholic chapels, tore away all the pictures and images, threw down the altars, and stealing the books and vestments, publicly burnt them in Coney Street and Pavement. There was no obstacle to prevent the Prince from taking peaceable possession of the throne, and the Lord Mayor and Commonalty of York openly offered their cordial acknowledgments in an address dated the 14th of December. The 14th of February following was observed in York as a day of general rejoicing, and on the 17th, William Henry, Prince of Orange, and Princess Mary his wife, were proclaimed King and Queen of England, France and

Ireland, in the usual manner at the accustomed places in the city.

An Act of Parliament having been passed for the regulation of the currency, the old coin was called in, and one of the King's Mints was erected in the Manor House, without Bootham Bar. Bullion and plate were there coined in 1696 to the amount of £380,621.

From this period until the Rebellion of 1745, no public events happened worthy of notice, but at that crisis, the city gave unequivocal proofs of loyalty. The Archbishop (Thomas Herring) was among the first to sound the alarm, and a large county meeting was held in the Castle, York, on the 24th September, 1745. More than 800 of the nobility, gentry and clergy attended, and £31,420 were subscribed for the support of the Government and the defence of the county. In the City of York £2,435 was raised, with which four companies of volunteers were formed, and designated "Yorkshire Blues."

On the 29th of May, 1746, after the battle of Culloden, the Prince of Hesse arrived in York on his way to Scotland. On the 23rd of July of the same year, the Duke of Cumberland, returning from the devastation of Scotland, received the freedom of the city in a gold box. Of the numerous prisoners tried and convicted in York, twenty-two were executed, and the heads of two of them were fixed on poles at Micklegate Bar, from which they were stolen in January, 1754, by a York tailor named Arundel.

The strong feelings and passions roused by these events long disturbed the social peace of the citizens, and only died with the lapse of years. Between 1754 and 1832 many events of interest occurred in York, but nothing of the national importance of preceding periods; and the limit of space prevents any recapitulation of the progress of local affairs up to the Reform Bill, from which the modern history of York may be said to date.

*Eboracæ peragro fines : lustroque viator  
Quas damnosa dies nondum delevit in illis  
Reliquias veterum, monumentaque temporis acti.*

HENEAGE DERING, 1743.

---

## OLD STREETS AND BUILDINGS.

W. R. WILLIS, F.R. HIST. SOC.

**T**HE visitor to York is at once impressed by the common characteristic of all mediæval towns.

For the most part the intra-mural streets are extremely narrow, and the houses fairly high. Such of the thoroughfares enclosed within the walls of the city as are at all reasonably wide have undergone great changes within the last fifty years. What they have gained in width and in general convenience they have lost in quaint beauty ; and many of the old features which endeared them to a past generation have completely disappeared. There is much, however, of archæological interest and historical association still attaching to many of the streets and by-ways of the city.

Probably no better starting point could be found for an itinerary than the railway station. York station, though it possesses no claims to architectural distinction externally, is, as far as so purely an utilitarian structure can be so described, not inartistic internally. The graceful curves of the lines of roofing and the generous equipment of the place amply justify its claim to be one of the finest railway stations in England. It is the third station in lineal descent in the history of the railway in York. Its immediate predecessor lies within the circle of the city walls, which were pierced to admit the entry of the railway, and is now used, with the old hotel, for railway offices.

Few stories in modern commercial history are so interesting as the tale of local enterprise which gave York the pre-eminence as the chief railway centre of the North of England. The name of George Hudson, the erstwhile linen draper and subsequent Lord Mayor of York, known to posterity as "the Railway King," will ever be honourably associated with the railway history of York. Despite the marvellous vicissitudes of his career and the adverse criticism to which his memory has been subjected, York owes a very substantial tribute of gratitude to Hudson, an obligation of which it has not always been fully sensible.

Leaving the station and turning to the left the way lies over what was formerly known as Bishopsfield, part of which forms the site of the station, and in a portion of which the victims of the cholera visitation of 1832-3 were buried. A small part of this burial ground has been preserved and enclosed. The city wall is here pierced for the road, which is carried by a single-span steel bridge across the river, erected in 1863 at the site of the ferry which until then served as the only means of communication across the river for the city, with the exception of Ouse Bridge.

Passing the Yorkshire Club on the right, which occupies the site of the house in which Dr. Martin Lister (see page 235), the friend and correspondent of Ray, the naturalist, lived, and on the left the remains of St. Leonard's Hospital, the road emerges into Duncombe Place. Standing at the junction of this street with St. Leonard's Place is an eighteenth century red brick house, once the town residence of an ancestor of the Marquess of Ripon—recognisable by the link extinguisher attached near the door, a reminiscence of the days when York was the chief social centre of the North of England.

Close by in Blake Street are the Assembly Rooms, designed by the Earl of Burlington to meet the requirements of the numerous fashionable gatherings which took place in the city. Its chief glory is the famous large room with its corinthian columns.

Duncombe Place is, however, purely modern, and occupies the site of a once narrow thoroughfare known as Lopp Lane, flanked by high houses, scarcely wide enough for two vehicles to pass.

In St. Leonard's Place, standing on the foundations of the cloisters of St. Peter's Hospital, two bays of which are still preserved near the entrance, stands the Theatre Royal, re-built some years ago. This was one of the oldest provincial homes of the drama, a patent having been granted to Mr. Tate Wilkinson, a famous eighteenth century actor-manager, who controlled the old "York circuit," furnishing York, Leeds and Hull with dramatic entertainments, and adapting the seasons at each place to suit local social circumstances. Among the dramatic *alumni* of the York Theatre Royal were Sarah Siddons, Macready, Edmund Kean, and other names equally famous in the history of the British drama.

The history of the Manor House (now the Yorkshire School for the Blind), founded as a memorial to the memory of William Wilberforce, is told elsewhere (page 143).

Where Petergate meets Duncombe Place under the shadow of the south-west corner of the Minster, formerly stood Peter Prison—a relic of the days when the Dean and Chapter enjoyed a legal autonomy and were exempt from municipal jurisdiction.

Turning to the left the road continues through Bootham Bar (page 82) as the main road to the North. In the wall which surrounded St. Mary's Abbey is the archway inserted by the Abbot to allow Princess Margaret, daughter of Henry VII., to go northwards on her way to her unlucky marriage to James of Scotland. Ten years later, after the battle of Flodden Field, her husband's body was met here by the Lord Mayor and was laid in the house of the Prebend of Stillington, on the site of the present deanery.

Bootham is now mainly residential, but contains amongst more noticeable features the Wandesford

Home (founded in 1740) for aged ladies, and at No. 51 the Friends' Boys' School. Further on is Bootham Park, an asylum founded by public subscription in 1772 to alleviate the miseries of the insane, but which afterwards earned an unenviable reputation for the abuses which obtained therein, the publication of which in 1813-14, though by no means exceptional at the time in similar institutions, inaugurated the adoption of more humane and rational modes of treatment.

The road continues under the name of Clifton, and contains on the left the present home of the ancient school of St. Peter (see p. 228), built about 1840—a foundation which claims to be the oldest school in the kingdom, the original site of which is now occupied by the nave of the Minster.

Immediately opposite the school is the Burton Stone, the base of a mediæval way-side cross which stood outside the Hospital of St. Mary Magdalene (see p. 197). The hospital was a place of some importance in the middle ages, for the lane to the right, now known as Burton Lane, led directly to the Forest of Galtres, and travellers often found hospitality and refreshment here. At the forest end of Burton Lane stood the abbot's gallows, on which criminals convicted in the abbot's court expiated their crimes. Near the Burton Stone it was the custom of the Lord Mayor, Sheriff and Aldermen to review and take farewell of the levies which the city raised to aid the king in his wars against the Scots. These levies were usually commanded by the Lord Mayor's esquires, the predecessors of the modern civic functionaries, the sword and mace bearers.

Retracing our footsteps we pass on the right the Ingram Hospital, a Jacobean almshouse (founded in 1640) for poor widows. The main entrance is a Norman porch, probably a portion of the archi-episcopal palace, the site of which was occupied by the city house of Sir Arthur Ingram. Further citywards the circular tower of the St. Mary's Abbey walls is seen at the upper

end of Marygate, a locality to which formerly belonged the right of sanctuary. In this street, nearly opposite the gateway into the Museum Gardens, stands a fine XVIIth century house with carved gables, Almery Garth, in which John Woolman, the Quaker philanthropist, died of smallpox in 1772. St. Mary's Tower was long used to store the records of the Council of the North and the charters and books removed from the Yorkshire monasteries, but these were irretrievably destroyed by the mine sprung by Crawford's soldiers during the siege of York, and would have been lost for ever had not Sir Thomas Fairfax employed Roger Dodsworth to make his transcripts, now in the Bodleian Library. In the garden behind a house (No. 33) a little nearer the Bar stood the observatory in which Piggott and Goodricke investigated the variability of algol (see p. 233).

In High Petergate, amongst the old gabled houses, stands on the south side a house (No. 9) which was successively the residence of Sir Edward Stanhope and of Mr. Henry Swinburne, an eminent seventeenth century ecclesiastical lawyer ; but it owes its chief distinction to the fact that it was purchased in 1665 by Sir Thomas Herbert, the faithful friend and attendant of Charles I. Herbert was the son of Christopher Herbert, who occupied a house still standing in Pavement (No. 26, distinguished by a bronze tablet), and, being sent to Newcastle in 1646-7 on a commission to the King, became an ardent Cavalier and a devoted adherent to the fortunes of his Royal master Sir Thomas was present with Charles at Whitehall on the fatal 30th January, 1649, the King rewarding his fidelity by presenting him on the scaffold with his watch and the cloak which he had worn while crossing the Park.

On the north side of the Minster lies the Dean's Park, formerly occupied by a mass of houses in a ruinous condition, which was removed some eighty years ago, when a new "Residence" for the residentiary

canons and a new Deanery were built. Until after the Reformation there stood here the archi-episcopal palace begun by Archbishop Roger (1154-1181) and enlarged by Walter de Grey, the builder of Bishopthorpe Palace. The work of destruction was begun by Archbishop Young, who destroyed the great hall to sell the material to provide an estate for his son, and nothing now remains but some arcading of the hall or cloister and the beautiful Early English Chapel now used as the Dean and Chapter Library (see p. 243).

Passing across the park to the gate near the Chapter House, the Treasurer's House is reached—a mansion in somewhat mixed architectural style with a fine Tudor entrance. Built originally by Thomas, Archbishop, in 1070, as a residence for the Treasurer of the revenues and property of the archbishop and the Minster, it was burnt in a great fire which destroyed the Minster and the city in 1137 (see p. 42), but was rebuilt by John le Roman during the reign of Edward III. The official duties of Treasurer consisted of the care of the treasury, the fabric of the Minster, and the proper control of all persons in the Minster ; but he had no jurisdiction over anything arising in the choir, this coming under the control of the Dean and Chapter. He also supplied lights to the altars and took care of the copes and costly vestments. The office became extinct in the time of Henry VIII., whose ecclesiastical policy obviated any further necessity for the office, the then Treasurer, William Clyffe, assigning as his reason for resignation the very sufficient one : *Abrepto omni thesauro desiit thesaurarii munus.* The building was subsequently sold to Archbishop Holgate by the Protector Somerset, and passing through various ownerships it eventually came during the Commonwealth into the hands of Lord Fairfax of Denton. Later it became the property of Mr. Ayslaby, of Ripon, an ancestor of the Marquess of Ripon, who was killed in a duel by Sir Jonathan Jennings one Sunday morning

in Charles II.'s reign. The quarrel arose through Mr. Ayslaby having requested his wife's sister, Miss Mallory (daughter of Sir John Mallory, of Studley), to leave a ball at the Duke of Buckingham's house with him at a certain hour. She refused, and he closed the gates of the house upon her. Sir Jonathan Jennings espoused her cause, found her lodgings for the night, and demanded satisfaction of her brother-in-law, with the before-mentioned tragic sequel.

Royalty were frequently entertained here in the Stuart times, but during the XVIIIth and XIXth centuries the house underwent various vicissitudes, and was divided up into several houses, until a few years ago it passed into the possession of Mr. Frank Green, who has restored the building to something of its former estate.

The banqueting hall is late XVth century. The north-east portion of the building has been separated from the rest and now forms Gray's Court, which contains a fine oak gallery.

Passing the top of Ogleforth—a picturesque old alley, which here gives a fine view of the Minster—we enter College Street, once known as Little Alice Lane, where lived Elizabeth Lumley, afterwards the wife of Lawrence Sterne, and where their “quiet and sentimental repasts” were spread, which he describes in his love-letters with such a strange *naïveté*. The Saint William’s College, which gives the present name to the street, is a fine example of a Gothic collegiate establishment. It was founded in 1453 by the royal licence of Henry VI. for the proper lodging of “Priests and Parsons holding chantries in the Metropolitical Church, in honour of St. William, sometime Archbishop thereof.”

The establishment in after years gained an unfortunate notoriety for the low moral standards of the residents, of which there were frequent complaints. At the dissolution the College passed by purchase or grant to Michael Stanhope, a “Doctor of

Physicke," and subsequently to Sir Henry Jenkyns, who probably added the Jacobean features which give such picturesque variety to the quadrangle, the great staircase and other details necessary to adapt it for family uses. Here the Royal Master Printer, Robert Barker, set up his press when Charles I. established his Court in York in 1641, and was busily occupied in the production of broadsheets and pamphlets. Evidences, in the shape of a few base coins, have been found of the practices of counterfeit coiners, whose furnace is still to be seen in one of the attics.

A similar tale of changing ownership can be written of this building, finally ending in its degradation into a series of tenement houses. The owners, sublimely indifferent to the charms of antiquity and to the appeal of Jacobean staircases and oak panelling, wrought incalculable harm to the place, until it also passed a few years ago into the appreciative possession of Mr. F. Green, who transferred it at the same price to a committee of the two Houses of York Convocation and the York House of Laymen, for restoration and conversion into a northern Church House.

Returning towards the Minster and bearing by the left we pass the Old Residence, where the late Sir William Harcourt was born. The whole of this area was formerly occupied by prebendal and other residences. Where the Minster Choir School now stands, some way back from the new street of Deangate, formerly stood the old Deanery, which was demolished in 1830. It was in the hall of the Deanery, now vanished, that Charles I.'s Council of Peers assembled on September 24th, 1640. Three years later the same hall was the scene of the historic meeting between the King and the Commissioners of the Parliament.

Turning abruptly to the left through the narrow flagged opening known as Minster Gates, where formerly stood the south gate of the Minster precincts,

Low Petergate is reached. Two or three old houses in the street are worth attention : one of those near the Church of St. Michael-le-Belfrey is claimed as the birthplace of Guy Fawkes, a distinction which really belongs to Bishopthorpe, though undoubtedly Fawkes was baptised in St. Michael's Church, where the entry in the register can still be seen.

A short walk to the left brings us to Goodramgate, the Gotheramgate or Gudrunigate of mediæval times. Here again are several good examples of over-hanging gables with solers, and half-timbered houses.

Passing through Monk Bar, Jewbury is reached on the right, opposite a modern church which has displaced the early Norman Church of St. Maurice. The name is said to denote the burial place of the Jews in York, in accordance with the licence granted by Henry II., whereby they had "a burial place without the walls of every city." "On the Inquisition taken upon the expulsion of the Jews from England by King Edward I. . . . it is found that the place called 'Le Jewbury' . . . on part of which a house was built, was held by the community of the Jews of York and Lincoln."—*Ubi sepultura eorum erat* (Davies).

In mediæval days the Jews were a numerous community in York, and readers of Sir Walter Scott's romances will remember Isaac, who lived in Castlegate, while in a house in Coney Street, where now Messrs. Leak & Thorp's premises stand, resided Joscaeus, a famous Jew money-lender. The house of Benedict\* stood in Spen Lane in the time of Richard I.

Proceeding along Jewbury and parallel to the city wall we leave Layerthorpe on our left. This district is said to derive its name from the clearing or "thorp" at the Foss bank frequented by the wild animals of the Forest of Galtres which came to drink at the ford, "layer" being merely a variant of "lair."

---

\* DAVIES—*Yorks. Archæol. Journ.*, Vol. 3, p. 146.

Bearing to the right by Layerthorpe Postern and passing the ancient church of St. Cuthbert we reach St. Anthony's Hall, the quaint-looking public-house on the opposite side of the street being the ancient Peasholme Manor-House—the home of a once distinguished York family. St. Anthony's Hall (see p. 189) has had an interesting and varied history, having been originally the Hospital of St. Anthony, and was founded in the middle of the fifteenth century as a place of assembly for the Gild of St. Martin of York, taking St. Anthony of Vienna as their patron saint. Many notable civic and social functions have been held there at various times. Henry VIII. and his wife Katherine Howard were entertained in the hall. At various periods of its history it has served as a hospital during the visitation of plague, a house of correction, a magazine or arsenal for the Royalists during the Civil Wars, and a military hospital after Marston Moor.

Earlier still it had been utilised for the performance of miracle plays, and as an archery court. For the last two hundred years it has served the purpose of the Blue Coat School for boys. To the right here runs the street known as Aldwark, once called Werk-dyke, as though the street was originally formed upon the line of the ancient rampart of the city. Half way up this street on the right is the Merchant Taylors' Hall, one of the few trade halls of the incorporated gilds which still exist.

Passing up St. Andrewgate, a narrow alley leads to Spen Lane, formerly Ispyn Lane or Isping-giel (see p. 68), thence, by St. Saviourgate, Fossgate is reached, where will be found the Merchants' Hall, the home of the Merchant Adventurers' Company (see p. 212). The building is approached by a gateway from Fossgate, between two old houses on the right. Above the gateway are the emblazoned arms of the Company, bearing the legend *Dieu Nous donne Bonne Aventure*. The Hall, originally one apartment, is

now divided into two, the inner one of which is richly panelled in oak with open raftered roof. Underneath the main hall is the Chapel, repaired in 1667, where services are still held once a year, the other corporate services being now held in the neighbouring church of All Saints. The continuation of Fossgate to the right over the river Foss leads to Walmgate, which is continued through the Bar as the Hull Road. At the top of Fossgate we turn to the left and enter Pavement, a name believed to denote the place where justice was dispensed (*Pavimentum*). From earliest times offenders were publicly punished here. The pillory and many instruments for the correction of minor offences, the stocks, the "thew," and the whipping cart were all located here. Indeed the practice of whipping offenders at the cart tail in this street gave to the Fossgate end, near where St. Crux's Church (a site now marked by a mission room) formerly stood, the expressive name of Whipma-whopmagate. It is worth recalling, too, that in this street was erected the scaffold on which notable political prisoners were beheaded; a famous instance being the execution on August 22nd, 1572, of the Earl of Northumberland for the part he played in the Rising of the North.

Three ancient houses in timber and plaster, each of the three storeys overhanging the other, are probably of not later date than Edward III., while the gabled timber house (No. 26), with a draper's shop beneath, is of the date of Elizabeth, and belonged to Christopher Herbert, Lord Mayor in 1573, and grandfather of Sir Thomas Herbert (see p. 234). A bronze tablet on the house records that Sir Thomas Herbert was born in it. In this house, in 1639, King Charles I. and his whole court and retinue were entertained by Roger Jaques, the Lord Mayor, the then occupant of the house.

From the Pavement runs a narrow thoroughfare, the Shambles, to King's Square. Probably no by-way in York has undergone less change in its general

characteristics than this street. For five hundred years or more "the Fleshers" have continuously plied their trade in this street. A network of alleys and courts containing some excellent examples of mediæval houses extends from King's Square and Petergate to St. Sampson's Square and the old Thursday Market, where the ancient fairs and markets of the city were held. A stone in the centre of the square, still retaining two iron insertions, indicates the ring where the bulls were formerly baited. The ring itself is now in the Museum.

From St. Sampson's Square we enter Davygate, a street of some antiquarian interest in its nomenclature. Here stood the ancient lardiner's or Davy Hall, from which the street derives its name. The original David was the hereditary royal lardiner charged with the duty of supplying the King's larder with venison and other game from the Forest of Galtres, and the capture of poachers and the maintenance of a gaol for their safe keeping. Being held direct from the Crown *in capite*, the estate remained extra-parochial after the owners had ceased to render the service on the terms of which they previously held it. Consequently in later years such immigrants to the city as were not freemen could ply their trade here, unhindered by the restrictive enactments of the gilds of craftsmen. The property finally passed to the Corporation.

Davygate communicates with St. Helen's Square, a small square constructed more than a hundred years ago by the removal of the old churchyard of St. Helen's and the erection of houses on the site. All over the city instances are to be found of streets and buildings upon the sites of former burial grounds; a practice, whatever may be said against it on hygienic grounds, not altogether to be wondered at when we remember the congested character of the intra-mural city, and the fact that at one time not fewer than seventy parish churches existed therein.

From the north-western corner of the Square runs Stonegate, to the south entrance of the Minster. It is full of houses and shops, probably of slightly later date than the Shambles, but in a very good state of preservation. The name carries us back to the time when the stone for the building of the Minster was brought from the quarries by water and landed at "Stayne-gate" landing, now known as Common Hall Lane, beneath the Guildhall. Several coffee houses stood in this street in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, and the name of one entry, "Coffee Yard," is still reminiscent of the fact. It was here that Francis Hildyard established himself as a bookseller in the XVIIth century, and that his successor in 1754 issued a catalogue of 30,000 volumes. Here also Lawrence Sterne lodged in his bachelor days. At the south-west corner of St. Helen's Square runs a short street now known as Lendal, and formerly described as Ald-Conyng Street. Half way down the street on the right-hand side is a substantial early Georgian mansion, now used as the official lodgings for the Judges when holding the assizes in the city. It was built by Dr. Wintringham upon the site of the ancient church of St. Wilfrid, and over the door is still to be seen the representation of Æsculapius. The two houses opposite to it are also of the same period. In one of them lived Dr. James Atkinson (d. 1839), whose marvellous library excited the admiration of Dibdin in his Northern Tour (see p. 228). It was in one of the two houses now standing (that nearest the Post Office) that John Goodricke, the deaf and dumb astronomer, was brought up (see p. 233). These houses stand upon the site of a Priory of Augustine Friars, land formerly covered by the town mansion of Sir Richard Osbaldestone, the first of the Hunmanby family of that name. Subsequent occupants were Sir Thomas Widdrington, some time Recorder of York in the reign of Charles I. and author of a MS. History of the City;\* and Sir Thomas

\* *Analecta Eboracensis*.—Edited Rev. C. Caine, 1897.

Rokeby, an eminent judge in the time of the second Charles. Among famous local families who had houses in the street was that of Sir William Wentworth.

On the south side of St. Helen's Square, approached by an archway at the side of the Mansion House, is the ancient Guildhall. In the reign of Henry VI. the present Hall was built jointly by the Mayor and Commonalty of the City and the "Master, Brethren and Sisters of the Fraternity or Gild of St. Christopher," on the site of a still earlier common hall. At the dissolution of the religious houses the Hall passed into the sole possession of the Corporation. It has undergone various processes of renovation at subsequent stages of its history, and has been considerably enlarged. Behind the Hall are the panelled chambers which were formerly the meeting places of the City Justices and the City Council. In the lower chamber the Lord President of the Council of the North held his court, and in the same apartment the Commissioners of the Parliament handed over to the Scottish Commissioners the £200,000 pay for the services of the levies under Leslie who had aided the Roundheads at Marston Moor and elsewhere. Before leaving the Guildhall we may note that the panelled roof is decorated with bosses bearing merchants' and other shields, and is supported by octagonal columns of solid oak.

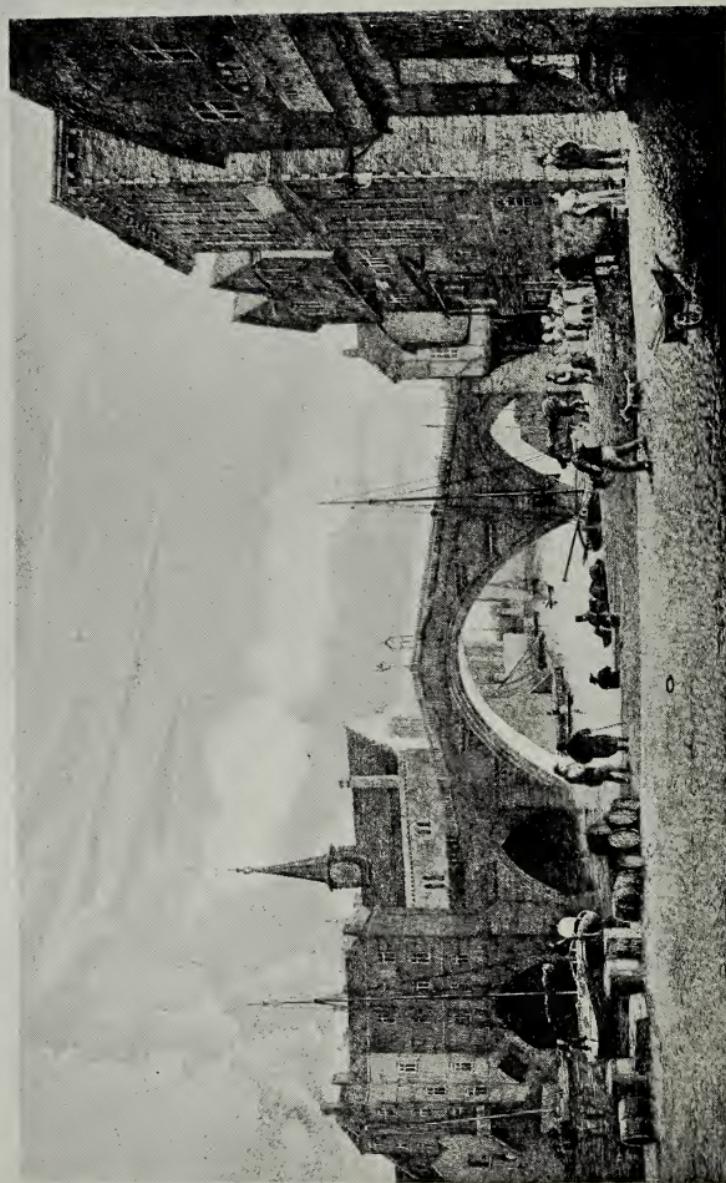
The Mansion House fronts Coney Street and occupies the site of the chapel and kitchens of St. Christopher's Hall. It was built 1725-1726, probably from designs of the Earl of Burlington. The state room is richly decorated and is hung with oil paintings.

Coney Street, anciently Conyng Strete, betokening the *via regia* or King's Highway, has now but few claims to beauty or antiquity, although almost every house stands upon the site of some building of historic or genealogical interest. In the little courtyard behind St. Martin's Church once stood the York mansion

of the Scopes of Masham. Here lived Henry Lord Scrope, who was executed at Southampton for complicity in the plot against Henry V., and whose head was forwarded to York to be set up on Micklegate Bar. A few yards further on, where now stands a large drapery establishment (Nos. 11 and 12), was once a historic mansion occupied in the time of Henry II. by Joses the Jew. In the sixteenth century the same house or one built on the site formed the home of Rokeby, Queen Elizabeth's Secretary to the Council of the North. In later years it became, and remained until well within recent memory, a famous hostelry—the Old George Inn. The Jacobean work had largely disappeared two hundred years ago, but quaint gables and projecting windows and the decorated plaster remained to justify its claim to continued existence. In 1868, however, it was removed. The street to the left, now called Market Street, was formerly continued across Parliament Street and was known as Jubbergate, a name believed to be a modern corruption of Jewbrettgate, anciently known as Brette Gate, the locality receiving the prefix "Jew" when some of the Jews lived in it. The eastern end of Coney Street is called Spurriergate, from the spurriers who congregated in this locality for the prosecution of their calling.

Recent street improvements in this part of York have almost completely destroyed every vestige of its antique character. Ousegate has been widened and some fine old houses mutilated or completely demolished. Nessgate has vanished, and the congeries of tortuous and dark alleys and wynds, once known as Hertergate, Kergate and Thrusgate, which formerly stood between Castlegate and the river, have made way for the new broad thoroughfare Clifford Street, and the Law Courts and Free Library. It was in these closely aggregated houses that again and again the epidemics of plague and other disorders broke out. Castlegate alone remains. It was in





To the York Antislavery Society and Friends

and especially to the Friends of the Old Bridge and St. William's Chapel York  
who have done so much to keep up the memory of those who gave their lives  
in the cause of Freedom

Henry Cave

Photo: W. Watson.

THE OLD OUSE BRIDGE AND ST. WILLIAM'S CHAPEL,  
FROM THE ENGRAVING BY HENRY CAVE.

this street that Scott, in the *Heart of Midlothian*, placed "The Seven Stars," the hostelry where Jeanie Deans stayed on her journey to London. Returning to the end of Spurriergate and proceeding to the left down Low Ousegate we arrive at Ouse Bridge, a structure which in 1812 was built to replace the old Ouse Bridge, dating from about 1568, familiar from Cave's well-known engravings. The old bridge was frequently compared by contemporary writers with the Rialto at Venice, and was justly celebrated for the beauty of the curve of the central span, which Camden describes as "the mightiest arch he ever saw." Leland tells us that there were, when he visited the city, on the bridge at that time "a chapel, a town hall, a guild and a hospital." As late as the time of Charles II. the houses were built very thickly upon the bridge, which resembled, as in the case of Old London Bridge, a continuous street. It was through this narrow causeway, widened only where the wayside cross stood, that the tide of the life of York flowed daily through some centuries.

In Skeldergate, the street to the left, formerly stood the mansions of the Fairfaxes of Denton, which afterwards passed to Lord Fairfax's son-in-law, the worthless Duke of Buckingham. Tradition says that one of the old gabled tenements to the right of the foot of Buckingham Street was once the laboratory of the unstable Duke, whose versatility has been immortalized by Dryden :—

"A man so various that he seemed to be  
Not one but all mankind's epitome ;  
Stiff in opinions, always in the wrong,  
Was everything by starts and nothing long :  
But in the course of one revolving moon  
Was chymist, fiddler, statesman and buffoon."

North Street and its purlieus are devoted to warehouses and tenements, though a century ago it possessed some excellent residences belonging to city merchants. In the names Tanner Row and Tanner Moat, applied

to two of the streets hereabouts, is perpetuated the ancient industry of the locality, which was carried on here as early as the reign of Edward III. Toft Green or Pageant Green is now largely occupied by the central offices of the North Eastern Railway. Pageant Green was the name of the large open space—the “King’s Toft,” where the various craft gilds kept the large scaffoldings on which they exhibited their pageants and spectacles on the festival of Corpus Christi.

The most interesting part of the story of Micklegate and district is bound up with the history of the ecclesiastical establishments of the neighbourhood. Many excellent examples of the domestic architecture of Tudor times once stood in the street, but most of them have vanished. Two or three houses with over-hanging gables near to the Priory Church of the Holy Trinity alone remain to remind us of the past. There are still, however, a few fine residences of the early eighteenth century left. In this street resided the Earl of Huntingdon, Lord President of the Council of the North in Queen Elizabeth’s reign, and the celebrated Sir John Bourchier, who, as one of the Regicide High Court of Justice, signed the death warrant of Charles I. His great-great-grandson, John Bourchier, built the large and striking red brick house opposite Holy Trinity Church [Messrs. Raimes’].

It is noteworthy that the residents of Micklegate Ward included many Roman Catholics and non-jurors. On the accession of George I. in 1714, among the inhabitants of Micklegate Ward who refused to take the oath of allegiance was the Earl of Derwentwater, the circumstances of whose melancholy death as the penalty of his complicity in the rising of 1715 are familiar. A Fairfax also was one of those who commuted their recusancy by a fine. A member of another branch of the same family, Admiral Robert Fairfax, of Steeton, who took part in the expedition

to Vigo, had his town residence in the street. He was an Alderman and Lord Mayor of the City, and one of its Members of Parliament. The street was totally unpaved until the middle of the eighteenth century. In 1750 the residents obtained permission to erect posts along the street to enclose a "flag pace," two feet wide, for the convenience of foot passengers and as a protection against the post-chaises, stage coaches and waggons which used the street.

Passing through the Bar we enter Blossom Street, a corruption of Ploxam Gate, a term of uncertain origin. It is a broad thoroughfare, flanked by early nineteenth century houses, but prior to the Civil War it consisted of ancient houses gathered under the walls to derive the advantages of contiguity to the city. Immediately to the left of the Bar is a street known as Nunnery Lane, so called from the conventional establishment of St. Mary at the corner, and refounded by Mary Ward (died 1645). The ancient name was Baggergate or Beggargate, from the vagrants who utilised the lane in the desire to avoid the challenge at the Micklegate Bar, and to seek easier access to the city by way of the less carefully guarded posterns. Blossom Street is continued as the road to London and the South—the scene of many a historic pageant, and a road tramped by many an army, sometimes in the exultation of victory, sometimes in the despair of defeat, since the days when it was laid down by the Romans. Soon after descending from the Mount it passes Knavesmire and the site of the York Tyburn, where the death sentence was carried out, the last most notable occasion on which it served this purpose being the execution of a score of Jacobites, captured after the rout of Culloden in 1746, the heads of two of whom, William Conolly and James Maine, were exposed upon Micklegate Bar (see p. 59).

The new road to the right, from Micklegate Bar, brings us back to the Station.

The foregoing sketch is necessarily imperfect, while the scope of our walk has also been restricted to the more easily accessible portions of the city, although many of the thoroughfares leading to the rural districts are invested with historic charm and archæological interest.

BIBLIOGRAPHY.—Davies, *Walks Through York*, London, 1880; Davies, Articles in *Yorkshire Archæological Journal*, Vols. I. to IV.; Raine, *York, Historic Towns Series*. (To which the Author desires to acknowledge his indebtedness.)

## THE FORTIFICATIONS OF YORK.

T. P. COOPER.

THE occupation of the site of York as a fortified military centre appears to have been due to Julius Agricola, about A.D. 79, who recognised the strategic value of the position, which had already been probably utilised as an occasional camp by his immediate predecessors.

This camp—rectangular in shape, having on each side an opening or gate through the rampart—was doubtless used by his successors, who in the course of time erected, as a more durable bulwark, an elevated wall of stone.

No inscription has been found that will help us in deciding definitely the date of erection of the wall, but it was most probably raised during the third century.

The circuit or line of the Roman wall has been clearly ascertained by excavations at various times. The four principal angles were strengthened by towers similar to the multangular tower in the Museum grounds, one of the finest Roman structures remaining in England. Adjoining this angle-tower a portion of the original wall is still visible, proceeding in almost a south-eastern course. Traces of the foundations of a gateway have been observed opposite the Guildhall. The disposition of one of the principal angular-towers of the wall has been determined by excavations in Feasegate, and some remains of a similar tower have been discovered in Aldwark.

The north-east Roman wall underlies the mediæval earthen rampart upon which the present wall is built. In Mr. Lund's yard, on the east side of Monk Bar, about 120 feet of the wall of Eburacum may be seen ; it is faced with the original ashlar blocks, and until recently was covered by the earth-bank. The supposed substructure of the north-east gate is laid bare in Mr. Gray's garden, about 100 yards west of Monk Bar. Bootham Bar is erected upon the site of a Roman gate.

During the six centuries that intervened between the departure of the Romans and the arrival of the Normans, the original walls of Eburacum partly protected those dwelling in the old capital. There is reason for believing that the utmost was made of the Roman walls during Anglo-Saxon times. Two sections of the wall, the north-east and the north-west, seem to have been retained intact. The adjoining district, on the opposite side of the Ouse, appears to have been enclosed by a wall of similar construction.

The new wall was no doubt built upon the natural surface of the ground, and, like the Roman wall on the north side of the river, was subsequently buried in the high earthen bank upon which the mediæval wall is erected. Commencing at what is now called North Street Postern, it is assumed the Anglo-Saxon wall was built round the Bishop's Hill or Micklegate district. Baile Hill and its appended court, and the Castle mound at the confluence of the Foss and Ouse, formed no part of the Anglo-Saxon defences, and were erected at the Norman Conquest, outside the walls.

On the opposite side of the Ouse, we may safely assume, there was a wall or rampart pierced by an entrance gate and surrounded by a ditch for the protection of the south-east side of the city. Commencing at the brink of the river, somewhere near Peckitt Street, it is conjectured that a bulwark was erected passing over the high ground behind Coppergate and

skirting the Pavement, with a continuation towards the angle-tower of the city walls, beyond St. Anthony's Hospital, where it would, presumably, be connected with the existing earthbank. The absence at the present day of a wall, ditch or rampart on this side does not prove that it was undefended. The great gate, the outlet for this side, stood near the end of Fossgate.

The Danish kings and official earls of Yorkshire, who had their headquarters at York, resided within a quasi-regal stronghold, defended by a "burh" or earthbank. Upon a plot of high ground outside the city walls, called Galman-ho, their fortified residence, Earlsburgh, was situated. Siward died in the Earlsburgh, and Tostig's followers were attacked there and his treasure carried away. St. Mary's Abbey was subsequently founded on the site.

What defences, other than the castles, the Normans executed at York, it is very difficult to decide. The only stonework which may, with any degree of certainty, be assigned to this period is the older work in the basements of Bootham and Micklegate Bars. Within the centre passage of these two gates, on both sides, a few short courses of ancient masonry are visible, which exhibit all the characteristic features of Norman work.

The Plantagenet period is pre-eminently the most important epoch in the history of the defences of York. Extensive additions were made to the city fortifications. The Walmgate district, not protected until after the formation of the Fosse Pool, was surrounded with a broad ditch and its accompanying bank ; and the ramparts enclosing the city on other sides were raised, and new stockades fixed, which were superseded by walls about 1225.

The bastioned towers on the walls from Bootham Bar towards the tower at the north angle of the fortifications (*i.e.*, behind Gillygate) were no doubt increased in number about 1321, as the Scots

continually approached and menaced the city on this side, and it was therefore necessary to strengthen these walls and to provide more accommodation for those who manned the bulwarks in time of danger.

The section of walls which encloses the Walmgate district was restored in 1345, and the interesting canopied cruciform loopholes which pierce the battlements date from this period.

To the early years of Edward III.'s administration may be attributed the embattled enclosures called Barbicans, erected in front of the four chief gates of the city.

The walls as we see them to-day are much the same as completed at the end of the Plantagenet period. In the sixteenth century the interior platform was considerably widened, and the arches near the Red Tower were doubtless erected about 1562.

During the period of the Civil War the bastions seem to have been denuded of their superstructures, and the original roofs of the mural chambers replaced by erections at a lower level. The walls were repaired both before the 1644 siege and shortly afterwards. The mural promenade or public walk on the walls was first arranged about 1700. In 1829 the whole circuit of the fortifications needed repair, and since that time they have been restored in sections.

#### BOOTHAM BAR.

Formerly, this bar was important as the only outlet to the "North Road." The lower part of the gateway is composed of gritstone; and some stones, hewn no doubt by Roman masons, are to be seen built into the external walls. Although the roadway is now some feet above the level of the streets of Eburacum, there is evidence that this bar is built on the site of a Roman gate. The foundations of a Roman gateway were recently discovered during excavations.

The old gate of the Middle Ages has been strengthened and enlarged at intervals to meet the

ever-changing exigencies of war and commerce, and the bar now presents a combination of different architectural styles. The semi-circular Norman portals of the gateway are evidently composed of materials selected from some older work.

The stonework in the central passage is characteristic of early Norman masonry, a distinctive feature of which was the great thickness of the mortar joints. The upper part of the bar, with its circular bartizan turrets at the angles, is chiefly fourteenth century work, with some indications of later restorations, in part executed during the reign of Henry VIII., and the early years of the Commonwealth. The inner front has been rebuilt in modern times. The iron-plated portcullis is seen in a newly-formed chamber above the gateway. The groove for the portcullis should be noticed, as a make-shift arrangement made long after the bar was erected. The bar, before the demolition of its barbican in 1831, must have presented a formidable obstacle to an attacking force.

#### MONK BAR.

This bar in many respects is dissimilar to the other chief gates. It is the loftiest of the four bars, being ten feet higher than Micklegate Bar. The groined vaulting of the entrance passage—peculiar to this bar—appears to be an insertion bonded into an earlier erection.

The upper part of the bar, to the field, is a good example of the style of the Decorated period. The bar was strongly portcullised, and the old oak grating still hangs in the original grooves; its iron-pointed teeth project below the portal. The entrance passage was also strengthened by two massive doors, the rebates for which still remain. The city front is unlike that of any of the other bars, having a flat segmental arch and a narrow vaulted bay. Attached to the bars were lodges, or guard rooms, for the accommodation of the guard. The site of one at this

gate is suggested by the built-up doorway on the south side.

The chambers on the first and second floors are vaulted. An old horizontal windlass used for raising the portcullis is still shown; it is the only apparatus of its kind that remains intact in York.

#### LAYERTHORPE POSTERN.

At the south-west end of Layerthorpe Bridge stood a massive portcullised and embattled tower, which guarded one of the roads leading to Heworth Moor and the Forest of Galtres. It was taken down in 1829.

#### THE RED TOWER.

This unique relic of the city defences, built of red brick with its modern roof and quaint dormer windows, is an object of unusual interest. The nearest point of the river Foss is more than 200 yards away; but there is no doubt that at one time the base of the tower was washed by the waters of a large lake, which was sufficient protection to the city from inroads on this side.

Where the walls are perfect they are about four feet thick. The upper chamber contains an ingeniously constructed *garde-robe*. There are several straight loopholes arranged obliquely, through which the defenders discharged their missiles. The cross loops, facing the south, have stone dressings; the demolished battlements would be similarly treated. The building may be approximately referred to the early years of the sixteenth century.

#### WALMGATE BAR.

The chief characteristic feature of this bar is its barbican, the only one remaining in the City of York, and the whole is a typical specimen of a mediæval defensive gateway. The superstructure harmonises with the upper part of Bootham Bar—its masonry, the style of supporting the turrets and other details are similar.

The lower part of the structure and the semi-circular arches are probably the work of Geoffrey de Neville, who was employed during the winter of 1215 in defending the city against the rebel barons. He caused the Walmgate district, at that time without any protecting bulwarks, to be enclosed by a ditch and its accompanying banks, descending from the water of the Foss, near the Red Tower, to the pool of the Templars' Mill on the Ouse, below the Castle.

The iron-shod teeth of the oaken portcullis project below the brow of the archway. The passage is covered with timber, and the strong oak doors, with a wicket gate, which still remain, are noticeable features. Attached to the city front is a picturesque domestic building of wood and plaster, supported upon two stone columns, supposed to be an erection of Queen Elizabeth's reign.

The absence of bond and the way in which the walls of the barbican abut upon the face of the bar buttresses, apparently point to a later date than that of the bar itself.

#### FISHERGATE BAR.

This bar is unlike any of the other chief gates, and possesses features which give it a special claim to attention. It is a plain structure of the earlier part of the fourteenth century, the central arch being much higher than those of the other bars. The semi-circular grooves cut in the jambs of the entrance for the portcullis are peculiar to this arch, and indicate that the outer vertical bars of the grating were rounded.

There were also strong doors just within this apparatus, the hinge crooks for which remain. The two small lateral shoulder-headed passages, now used for foot traffic, may have opened into mural galleries in the base of a barbican.

The ruined stonework on the east side, in a line with the face of the bar, indicates the site of a guard room. The apparatus for raising the portcullis, and the superstructure in which it would be fixed, were,

in all probability, destroyed in 1489. A rebellious mob from the rural districts attempted to take the city by this gate. They breached the entrance to the barbican, burned the portcullis and oaken doors, and the upper chambers of the gateway. After this attack the gateway was walled up and remained so until 1826. Above the centre arch, on the exterior, under the city arms, is a tablet recording that in 1487, Sir William Todd, Knt., Lord Mayor, restored sixty yards of the city wall.

#### FISHERGATE TOWER AND POSTERN.

This imposing tower possesses many interesting features. It is a massive stone building, rectangular in plan, but singular in its beauty of elevation and symmetrical design. The aspect of the immediate locality has been entirely changed since the waters of the Fosse Pool reached to the base of this tower.

The curiously-shaped roof of red tiles, which rests upon the battlements, was erected in 1740. The interior is interesting, and is entered by a small door on the city side. On the first floor is a *garde-robe* in the hollow of a buttress. Ascending the staircase, the old roof platform of the tower is reached, which was drained by the two gargoyle heads on the south side. At the side nearest to the city walls and moat a small square watch tower, denuded of its battlements, rises under the roof.

The archway or postern gateway is not co-eval with the tower, but is an insertion in the walls, made in 1501.

Castlegate Postern, which stood at the end of the short length of wall near the Castle, was taken down in 1826. On the opposite side of the river the postern of Skeldergate was removed in 1808. Victoria Bar is a modern archway built in 1838.

#### MICKLEGATE BAR.

Micklegate Bar was the most important of the four city gates. The basement within the centre archway

and the outer portal of the bar have the appearance of Norman work. The limestone superstructure is generally supposed to have been added about 1332.

In the seventeenth century a lath and plaster erection was attached to the inner front of the bar ; this was taken down when the bar was restored in 1826-27. The barbican, unfortunately, was also removed and the portcullis destroyed about the same time.

In 1403, Hotspur's head was placed upon a pole and exposed on the turrets. Lord Scrope's was set up in 1415. After the Battle of Wakefield, which was fought on the 31st of December, 1460, the head of Richard, Duke of York, in company with those of his principal adherents, was spiked on this bar. The unfortunate chiefs who fell at Towton suffered a similar fate in 1461. The last heads exposed were those of the Jacobite rebels, after the Battle of Culloden in 1746.

#### NORTH STREET POSTERN.

This round tower, although partially hidden by the close proximity of Lendal Bridge, is worthy of careful inspection. This part of the defences served a double purpose : it protected the postern gate and was used as a watch-tower for the river. It was a link connecting the west and east lines of fortifications, and between this tower and St. Leonard's Tower a massive chain stretched across the water, obstructing the passage down the Ouse, thus protecting the city from hostile attack from the river.

The present archway is modern, and replaced a small shoulder-headed postern, only wide enough to permit the passage of a horse. It will be noticed that some of the embrasures are filled up with bricks and plaster, and in places by modern windows. The conical roof rests upon the coping of the parapet, thus forming an upper chamber, reached by an external flight of stone steps.

## LENDAL TOWER.

The original form of this tower has been almost obliterated by inevitable modern alterations. Originally it had somewhat the appearance of North Street Postern Tower, but in the seventeenth century it was converted into waterworks. The tower subsequently received a considerable superstructure, and the pseudo-fortification now presents a confused mass of antique and modern masonry.

## THE CASTLE OF THE OLD BAILE.

During the progress of the Norman Conquest York was the centre of a district which was in a continual state of insurrection, and the rebellious Northumbrians were only subdued by the severest acts of bloodshed and tyranny.

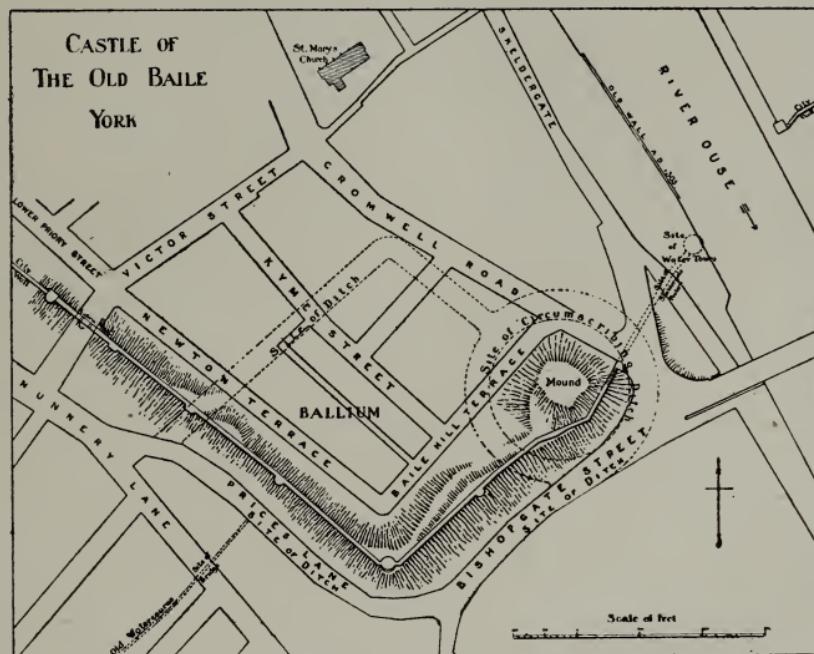
As William quelled the revolts and risings in different parts of the country, he invariably erected a castle, and garrisoned it to keep the discontented inhabitants in subjection. During the "Conquest" two castles were thus built at York. At the south-east corner of the ramparts of the city was erected the Castle of the Old Baile. The only existing remains of this Early Norman fortress are the citadel mound and two sides of the rampired and moated stronghold, which now form part of the city's ancient fortifications.

This castle was situated on a kind of natural ridge, and must have been a strong post in this unsettled period. A position on the right bank of the river was selected, so that, in an emergency, the Norman soldiery approaching the city from the south by the Great North Road could easily relieve the garrison.

The site was chosen where an entrenchment could be dug out and a mound for a look-out station quickly thrown up. The mound was surrounded by a deep ditch and bank, and was thus separated from the bailey-court. After the usual Early Norman custom, a wooden keep would doubtless be built.

Various types of such keeps are figured in the Bayeux Tapestry. There are no remains of masonry on the summit of Baile Hill, and it is not recorded that the wooden keep was superseded by one of stone. The shaft of a well might be discovered on excavation, as several have been on similar moated hillocks.

None of the early chronicles definitely state which of York's two castles was first erected, but it is assumed



By permission of Mr. T. P. Cooper.

that *Vetus Ballium* is the older of the two and that first erected by William. A mound or *motte* is found in connection with almost all English castles known to be of Early Norman origin, and all town castles, without exception, are placed, not in the middle of the town, but on the line of the walls ; they were frequently, as at York and other important cities, erected outside the city ramparts.

The castle subsequently came into the hands of the Archbishops of York, and remained in the custody

of the Northern Primates for several centuries. Archbishop Greenfield's steward paid Giles le Morton, on January 25th, 1309, the money necessary for making a foss in the Old Bailey, for procuring plants to put in the said foss, and for repairing the road to the mills.

The responsibility for defence in time of war was a vexed question between the citizens and the Archbishops. William de Melton, in 1322, agreed to defend the fortress on condition that the citizens should help his men if a special assault were made upon it by the enemy. In 1326 the encircling walls were in a dilapidated state, and the Mayor requested Melton to do the necessary repairs ; the prelate, however, would not accept the liability, and refused. The controversy ended in an appeal to Queen Isabel, then resident in the city. The case was heard in Council but not decided ; the Archbishop agreed to garrison the place with men "because of the stay of the Queen and her son and daughters within the city," provided "that what he thus does of his grace at this time for the aforesaid reason shall not prejudice him or his successors."

In 1423 the walls were again in a ruinous condition, and the citizens requested Archbishop Bowet to do the necessary repairs. He did not comply, and legal proceedings were commenced against him. How the action was decided has not been recorded. The archbishops probably relinquished their rights and jurisdiction in this part of the city, for we have evidence that the Old Baile was in the possession of the Mayor and Commonalty before the close of the fifteenth century. The limits and bounds of the bailey are easily discernible. It was not utilized for building purposes until 1882.

#### THE CASTLE OF YORK.

That the castles of York, with their moated hillocks, were Anglo-Saxon strongholds, erected during the

invasions of the Danes in the ninth or tenth centuries, is a view not now accepted, nor is there any evidence whatever that the Romans ever reared such hillocks. They have also been set down to the Scandinavian invaders, though they are found in parts of the country where the Northmen never settled, and are not found in Norway or Sweden.

There is no evidence that York Castle existed prior to the Conquest. The sites of the castles of York, we are told in Domesday Book, were cleared for the Conqueror's new defensive works. Any houses there might have been on the newly-acquired land would be demolished and their gardens made waste and thrown out of cultivation. Where Domesday records the devastation of houses and lands for castle works, the supposition is that new fortifications were built, and not old ones rebuilt.

This castle was doubtless erected by William on his second visit to York, to maintain a stronger hold upon the North.

The first castles constructed by the Normans in England were of earth and timber, defensive works which were quickly erected. A moated hillock was first formed, attached to which was a courtyard or bailey, surrounded by an earthbank surmounted with stout wooden palisades. A timber stockade was still standing on the castle ramparts at York as late as the thirteenth century. We find from various passages in the Close Rolls, that several other castles were similarly defended as late as the reigns of John and Henry III.

Upon the summit of the *motte* or artificial mound was placed a wooden tower. The building was always kept intact so as to serve as a citadel to which the garrison could betake themselves when hard pressed ; and it was also used as a look-out station. In 1228 some timbers of the tower were blown down by the wind. This wooden keep was used until one of stone was substituted during the reign of Henry III. ; the

massacre of the Jews would not therefore take place in the present stone structure, but in the timber erection that preceded it.

The building of Clifford's Tower was begun in 1245, and the roofing was completed in 1259. It cost in stone and carriage of the same, the clerk of works' salary, etc., nearly £2,000 (£40,000 of present money value), the approximate cost, probably, of such a tower or work if executed to-day.

The plan of the keep resembles a quatrefoil; the diameter, measured across the centre of the foils, is seventy-nine feet, and at the intersections sixty-two feet. Internally, these dimensions are sixty feet and forty-three feet, the acute angles at which the curves would meet being cut off.

The entrance to the tower is on the south-east, between two of the foils; the forebuilding, which has been regarded as a subsequent addition, was really erected at the same time, as may be verified by reference to the Rolls.

During the Edwardian period the palisades upon the enclosing earthbanks were superseded by masonry. A series of towers or bastions were erected on the line of the enceinte, and the great gate opposite Fishergate was rebuilt.

About the beginning of the seventeenth century Clifford's Tower and the mound were isolated from the castle bailey, and James I., in 1609, granted this portion of the old castle to private individuals. At the time of the 1644 siege the keep was used by the Royalists, and for some years remained in the possession of the Government. The forebuilding was restored in 1648, and very little of the older work is observable. Two sides of the interior of the original chapel above the gateway are still distinguishable by the remains of Early English arcading.

The minor towers and bastions were appropriated as prisons, as well as a gaol-house in the courtyard, which was often reported to be in a ruinous state.

Prisoners frequently escaped, and at the commencement of the eighteenth century it was deemed necessary to build a stronger and more modern gaol. The new prison, now used as warders' quarters, was erected in 1701.

The Assize Courts were opened in 1777. A large building erected on the opposite side of the green, and used subsequently as a female prison, was built about 1800. These erections have been enlarged and altered at various times during the last century.

About 1826 the county magistrates purchased the keep, the mound and several adjacent plots of land, and built the present massive walls which enclose the castle, and the new gaol, now utilized as a military prison.

#### BIBLIOGRAPHY.

*Eburacum, or York under the Romans*, C. Wellbeloved, 1 vol.  
York, 1842.

*The Defences of York*, G. T. Clark.—*Yorks. Archl. Journal*, vol. iv.  
*Fortifications of the City of York*, Lockwood & Cates, 1 vol.  
London, 1834.

*York : the Story of its Walls, Bars and Castles*, T. P. Cooper,  
1 vol. London, 1904.

# THE MINSTER AND CHURCHES OF YORK.

G. BENSON, A.R.I.B.A.

## THE MINSTER.

ALTHOUGH consisting of buildings of various dates, there is a unity about York Minster which appeals to the eye as the completed design of a single mind, varied only in detail and moulding; while the height of the roof and central tower renders it one of the most impressive, as it is one of the largest, of our cathedrals.

The building is of magnesian limestone, and has gone through many vicissitudes in the course of the centuries; twice within the last century\* it has been partially destroyed by fire, while externally the ravages of time have been re-inforced by the chemical action of air and water since York became an industrial city.

The origin of the building upon the present site is inseparably connected with the missionary enthusiasm of Pope Gregory. He, naturally looking upon our island as still the Britain of Roman times, fixed upon York as one of the centres of ecclesiastical administration, just as it had been the centre of Roman civil government two centuries before. Some ecclesiastical buildings were doubtless already in

---

\* Choir, February 2nd, 1829; Nave, May 20th, 1840.

existence in York, which had long been the seat of a Bishop of the Celtic Church, over whom Gregory determined to place a metropolitan of his own choice.

The first building, small and constructed of wood, was dedicated to St. Peter, and in it, on Easter Day, April 12th, 627, King Edwin was baptised by Paulinus. Around the wooden church King Edwin began the erection of a larger stone building, but he fell in battle before the work was finished, and it was eventually completed by King Oswald. Thirty years later it underwent restoration by Bishop Wilfrid.

William the Conqueror appointed to the See of York his chaplain Thomas, treasurer of Bayeux Cathedral. Archbishop Thomas erected new transepts and nave with aisles, to the west of the Anglo-Saxon building, which was restored and used as the choir. Roger, Archdeacon of Canterbury, who succeeded William Fitz Herbert in 1154, removed the Anglo-Saxon building and built a new choir with a crypt. In 1215 Walter de Gray became Archbishop, and since no saint in the Calendar had hitherto been especially associated with York, he urged the Pope to canonise William, the late Archbishop, who had been buried in the nave. This was done in 1227, and soon brought crowds of pilgrims with their offerings at his shrine.

The rebuilding of the Minster was on an immense scale. New transepts of exceptional height and breadth were begun, with aisles on the western as well as on the eastern side, a design which Mr. Bond characterises as "an extravagance unknown in our Gothic cathedrals except at Wells."

The Minster is usually entered by the South Transept, which, with the exception of the Crypt, is the earliest part of the church. Each transept originally consisted of three wide bays and a narrow one to the aisles of the *Norman* nave and *Transitional* choir, as is seen in the triforium. In the rebuilding

of the nave and choir the aisles were widened, so that the piers of the narrow transept bay stood in the centre of the passage from the aisles to the transepts. This position proved inconvenient, so after the rebuilding of the choir, and before the reconstruction of the central tower, the piers were removed and *Perpendicular* piers erected at a distance to suit the width of the new nave and choir aisles. The *Early English* arches were simply shifted, the narrow arch exchanging places with that of the second bay from the tower. Professor Willis wrote that these "present very remarkable examples of the bold engineering work of the middle ages." After the lantern tower was rebuilt, it sank about eight inches, dragging with it the adjoining masonry and arches of the transepts; this necessitated the walling up of the narrow arches and the rebuilding of the *Perpendicular* central pier in the west aisle of the North Transept. The mullion is said to make its first appearance in England in the lancet window over the entrance.

The east aisles were occupied by chantry chapels enclosed by wooden screens. In the south bay stood the altars of St. Mary and of St. John the Baptist—their figures in old glass are in the windows above, and over the Baptist is the shield of the York saint (William Fitz Herbert) bearing *or seven mascles conjoined gules three, three and one*. In this chapel is the monument to the late Dean Duncombe.

In the adjoining chapel was the altar of St. Michael, whose figure is in old glass above; the archangel is armed, and is trampling on a large red dragon; the boss in the stone roof contains a mutilated figure of the saint. In this chapel is the tomb of Archbishop Walter de Gray, the builder of the transept, consisting of a beautiful effigy on a slab under a solid canopy supported by shafts. The bearded figure is vested in alb, dalmatic, tunic and cope, but is without the pallium, the right hand raised in the act of blessing;

he treads on a dragon, into the mouth of which he thrusts his pastoral staff. The plaster finials with thrushes were added by Bernasconi in the time of Archbishop Markham (1777-1807), and the bronze screen by De Corte, of Antwerp, was erected about the same time.

The chapel beyond the woodwork was curtailed to half its size in the fifteenth century; in the window is a figure of St. William of York. Fixed to the walled-in archway is the memorial to Archbishop Thomson (who died in 1891); it consists of an altar tomb with recumbent figure under a canopy.

In the west aisle is the Font of Frosterly marble with a Renaissance wooden cover.

The South Transept was restored from 1871 to 1874, under the direction of G. E. Street, R.A. The centre has oak vaulting, and the side aisles are stone-vaulted. The piers are of stone and unpolished Purbeck marble, the arch mould is enriched with dog-tooth ornament, and rests on foliated capitals.

The North Transept is similar to the South, and only differs in detail. The strings at the base of the triforium and the clerestory cornice have laurel leaf enrichment arranged zig-zag wise, but with these exceptions the ornament used is dog-tooth. The north end is a simple but beautiful composition, the whole space above the wall arcade being occupied by five lancets, known as "The Five Sisters" window. The lights are separated by detached shafts of stone and Purbeck marble alternately, thrice banded, and with foliated capitals. The glass resembles embroidered tapestry, and the tradition is that five sisters worked the patterns in tapestry. Gent says it was also called the Jewish window.

In the west aisle are table tombs with effigies of Archbishops Harcourt and Musgrave. At the walled-in arch is the memorial to Thomas Haxey, treasurer to the Minster from 1418 to 1424, representing

a wasted corpse in a winding sheet; an iron trellis surrounds it, supporting a black marble slab.

The south chapel in the eastern aisle contained the altar of St. Nicholas, before which Archbishop Greenfield, who died in 1314, was interred, and over whose remains a table tomb and roofed canopy surmounted by a figure of the Archbishop has been erected. On the tomb is the only mediæval brass remaining in the Minster. This represents Archbishop Greenfield, fully vested and wearing the pallium, but the lower part of the brass is missing. Only one earlier brass of an ecclesiastic is known. Behind this tomb Jonathan Martin hid himself when he set fire to the choir. The chapel, like the corresponding one in the south transept, was curtailed to half its size, owing to the alterations in the fifteenth century. In the window is a figure of St. Nicholas.

The completion of the transepts was followed by the erection of the octagonal Chapter House, independent of the Minster. The internal diameter is sixty-three feet. Each bay, except the entrance, consists of six canopied stalls under a lofty five-light window. The stalls are richly sculptured with foliage, etc., copied from nature. Each window has five lights having eight panels alternately grisaille with natural foliage and subject. The tracery is filled with shields of Edward I. and those of his Court.

On the north side of the entrance is painted in mediæval characters *Ut rosa flos florum sic est Domus ista Domorum.* The ironwork on the doors forms eight connected scrolls, four in height, cut into leafage and flowers, and terminating at the top in three zoömorphic figures.

On the 6th of April, 1291, Archbishop le Romaine laid the foundation stone of a new nave at the south-east corner. This enclosed the Norman nave, which was not disturbed until the new work was considerably advanced. Funds for the undertaking

were derived from indulgences, penances, briefs, bequests and offerings at the shrine of St. William.

The first three Edwards held parliaments in the Chapter House. In 1298 the Courts of Justice were removed from London, and for seven years were held here. These assemblages in the city swelled the contributions to the building fund of the Nave and the Vestibule of the Chapter House. The arms carved in stone or emblazoned in the stained glass throughout the Nave, Vestibule and Chapter House testify to liberal benefactions of King and nobles.

The design of the west front is carefully worked out from the plan, and the side aisles are represented by towers above them, whilst the roof line of the central portion is followed. It is a beautiful architectural composition, consisting of two uniform embattled and pinnacled towers, carried considerably above the low-pitched embattled gable of the central portion. Deep right-angled buttresses at the corners of the towers accentuate the height and solidity, and also emphasize their separation from the central part with its large window. The whole is connected horizontally by niched arcading, brought to a level above the large window by an embattled parapet.

Below the west window is the principal entrance, divided by a clustered pier supporting minor arches and a circle filled with tracery, the whole enclosed within a deep recessed moulded arch, enriched with sculpture of exquisite delicacy, in which the history of Adam and Eve and their sons Cain and Abel is told in sixteen niches. A crocketted pediment enclosing five niches rises from the arch to above the window-sill. The central niche contains the seated figure of an archbishop holding a model of the west front in his hands, he is probably John le Romaine; and in the niches on either side of the pediment are mailed figures of a Percy and a Vavasour bearing blocks of wood and stone, signifying their donations

to the building. Their shields adjoin—Percy, *a lion rampant*; and Vavasour, *a fesse dancette*. In the north-west tower the bell Peter, weighing ten and three-quarter tons, is hung; the other tower contains the Beckwith peal of twelve bells, the tenor weighing two tons thirteen and three-quarter cwts.

The nave is divided into eight bays. The triforium is merged into the clerestory five-light window, of which it forms a lower unglazed portion; in each centre was a figure; in one is still a dragon's head, from which the cover to a former font was raised or lowered. The font and cover have disappeared. Opposite to the dragon is an effigy of St. George, which replaces the original. The west window was entirely rebuilt in 1807, the original stonework being carefully copied and the ancient glass re-set. It has eight lights, and the head is filled with flowing tracery. Archbishop Melton, in the year 1338, gave one hundred marks towards the stained glass, in which apostles and archbishops are depicted.

The aisle windows are of three lights with three quatrefoils above. Two are plain; the others, with three exceptions, are white diapered windows enriched with two coloured subject bands, and are fourteenth century work. The earliest is the first window from the east in the north aisle, and is termed by Drake “the heraldic window.” It possesses several shields; one in the west light, having metal on metal, is a heraldic curiosity. The second is the “Bellfounders’ window.” In the base is represented the moulding and casting of a bell, and there are bells in the borders of the side lights and in other parts of the window. In the third window is a representation of the Crucifixion, and in the fourth the donor is in the act of presenting the window, whilst the crucifixion of St. Peter is shown in the fifth, and in the sixth are illustrations of the Annunciation and Nativity. The door in the arcading led to the Chapel of St. Mary and the Holy Angels, of which there are no other

remains. (See page 175.) The door is walled behind ; over it is a headless figure of the Virgin, standing on a bracket between shields of Old France and Plantagenet England. Adjoining is a table tomb under an arch. The seventh window is plain, while that at the west end contains figures of the Virgin and Child, and St. Catherine. The west window of the south aisle depicts the Crucifixion. The first window in the aisle has plain glass, in the next are three large figures of St. Stephen, St. Christopher and St. Laurence. The third is a Jesse window, the fourth contains shields of the De Mauley family. The tracery in the fifth window has a figure of St. Catherine, and in the adjoining window is another representation of the Annunciation. The last depicts incidents in the life of an archbishop. In the arcade below is a brass with half-length effigy in a fur gown of James Cotrel, a native of Dublin, who died at York in 1595.

The next addition to the building was the Lady Chapel, the foundation stone of which was laid on July 30th, 1361, by Archbishop Thoresby. When finished, the *Transitional* choir was replaced by the present choir. This is occupied by stalls, terminated on the south side by the archiepiscopal *cathedra*. Until 1726, the high altar stood one bay westward from the glazed screen, between the choir transepts, the windows of which are filled with glass depicting events in the lives of St. Cuthbert and St. William.

Behind the high altar was a large painted and gilded Reredos, with a door at each side opening to the Sacristy, where the bones of St. William were preserved in a portable shrine. The head of the saint was preserved in a reliquary of silver gilt covered with jewels. The beautiful stone altar screen is a reproduction of that destroyed by the fire of 1829. The oak reredos was designed by Street. The terra cotta panel of the Crucifixion is by Tinworth. The

background has been painted blue and the figures ivory, relieved by gold. The brass eagle is dated 1686. The organ was built in 1902-3 at a cost of £5,000.

While the general design of the choir follows that of the nave, the chief differences are the wall arcading, the window tracery and the triforium.

The Lady Chapel, consisting of the four eastern bays, differs from the choir principally by the clerestory passage being outside, and by the presence of a bracket with canopy against each pier. On the pier brackets have been recently placed statues of Archbishop Thoresby, William of Wykeham, Archbishop Skirlaw, and Henry, third Lord Percy. The east window is the largest one retaining its original glazing, and is seventy-two feet high by thirty-two feet wide. The contract for the glazing is dated December 10th, 1405, and is made between the Dean and Chapter and John Thornton, of Coventry, who undertook to portray the said window with his own hand, with the histories, images and the other things to be painted in it, to provide glass, lead and workmen at the expense of the Chapter, and to complete the work within three years. In payment Thornton was to receive for every week wherein he should work in his art four shillings, and each year five pounds, and after the work was completed ten pounds as a reward. The window depicts scenes from the Creation to the death of Absalom, and from the Book of the Revelation.

There are thirty prebendaries (formerly thirty-six) in the Minster, each of whom has a stall in the Choir and in Chapter House. Each was formerly provided with an assistant priest, known as a vicar choral. From their original number of thirty-six, the vicars choral are now reduced to five, consisting of a

sub-chanter and four minor canons, who form a corporate body. Amongst their property is 31, High Petergate, which was let on lease for forty years from July 30th, 1861, at the annual rent of twelve shillings and two fat hens.

There are a number of monuments, principally to archbishops ; that to Henry Bowet, who died in 1423, consists of an altar tomb under a lofty canopy, filling in the eastern arch on the south side. In the north aisle is a mitred recumbent effigy of Archbishop Savage, who died in 1507, and at the entrance to the aisle is an effigy of Prince William of Hatfield, the second son of Edward III.

Near the steps to the crypt are two fine quadrant cope chests covered with ironwork. The crypt was built in the fifteenth century out of the remains of a former one. The excavations, after the fire of 1829, revealed westward another crypt containing two rows of columns between large piers, diapered as at Durham, and having four smaller shafts round them. Portions of the herring-bone work of the Saxon Church are here exposed.

In the vestry are preserved several interesting antiquities, the most notable of which is the so-called Horn of Ulf—an ivory horn, the mouth of which is enriched by a carved band of oriental design.\*

There are also a coronation chair, said to be Saxon ; the mazer bowl of Archbishop Scrope (see p. 253) ; a wooden effigy said to have been used at the burial of Archbishop Rotherham, who died of the plague ; and a silver pastoral staff, bearing the arms of Catherine of Braganza, taken by the Earl of Danby from James Smith, Bishop of Callipolis, during a fracas in the streets of York.

---

\* Ulf, Thorold's son, is said to have presented this horn at the High Altar shortly before the Norman Conquest. (*Cp. Davies, Archaeological Journal*, Vol. XXVI., pp. 1-10.)

Adjoining the vestry is the Chapel of Archbishop Zouche, which contains a picturesque mediæval well.

The stone screen which divides the choir from the nave was built at the end of the fifteenth century. It contains figures of the Kings of England from William I. to Henry VI.

#### BIBLIOGRAPHY.

1699.—James Torre: MS. in the Minster Library.

1730.—Thomas Gent: *History of York and the Sacred History of the Cathedral of St. Peter.*

1736.—Francis Drake: *Eboracum.* The second book treats of the Minster.

1762.—Thomas Gent: *The most delectable, scriptural and pious History of the famous and magnificent Great Eastern Window.* 8vo.

1800.—Joseph Halfpenny: *Gothic Ornaments in the Cathedral Church of York*, with 105 plates. Imperial 4to.

1809.—Charles Wild: “Twelve Perspective Views, Two Plates and Historical Account.” Imperial 4to.

1819.—John Britton: *The History and Antiquities of the Metropolitical Church of York*, illustrated by thirty-six plates.

1840.—John Browne: *History of the Metropolitical Church of St. Peter, York*, 2 vols, 150 plates.

1845.—Rev. R. Willis: *The Architectural History of York Cathedral*, 60 pp.; plate with historical series of five plans and six views.

Messrs. Poole and Hugall: *St. Peter's Cathedral, York*, with thirty-five lithographed plates.

1859.—Rev. James Raine: *The Fabric Rolls of the Minster.*

1862.—John Browne: *A Defence, or Fabric Rolls and Documents of York Minster.*

1863.—Rev. W. H. Dixon and Rev. J. Raine: *Lives of the Archbishops of York*, Vol. I.

1879.—Rev. James Raine: *The Historians of the Church of York*, three vols.; Vol. I. 1879, Vol. II., 584 pp., 1886.

1896.—Rev. A. P. Purey-Cust, Dean of York: *The Heraldry of York Minster*, two vols.

## THE CHURCHES.

There is no church in York which has survived in its entirety from Anglo-Saxon times, but fortunately there is one at Kirk Hammerton, a village eight miles away. This consists of tower, nave and chancel, and when viewed from the south it is complete. Additions have, however, been made on the north side. Allusion to this building forms a good introduction to the study of the ancient churches of York, of which there are twenty-two. They have a character peculiarly their own, being mostly small and of no great height. Though there is no parish church approaching first rank, each is worthy of careful study. The earliest work is in the tower of St. Mary, Bishophill Junior. The churches of St. Margaret, St. Denis and St. Lawrence possess rich *Norman* doorways, and there is a small Norman church at Askham Bryan, four miles distant. Of *Transition* work there are the arcades at St. Michael's, Spurriergate, a doorway at St. Mary's, Bishophill Senior, and in the Hospitium is a window with the first indication of tracery, removed from the church of St. Maurice, now destroyed. For *Early English* work there are to be seen Holy Trinity, in Micklegate ; Skelton Church, three miles, and Nun Monkton Church, eight miles away. *Decorated* work occurs at St. Helen's, in a chapel at Holy Trinity, Goodramgate, and four miles away in the cruciform church of Acaster, which has a central spire covered with oak shingles. The chief edifices in York rebuilt during the *Perpendicular* period are St. Martin's, Coney Street, St. Michael-le-Belfrey, St. Olave's, All Saints', Pavement, with its octagonal lantern ; also the spires of St. Mary's, Castlegate, and All Saints', North Street ; and certain large additions to St. Martin's, Micklegate. There are good specimens of *Renaissance* woodwork at St. Michael-le-Belfrey, St. Michael's, Spurriergate, All Saints', Pavement, and St. Martin's, Micklegate ; whilst Holy Trinity,

Goodramgate, retains its box pews. There is also a disused church dedicated to St. Andrew; the nave is now used as a furniture warehouse, the chancel is utilized for a dwelling. Christ Church, in King's Square, has been disused within recent years.

Many of the York churches are renowned for their painted mediæval glass, notably All Saints', North Street; St. John's; St. Martin's, Coney Street; Holy Trinity, Goodramgate; St. Michael's, Spurriergate; St. Martin's, Micklegate; and St. Denis', Walmgate.

#### ST. MARY, BISHOPHILL JUNIOR,

Consists of tower, nave with aisles, and chancel with north aisle. Its antiquity is shown by the tower, which for about two-thirds of its height is built of Roman masonry, with an outside measurement of twenty-six feet, and walls three feet in thickness, pierced by a few narrow slits. It is constructed with small limestone blocks similar to the Multangular Tower of the old Roman fort, and has large stones at the angles. The tower was repaired in Anglo-Saxon times, and exhibits courses placed herring-bone-wise, like the early stonework in the Minster Crypt. A storey was afterwards added with a double window on each side. There is a noble arch of two orders opening into the nave. The tower has received additions at various times, a *Decorated* window (now built up) being inserted on the south side, and a west window in recent times, and the top has been finished with an embattled parapet, having angle and central pinnacles. There are two bells, one of which, cast about 1400, has an inscription in Gothic capitals:—

“**✚** *Fac tibi Baptista, fit ut acceptabilis ista*”

and a stamp with figure of the Baptist. The other bell, cast half-a-century later, bears in bold black letter script:—

“**✚** *O mater (1) dia (2) me (3) sana (4) virgo (5) maria*”

Between each word is a shield, indicated by figures

in brackets. 1 and 3 bear *three crowns in pale*—St. Edmund ; 2, *three crescents*—Ryther ; 4 and 5, *chevron with chief indented*—Thornton ; and terminating the inscription is a beautiful stamp of the Annunciation.

The Anglo-Saxon Church consisted of tower, nave and chancel, and was more than double the size of that at Kirk Hammerton. In the twelfth century aisles were added to the nave. The arcade on the north side is *Norman* ; the nave roof was continued over the aisles. The south arcade was rebuilt in the fourteenth century ; the arches have straight sides. In 1860 the outer walls of the south aisle were almost rebuilt.

During the thirteenth century the chancel was rebuilt with north aisle and with transverse arches ; it was restored in 1860. In the tracery of the window behind the organ are two interesting fragments of mediaeval painted glass, one depicting the Assumption of the Virgin, and the other St. Michael the Archangel weighing souls.

The Font is circular on an octagonal shaft, and has a *Renaissance* cover surmounted by the figure of a dove.

There is a silver chalice with cover, made at York in 1567. Of pewter there are two flagons, two patens dated 1774, and a basin.

#### ST. MARY, BISHOPHILL SENIOR,

Has nave and chancel with north aisle, a tower at the west end, and a porch on the south side.

Within the porch is inserted an Anglo-Saxon slab with interlaced pattern. In Norman times a north aisle was added to the nave, and the arcade of three bays has semi-circular arches formed of two square orders supported by columns with moulded caps. The south wall contains a *Transitional* doorway, which has a semi-circular arch formed of a pointed roll and hollows resting on shafts with carved caps and moulded bases. The two 3-light windows are insertions of the fifteenth century. The north wall was rebuilt with

buttresses during the fifteenth century ; the windows in it have two lights with cinquefoil above.

The chancel with north aisle was built in the thirteenth century, and the arcade of four bays has pointed arches of two chamfered orders erected on octagonal piers having moulded caps and bases. The south wall from the east has a lancet window, a cinquefoiled headed piscina, an early 2-light window with trefoil formed in spandrel between two lancet heads, a priests' doorway with semi-circular head, two *Decorated* 2-light windows, and a lancet window. The east window is of four lights with geometrical tracery, and that to the aisle has two lights. The north wall on the exterior is divided into two bays by buttresses having sets-off and finishing in gables. The windows had round heads, and were considerably shorter than those in the nave aisle, but at the restoration were made to match. The roofs over the two aisles were formerly distinct, but were restored as one roof.

The tower was built in 1659, of brick, on the old walls at the west end of the north aisle. It has stone quoins, a 2-light window on each side of the belfry, and is surmounted with an embattled parapet.

The ceiling to the nave and chancel is flat with the timbers showing. John Flaxman, the celebrated sculptor, was baptised in this church. The registers begin in 1598, but have been removed to the modern church of St. Clement, on Scarcroft Road.

The church was a rectory of two medietyes : one belonged to the patronage of the Prior and Convent of Healaugh Park, the Merringtons, Nevilles and the Crown ; the other to the families of Percy, Plumpton, Vavasour, and Lord Scrope of Bolton.

#### HOLY TRINITY, MICKLEGATE.

[See "Monastic Establishments," p. 147.]

#### ST. MARTIN, MICKLEGATE,

Consists of tower, nave and chancel with aisles, and porch. Under the chancel north aisle was a crypt, which has been filled in.

The foundations of the tower and nave are formed of *Roman* masonry; a portion of sculptured frieze belonging to a Roman building is built in the tower on the plinth, but the remainder of the tower was taken down in the reign of Edward VI.

In the thirteenth century, aisles, half the width of the present ones, were added to the nave. During the next century the church was enlarged by increasing the breadth and length of the north aisle. The size of the church was doubled during the fifteenth century, a crypt and chapel with transverse arch being added to the north of the chancel, and later this was rebuilt with a south aisle. Subsequently the *Early English* south aisle of nave was widened to correspond with the south aisle of the chancel.

The church consisted of three gabled roofs stretching from east to west. The central portion of the interior was somewhat dark, so in order to admit more light a clerestory was added to the nave and tall arches to the tower and chancel. The ashlar of the clerestory is carried by relieving arches over the nave arches. The edifice was rich in numerous screens, stalls with *misereres*, and a rood loft, all of beautiful *Perpendicular* woodwork, but of these nothing remains. In 1904 the doorways to the rood gallery were discovered, and have been left open.

In the reign of Edward VI. the church was in process of demolition. Part of the tower and the lead from the roofs had gone, when Alderman Beane came forward on behalf of the parish and succeeded in retaining the church. In 1579 the said Alderman Beane gave three bells, which were inscribed :—

“ JOHN BEANE GAVE THEIS BELLS

Robert Mot made MCCCCCLXXX.”

Robert Mot was the founder of the celebrated White-chapel Bell Foundry, which exists. Only one of these bells remains.

Good examples of *Renaissance* woodwork are preserved in the reredos, communion rails, font cover, an open cupboard, poor box, and pulpit, the last having the text "Be instant in season and out of season." The sounding board is over the entrance screen, and has the text "It pleased God by the foolishness of preaching to save them that believe."

In 1667 the tower was rebuilt with brick and finished with a balustrade. Lady Sarah, widow of Alderman Bawtry, gave a clock. The upper part of the tower was again rebuilt in 1845. The high pews and gallery under the tower were removed in 1874. Masons' marks occur in the south aisle of chancel and on the piers to the tower arch. In the north aisle of the nave is a *Roman* monument, which was removed last year from the exterior of the tower.

There is some fine old glass. A beautiful *Decorated* window at the east end of the south aisle has under canopies figures of the Blessed Virgin and St. John ; the central panel has been destroyed and one of St. Martin inserted ; in the tracery are angels censing. In the south aisle are figures of St. Agnes, St. Lucy, and one with the badge of St. Anthony. A small panel in yellow stain depicts the Betrayal of Christ and the combat between David and Goliath. A window in the north aisle of nave depicts under canopies St. John the Baptist and St. Catherine ; their names and quatrefoil band below are insertions.

#### ALL SAINTS, NORTH STREET,

Has nave and chancel with aisles, and a spire 120 feet high.

Ralph Paganel, in 1089, gave this church to Holy Trinity Priory. In the early part of the thirteenth century aisles were added to the nave ; a century later these were widened and continued to the east end. During the fifteenth century the west end was built with tower and spire, while the chancel and aisles were re-roofed with hammer-beam principals,

the roof arches springing from figures of angels with musical instruments, etc.

Archbishop Harsnet came to view the church in July, 1630, commended it for its beauty, and gave a silver chalice and cover engraved with his coat-of-arms. These exist and bear the York hall-mark of 1613. A pewter basin to hold water for christening children in was bought in 1655, but has since been lost.

The pulpit, dated 1675, is hexagonal with a full length figure painted on each side, and around the top is the text "How shall they preach except they be sent."

The church was restored in 1866-7, when the south wall was rebuilt. In taking it down six limestone coffins and nine lids were found embedded in the wall. The best of these, with incised crosses, have been affixed to the walls.

The ancient glass is particularly interesting. All the windows are of three lights. *Early Decorated* glass occupies the east windows of the aisles. The north aisle window was restored in 1844-5. In the tracery are figures of St. Michael, St. George and the Blessed Virgin; and below, under tall canopies, are two rows of subjects—the Annunciation, Nativity, Adoration, Crucifixion, Resurrection, and Coronation of the Blessed Virgin. The south aisle window depicts the Crucifixion, St. John the Apostle, Christ in the Garden, and three female saints, with much modern glass inserted.

The remainder of the glass is *Perpendicular*. In the east window of the chancel, under canopies, are figures of St. John the Baptist, St. Anne teaching the Virgin to read, and St. Christopher. Below, in the centre, is a representation of the Holy Trinity; on the north side Nicholas Blackburn, Senior, Lord Mayor 1413, and his wife Margaret; and on the south side Nicholas Blackburn, Junior, and his wife Margaret.

The easternmost window in the north aisle illustrates a poem, the "Pryck of Conscience," by Richard Rolle,

of Hampole. It depicts the last fifteen days of the world, and under each panel are two lines of the poem. Across the base are kneeling figures. Above, from west—1, Inundation of the Sea ; 2, Ebb of Sea ; 3, Earth dry again ; 4, Fishes and Sea Monsters come on land ; 5, Sea on Fire ; 6, Trees on Fire ; 7, Earthquake ; 8, Rocks Burnt ; 9, Great Noise ; 10, Earth and Sky only ; 11, Graves Open ; 12, Bones come together ; 13, Stars Fall ; 14, All Die ; 15, The Fire. In the tracery, St. Peter receives the just into heaven, and Satan the wicked into hell.

The adjoining window contains in each light three panels under a canopy, and depict the corporal acts of Mercy—Feeding the Hungry, Clothing the Naked, Giving Drink to the Thirsty, Visiting the Sick, Receiving the Stranger, Visiting those in Prison (stocks). Below is an ecclesiastic before an altar, the Sun and Seven Stars, and Man and Woman at Prayer.

The window to the west depicts St. Thomas, the lacerated body of Christ, and St. Michael. In the south aisle, from the east, the windows depict St. William, Archbishop of York, and St. John the Evangelist, with kneeling figures beneath. The next window is mutilated. The third contains mutilated figures of the Baptist and the Blessed Virgin.

There are three bells, inscribed “God send us all the bliss of heaven. Anno Dni. 1627.” “*Soli Deo Gloria, 1640,*” and a Sanctus Bell with “*ihc.*”

#### ST. JOHN, MICKLEGATE.

This church consists of nave and chancel with aisles and a half-timbered belfry. It has an *Early English* nave and a *Decorated* chancel, with the exterior walls of both rebuilt in the *Perpendicular* style. The western wall is hidden by buildings, and the chancel has been shortened for the widening of North Street. A complete restoration took place in 1850-1, when the exterior walls on the south and east were rebuilt. The eastern end has three gables, but is without buttresses.

The floor was raised above flood level about 1760, so the arcades are dwarfed. The nave arches are pointed and of two orders. There are no caps, and the inner order intersects the octagonal pier whilst the outer arch finishes in a corbel on the pier. The chancel arcade on the north has a moulded half-cap on pier and respond, and in the east pier on the south side is a tall flat-headed opening twice recessed and chamfered. The north aisle roof is panelled with heraldic shields at the intersections.

The belfry replaces a spire which was blown down in 1551. In the lower bell chamber broken arches of the older and wider tower project from the west wall. There are four mediæval bells with the following inscriptions :—

2nd Bell : **¶ Sagt E** with shield bearing *three helms, two and one.*

4th Bell : On this bell is a crowned shield with “*ihc,*” another similar shield with the device worn away, and an inscription in small Old English text :

“*te se or si ora pro no bis,*”

5th Bell has in ornamented Gothic capitals :

“*Nicholaus*

**¶ Ad : Loca : Sancta : Trahe : Betris : Nos : Sc : Nicholae”**

6th Bell is the earliest dated of the York bells and bears in Langobardic letters :

“*o i o o Maria*

**¶ Come : Propicia : Sis : Ut : Alle (illegible)**  
**Virgo : Maria : A : D : M : CCCC : VIII ”**

There is some good painted glass in the eastern windows. The *Decorated* glass in the south aisle depicts events in the life of the Baptist. In the centre light is a large figure of St. John under a canopy ;

the side subjects are under a tabernacled canopy, and comprise the Birth of St. John, the Baptism of Christ, Herod's Feast, and the Beheading of St. John. In the base are kneeling figures. This *Decorated* glass is mutilated by being thrust into a *Perpendicular* window ; *Perpendicular* glass fills the tracery. There are figures of St. George, the Blessed Virgin enthroned receiving the Blessing of Christ, St. Christopher and St. Michael, and below are shields with the arms of the City of York and Neville.

The window in the north aisle has four lights, the earlier glass is in the base. Each compartment has husband and wife praying, their names being inscribed below. The remaining glass with tracery is *Late Perpendicular*, and commemorates Sir Richard Yorke, who was Mayor of the Staple at Calais and Lord Mayor of York in 1469 and 1482, and Member of Parliament. In the tracery are eight angels supporting shields bearing arms of Sir Richard Yorke and his family connections, and below are four large lights—1, Our Father in Pity exhibiting His crucified Son ; 2, A mutilated representation of St. George and the Dragon ; 3, A mutilated picture of the Crucifixion ; 4, St. Christopher. Under these may be seen Sir Richard Yorke in armour kneeling at an altar, and a smaller Trinity again representing Our Father in Pity, but showing Christ on the Cross. Below the window is an altar tomb, the front divided into three quatrefoil panels, the centres of which had brass shields. On the floor are two recumbent figures.

At the west end of the church is the old iron-bound parish chest, a *Renaissance* cover to the font, a Lord Mayor's board, and a benefaction board, surmounted by a painting of a lady dispensing charity to two children.

In the vestry is a silver paten, 1699, and a curious pewter flagon having seven sides, each adorned with a full length figure in seventeenth century costume.

## ST. MICHAEL, SPURRIERGATE,

Consists of nave with aisles and tower.

This church came into the possession of the Conqueror, who gave it to the Abbey of St. Mary.

In *Late Norman* times aisles were added to the nave ; and the arcades consist of slender clustered shafts, quatrefoil in plan with caps, similar to the Galilee Chapel at Durham. The nave, outer walls and tower were rebuilt in the fifteenth century. The church has been mutilated for widening the streets, the chancel and a portion of the nave having been taken down, and the south wall rebuilt without buttresses.

The reredos, communion rails, door screen and two chairs are good work of the *Renaissance* period, and there is a stamped leather altar cover of the time of Charles II.

In the north aisle near the communion rails is a memorial brass, consisting of a chalice with inscription to William Langton, rector, who died 13th August, 1463.

There is some good *Perpendicular* glass. In the south aisle a window depicts the Nine Choirs of Angels, and the next two windows have fragments of a Jesse or Genealogy of Our Lord.

Five of the six bells came from the Minster in 1765. Four were cast at York in 1681, and the other is a mediæval bell inscribed :—

“ **¶ Sum** (1) **Rosa Pulsata** (2) **Mundi Maria**  
(3) **Vocata.**”

The figures in brackets indicate a device—*three lions passant guardant* looking to the sinister side, two and one below in the form of the letter “ T ” ; the upper ones are crowned. Each letter of the inscription is from a separate stamp, and the capitals are crowned.

The Curfew is rung every night at eight o’clock ; and at six o’clock every morning (except Sunday),

after striking the hour, a bell rings the day of the month.

In the vestry is a silver chalice made in 1678 by Marmaduke Best, a York silversmith; a pewter flagon, 1767 ; and two pewter plates, one dated 1715.

ST. MARTIN, CONEY STREET,

Has nave with aisles, tower and porch.

The church is mentioned in Domesday Book, and was rebuilt during the first half of the fifteenth century. It has projecting from the east end a circular clock fixed in 1668, and having upon it a figure of a man holding a quadrant. The church was restored in 1853-4 and again in 1872, and is a good example of *Late Perpendicular* work. The nave arches are plain, being merely recessed, and intersect the octagonal piers, which are without caps but have good bases.

The ancient glass is very fine. The west window of five lights illustrates the life of St. Martin, and was painted in 1447 in consequence of a bequest made by Robert Semer, vicar of the church. It was restored in 1872 by Mr. J. W. Knowles. In the centre under a canopy is a large figure of St. Martin with crozier, giving his blessing ; below he is shown enthroned as Bishop of Tours ; on either side are six panels recording incidents in his career, viz.—being received by a king ; serving St. Hilary, who is celebrating Mass ; raising a dead person to life ; at Mass, the Holy Dove descending on him ; a young woman being brought to him for punishment ; leading an army ; lying ill in bed ; dividing his cloak with the beggar ; encountering Satan ; a vision ; a hare protected from the hounds ; dying. Underneath, in the centre, is Robert Semer at prayer, and in the tracery are angels.

The glass in the clerestory over the north arcade has some beautiful figures. Commencing from the west are two figures of Archbishops ; in the adjoining window the four Doctors of the Church, SS. Ambrose,

Augustine, Jerome and Gregory ; in the third are the four Evangelists ; in the adjoining window are St. Barbara, St. Catherine, St. Wilfrid and St. Denis ; and in the easternmost St. Christopher, the Archangel Gabriel, the Blessed Virgin, and St. George.

In the south aisle windows are figures of Our Lord, St. Barbara and St. George.

On the floor at the west end is a half-length figure in brass of C. Harrington, goldsmith, who died 1614 ; and in the south aisle is a slab to the memory of Mrs. Porteus, mother of Beilby Porteus, Bishop of London (see p. 237).

### ST. HELEN, ST. HELEN'S SQUARE,

Consists of nave with aisles, and a lantern belfry.

It is the only surviving church of four in York dedicated to the mother of Constantine the Great. The church is principally *Decorated* work. The octagonal lantern at the west end is carried upon an external arch between bold buttresses. In 1805 the west front was rebuilt in order to widen the street, the gables to the aisles were removed, and the west end of the south aisle was finished with a splay. The nave arches are recessed and chamfered, the inner being continued without caps to octagonal piers, whilst the outer finish on small moulded corbels. The hoodmoulds terminate in carving. The font is *Norman*, of bowl shape, and ornamented with an arcade surmounted by a band of carving. It has the original round base placed on a moulded *Decorated* base. At the east end of the south aisle is a piscina, and a brass inscription commemorating two maiden sisters, Barbara and Elizabeth Davyes, born in 1667 and 1669, who died in 1765 and 1767 respectively, each 98 years of age. They lived during the reign of Charles II. and of six successive monarchs.

There is some old glass. In the vestry is a silver communion cup made at York 1634-5, also a copy of the same made in York in 1856.

## ST. MARY, CASTLEGATE,

Consists of nave and chancel with aisles, and tower with spire.

This church is built on the site of a Roman building, for during the restoration in 1871 the buttress west of the south entrance was found resting on a Roman pavement. The Dedication Stone was discovered in a buttress in the east wall, and is now in a glazed case near the organ. The inscription signifies "*This Minster was built by Eferaud and Grim and Æse, in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ and St. Mary and St. Martin and St. Cuthbert and All Saints, and was consecrated in the year 75-*" The two lines that follow are difficult to interpret. The church is mentioned in Domesday Book thus: "Wil de Perci hath the church of St. Mary."

In Norman times a north aisle was added to the nave, and in the thirteenth century a south aisle. Later the chancel was rebuilt with aisles. During the *Perpendicular* period a new west end with lofty spire was added, the nave was widened and raised with a clerestory, and lofty windows were inserted in the outer walls. Subsequently arches were inserted in the chancel walls, and under the south one was the tomb of William Gray, Lord Mayor in 1367, which is now under the aumbry and piscina in the south aisle, while in the east wall are two brackets with figures of angels holding shields bearing the arms of Gray; there is also a small slab with a raised foliated cross.

In the chancel are sedilia, a piscina and a doorway which led to the sacristy now in ruins. In the north wall of the nave are three low arches; and at the west end is a long window, also a door which led into a room now in ruins. In the vestry is a stamped leather altar cover.

There is some old glass in the east window of the south aisle. The church was restored in 1870-1, through the munificence of Dean Duncombe.

In the churchyard, near the gates, is a headstone to the mother of Charles Jas. Matthews, the celebrated comedian.

### ALL SAINTS, PAVEMENT,

Has nave with clerestory, aisles, and octagonal lantern on a square tower.

The church is mentioned in Domesday Book as being in the patronage of the Bishop of Durham. It was entirely rebuilt in the fifteenth century, but the eastern part has been destroyed in order to widen the street. Of the chancel arch there are only the springers, but the aisle transverse arches remain. Last year the plaster was removed from the clerestory and gable ends, earlier gables being thus exposed. On the north door is a sanctuary knocker.

The tower contained a lamp which was lighted at nights to guide travellers to York ; the lenses are preserved in the vestry. In the belfry are two mediæval bells inscribed :—

“**¶ Sce : Johannes : ¶ Ora Pro Nobis**”

“**¶ Ihes Nazarenum, Rex Ivdeorvm**”

The letters are from separate stamps, but in the latter bell the capitals are crowned. In addition to the light in the tower one of the bells was also rung nightly to guide persons traversing the forests towards York.

The pulpit, dated 1634, has a dignified appearance, and is ascended by a winding stair with carved balusters. Texts surround both pulpit and sounding board. The *Perpendicular* lectern was brought from the demolished church of St. Crux. Attached to it by a chain is a book entitled “A replie unto Mr. Harding’s answeare,” and dated 1566.

There are two quaint services held in this church during the year, one about January 30th, when, in accordance with the Will of Jane Stainton, who died 1692, the Merchant Adventurers attend to be reminded of their latter end ; and the other on St. John the

Baptist's Day, when the Merchant Taylors attend service in accordance with the Will of John Straker, who died in 1667.

On the north wall is a mural tablet to Tate Wilkinson, Esquire, "The Wandering Patentee," who was lessee of the Theatre Royal for thirty-four years, and who died in 1803 (see p. 62).

A copy of the elegant lantern is placed on the tower of St. Dunstan-in-the-West, and is a noticeable object in Fleet Street, London.

#### ST. MICHAEL-LE-BELFREY, PETERGATE,

Has nave with aisles and a bell turret at the west end.

It was rebuilt from 1535 to 1545, and has under the windows a band of diagonal quatrefoil panels with shields. The west front was again rebuilt in 1867. The bell turret is carried on an external arch between buttresses. The interior consists of six bays formed with four-centred arches on tall clustered piers. At the junction of label moulds are figures of angels holding shields charged alternately with the "cross keys" and the crossed swords. The spandrels are filled with tracery. Above is the clerestory, having two windows over each bay. The roof is flat and panelled. The reredos and communion rails are good *Renaissance* work. At the east end of the south aisle is a monument, dated 1709, having large figures of Robert and Priscilla Squire, who occupied the Treasurer's House.

There is some good painted glass. The east window is partly fourteenth century work, the remainder of the time of King Henry VIII. On the south side the glass is much mutilated, and dates from the middle of the sixteenth century. In the westernmost window is St. James; in the next St. George and St. Christopher; in the adjoining one Bishop St. Hugh, St. Paul, St. William of York, and St. Peter; in the next St. Peter, St. Wilfrid and St. John. The east window of five lights has

canopies, and depicts the Annunciation, Nativity, Resurrection, etc. In the east window of the north aisle are figures of St. Michael and St. Christopher, also part of the Annunciation.

The notorious Guy Fawkes was baptised in the church.

In the vestry is a very fine Elizabethan communion cup with cover ; and also a copy made in York about the year 1780. Of old armour, there is a breastplate and two helmets.

#### HOLY TRINITY, GOODRAMGATE,

Has nave with aisles, south chapel and tower.

It is principally *Late Decorated* work with a *Perpendicular* tower. The nave arches on the south side are plain and recessed, with the outer arch springing from corbels; those on the north side have *Decorated* caps, except the easternmost, which has an *Early English* cap. During 1906 the plaster has been removed from the walls, with the result that a doorway at the east end of the south aisle and a wide arch at the west end were revealed. The choir south aisle was lowered in order to show the bases of the piers, and the excavations revealed a slab with an incised effigy, a memorial cross having a fish on one side and a brazier on the other, and two limestone coffins. The *Decorated* chapel is open to the south aisle of the nave by a wide four-centred arch having shields at the springing. The wooden screen has been destroyed. The chapel has aumbries, a trefoiled-headed piscina on a short moulded shaft and a squint ; the roof is flat, formed into six panels with heraldic shields at the intersections. The windows contain shields bearing the arms of Ros, Vere, Mowbray and Percy.

The tower arches have bold intersecting mouldings, the west window is of five lights, and in the belfry is a mediæval bell inscribed :—

“ **X** Sancta Maria Ora Pro Nobis ”

The church retains its boxed pews. Service is held in it once a year.

The painted glass is very fine, particularly the east window, dated 1470. The five lights contain figures of St. George ; St. John the Baptist ; The Holy Trinity, represented as Our Father in Pity ; St. John the Evangelist ; and St. Christopher ; and underneath runs a Latin inscription. Below are subject panels—St. Mary and Alphæus with their children ; St. Ann and Joachim with the Virgin and the Infant Christ ; the Holy Trinity, represented by three crowned figures, with the Blessed Virgin ; Zebedee and Mary with the infant St. John the Evangelist ; and St. Ursula (name above) and her companions.

The east window in the north aisle has a figure of the Blessed Virgin with the title “*Regina cœli*” ; below St. Mary is represented with the Divine Infant ; and under are fragments of a figure of St. William of York. In the adjoining light is an archbishop giving his blessing. Amongst the insertions is a beautiful small figure of St. John the Evangelist with an angel on either side playing a stringed instrument.

The east window of south aisle has part of a figure of an archbishop with a shield below, and in the other light a king, considered by Dr. Auden to represent St. Olaf, and the miracle of the conversion of loaves into stones.\* An inscribed slab, found 1906, has the inscription :—*Hic jacet Johann | es Youle quonda | m civis et merc | er Ebor cuius ani | me ppicietur deu | s amen.* [John Youle was Bayliff in 1367. Cp. Drake, *Eboracum*, p. 318.]

#### HOLY TRINITY OR CHRIST CHURCH, IN THE KING'S SQUARE,

Consists of nave with aisles, tower and porches.

This edifice, also known as “Sainct Trinity in Conyng-garthe,” was in early times a rectory, but on July 31st, 1414, a vicarage was ordained by Archbishop Bowet, and the vicar was to be free from all charges

---

\* See Daae—*Norges Helgener*, p. 52 ; also Metcalfe—*Passio et miracula Beati Olaui*, p. 78.—ED.

excepting that of finding straw in winter and green rushes in summer for strewing the church, according to the common use of churches.

The nave arches are *Decorated* work and of two orders, the arch moulds dying in the octagonal piers, except in those adjoining the tower, which have foliated caps, the one on the south having also an angle continued into a corbel head. A clerestory with small lights surmounts the arcades. The chancel was demolished in order to widen the street.

The tower and the exterior of the church were rebuilt in 1862, when some *Late Norman* sculptured stones were found and have been built in the east wall; and some memorial crosses have been inserted in the porches.

In the belfry are three mediæval bells inscribed :—

“ *Johannes eternis annis resonet Domino* ”

“ *Sit nomen Domini Benedictum* ”

“ *Santa Margareta ora pro nobis* ”

Each bell has upon it a shield bearing *two keys in saltire* (with a fish, cornsheaf, bell and urn respectively between the keys) and another shield bearing the founder's device.

There is a parish Lord Mayor's tablet dated 1774, with rests for the sword and mace.

The church does not contain any old glass.

#### ST. SAMPSON'S, CHURCH STREET,

Has nave, aisles and tower.

This church, with the exception of the tower and south wall, was rebuilt in 1848. The *Perpendicular* tower was damaged during the Siege of York and has not been restored. Over the west window is a mutilated niche and figure.

The nave arches are of two orders on octagonal piers, having moulded caps and bases. The tower arches are of three orders; that to the nave has, at the springing, angels holding shields, those to north and south intersect octagonal piers. On the east

side of the south door is an octagonal stoup, and at the east end of the north aisle is a small niche.

There are some fragments of old glass in the west window.

#### ST. CRUX, PAVEMENT.

The Parish Room is on a portion of the site of the old church, and was built in 1886 with materials from the demolished edifice. The south door was re-used. It is of panelled oak of *Early Perpendicular* work. The tomb of Sir Robert Watter, Knt., who died in 1610, was preserved and re-erected in the parish room. It has full length effigies of the knight in scarlet robe, cap and ruff, and his lady in full gown and ruff.

The Earl of Northumberland, who was beheaded in the Pavement in 1572, was buried in the old church, and Sir Thomas Herbert, the traveller, was also interred here.

#### ST. DENIS, WALMGATE,

Consists of the old choir with aisles and a modern tower.

The nave was taken down in 1798, but the fine Norman doorway was rebuilt without shafts as the new entrance.

The arcades have pointed arches with hollow chamfers stopping on octagonal piers. There is an Elizabethan mural monument on the north side of the sanctuary.

The north aisle windows have some fourteenth century glass, with figures of St. John the Baptist and St. Margaret. The east window in this aisle has vesica-shaped panels with fifteen subjects of the Genealogy of Our Lord. The east window has *Perpendicular* glass with figures of a bishop, the Blessed Virgin, St. John, St. Denis, and the Crucifixion. The east window of the south aisle has also *Perpendicular* glass with fragments of figures of St. Nicholas and St. John the Evangelist.

In the north aisle was buried Henry Percy, Earl of Northumberland, who was slain at the Battle of

Towton, 20th March, 1460. Percy's Inn, an old palace of the Earls of Northumberland, stood opposite the church.

There is in the vestry a silver communion cup made by Marmaduke Best, of York, in 1678. Of pewter there are three patens, the oldest 1667, two flagons and a basin (1741) for the font.

The oldest bell has an inscription in ornamented mediæval capitals :—

“*Fili Dei Miserere Mei 1621*”

ST. MARGARET, WALMGATE,

Has nave with north aisle, tower and porch.

The church was rebuilt in 1852. The famous *Late Norman* porch was retained. It is thirteen feet wide and projects six feet. The arch is of four orders, ornamented with scroll, beak head, medallions and foliage, with label adorned with the signs of the Zodiac. The piers have a double chevron and carved imposts, whilst the shafts have carved caps and moulded bases. Within at each side is a semi-circular recess. The porch roof is gabled and surmounted by a crucifix.

In the vestry is a silver communion cup made in York in 1657.

ST. LAWRENCE, WITHOUT WALMGATE BAR.

The old church, with the exception of the *Perpendicular* tower, has been taken down, and a new church erected on an adjoining site. The Norman doorway of three orders was preserved, and has been rebuilt to the tower. The parish stocks are within the churchyard gates. Sir John Vanburgh, the architect of Blenheim and Castle Howard, was married in the old church.

ST. CUTHBERT, PEASEHOLME GREEN,

Has nave and tower.

The church was rebuilt in the fifteenth century. A door and window which led to a room under the east end are now walled up. There is a stoup on the inside of the south doorway, and at the south-east

corner is a pew dated 1636, with inscription "donne at ye charge of this pareish." In the vestry is a curious paten bearing the date 1673. There are some fragments of old glass.

#### ST. ANDREW, ST. ANDREWGATE.

This parish was united in 1585 to that of St. Saviour, and the church disused. The chancel is utilised as a dwelling, and the nave used as a furniture warehouse.

#### ST. SAVIOUR, ST. SAVIOURGATE,

Consists of nave, with aisles and tower.

The church was given by the Conqueror to the Abbey of St. Mary. It was rebuilt in the fifteenth century and restored in 1843. There are five bays, and the arches are of two orders, chamfered and stopped on octagonal piers, with moulded caps and bases.

The east window contains fragments of old glass ; amongst the subjects is the Crucifixion.

Sir John and Lady Hewley are interred in this church. The almshouses adjoining the church were founded by Lady Hewley, and the Presbyterian Chapel erected in 1692 in the same street owes much to this lady.

#### ST. OLAVE, MARYGATE,

Has nave, aisles, tower and modern chancel.

The church was founded by Jarl Siward in honour of the Norwegian King Olaf. It was rebuilt in the fifteenth century. Over the north doorway is a fine niche. The edifice underwent restoration in 1722-3. The six bays have arches of two orders resting on columns westward and octagonal piers eastward, which have caps with square abaci and mould under.

There are fragments of old glass with figures of a bishop and a king.

#### ST. WILFRID, BLAKE STREET.

Part of the north wall alone remains. The parish was amalgamated in the sixteenth century with that of St. Michael-le-Belfrey.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY OF THE CHURCHES OF YORK.

1687.—The Torre MSS. in the Minster Library.

1730.—*History of York*, by Thomas Gent.

1736.—*History of York*, by Francis Drake.

1788.—*History of York*, published by Wilson & Spence.

1818.—*History of York*, Hargrove.

1823.—*Reliquiae Antiquae*, No. 1, “Church of St. Lawrence,” by John Browne, with four etched plates,  $10\frac{1}{2}$  by  $8\frac{1}{2}$ .

1825-46-67.—Notes by Sir Stephen Glynne.—*Yorks. Archæol. Jour.*, Vol. XII., 1893.

1827.—*St. Margaret's Porch*, John Browne. Quarto. 33 pp.

1831.—Views of the Parish Churches, with short notes. A. Barclay. 11 by  $8\frac{1}{2}$ .

1839.—Lawton's Collections relating to Churches in the Diocese.

1843.—*The Churches of York*, by W. Monkhouse and F. Bedford, jun., with notes by Rev. J. Fawcett, with lithos. and plans,  $14\frac{1}{4}$  by  $10\frac{1}{2}$ . This is the most important work on the York Churches.

1847.—Notes by J. H. Parker and John Browne.—*York Volume of Archæol. Inst.*

1857.—Sheahan and Whellan's *History of York, East Riding, and Portion of West Riding*, Vol. I.

1862.—*Holy Trinity, King's Square*, by C. B. Norcliffe, two lithos., 24 pp.

1865.—*Description All Saints', North Street*, 12 pp.

1867.—*All Saints', North Street*, by Rev. C. Kerry, 13 pp., and one plate litho. of cross slabs.—*Assoc. Archtl. Soc. Report*.

1872.—*Guide to the Ancient Churches*, by D. A. Walter.

1874.—*Ancient Memorial Cross Slabs*, by D. A. Walter. 26 plates and 24 pp. notes.  $10\frac{3}{4}$  by  $8\frac{1}{2}$ .

1883.—*York Church Plate*, by T. M. Fallow and C. R. Hope, 48 pp. illus.—*Yorks. Archæol. Jour.*, Vol. VIII.

1885.—*The Bells of the Ancient Churches*, 16 pp.

1901.—*St. Martin-cum-Gregory*, 38 pp.,  $10\frac{1}{2}$  by  $8\frac{1}{4}$ .

1905.—*St. Martin-cum-Gregory*, 16 pp., with plan and eight photo blocks.—*Yorks. Philos. Soc. Report*.

*Ancient Memorial Brasses in York*.—*Yorks. Archæol. Jour.*

Of the Parish Registers only three have been printed:—

1893-97.—*St. Martin-cum-Gregory*, 1539-1734.

1893-95.—*Holy Trinity, Micklegate*, 1585-1753.

1899.—*St. Michael-le-Belfrey*, 1565-1653, two vols.

The Churchwardens' Accounts, which are full of interest, have received little attention; only two have been printed, viz.:—

1797.—Excerpts from *St. Michael's, Spurriergate*, by J. Croft.

1901.—*St. Martin-cum-Gregory*, from 1798, published in *Parish Magazine*. The Churchwardens' Books previous to that date are lost.

## MONASTIC ESTABLISHMENTS IN YORK.

REV. J. SOLLOWAY, D.D. (Oxon.).

YORKSHIRE is famous for the beauty and number of its monastic ruins, and judging from these evidences in our midst of the former existence of a religious system that passed away in the sixteenth century, we conclude that monasticism must have exerted a very important influence in the county of broad acres. Anyone desirous of studying the "religious" life of the days before the Reformation has a fine field before him in Yorkshire. Nowhere can finer remains of religious houses be found, and in no part of the country have these fragments been more assiduously studied. Histories of isolated monasteries have been written, as well as volumes dealing with the monasticism of the whole county ; public and private records have been read and published for the purpose of illustrating and elucidating the life of the religious houses ; and in various parts of the county excavations have been made from time to time, by means of which many facts about the arrangements of the different parts of monastic buildings have been brought to light.

And whilst the county, as a whole, is of the greatest interest to the student of English monasticism, the centre of this interest seems to have been focussed in its capital, the Minster City, where not only stood the magnificent Cathedral, the pride and glory of the county and the city, but also in that place was represented almost every phase and shade of mediæval monasticism, from the splendid Benedictine Abbey near the banks of Ouse, down to the humble

Maison Dieu, or the simple hermitage with its solitary anchoress. It has not been sufficiently realised how important and numerous were the religious houses of various kinds existing in the northern capital during pre-Reformation days ; and to show their importance a list is here given, classified according to the different orders to which the houses belonged :—

### I.—PRE-CONQUEST HOUSES.

(1) The Minster.	(3) Galmanho Abbey.
(2) Christ Church.	(4) Hospital of St. Peter.

### II.—POST-CONQUEST HOUSES.

#### (A) BENEDICTINE.

(5) St. Mary's Abbey.	(7) St. Clement's Nunnery.
(6) Holy Trinity Priory.	(8) All Saints' Cell, Fishergate

#### (B) CLERICAL ORDERS.

(9) St. Andrew's Priory.

#### (C) MILITARY ORDERS.

(10) Knights Templars.

#### (D) MENDICANT ORDERS.

(11) Franciscan Priory.	(14) Augustine Priory.
(12) Dominican Priory.	(15) Crutched Friars.
(13) Carmelite Priory.	(16) Friars of the Sac.

#### (E) COLLEGIATE ESTABLISHMENTS.

(17) Bedern College.	(19) St. William's College.
(18) St. Sepulchre's College.	

#### (F) HOSPITALS.

(20) St. Leonard's.	(33) St. Mary's the Greater,
(21) St. Nicholas'.	Bootham.
(22) St. Thomas'.	(34) St. Mary's the Less,
(23) St. Anthony's, Peaseholme.	Bootham.
(24) Trinity, Fossgate.	(35) St. Katharine's, The Mount.
(25) Fishergate.	(36) St. Katharine's, Fishergate.
(26) Holy Priests'.	
(27) Layerthorpe Gate.	(37) St. Katharine's, by St. Nicholas'.
(28) Monkgate.	(38) St. John the Baptist's.
(29) Micklegate.	(39) St. Loy's.
(30) St. Anthony's, Gillygate.	(40) Hospital of St. John and Our Lady.
(31) St. Giles'.	
(32) St. Helen's.	

POST-CONQUEST HOUSES, *continued.*

## (G) MAISONS DIEU.

(41) Ouse Bridge.	(50) John Marton.
(42) North Street	(51) Castlegate.
(43) North Street.	(52) St. Andrewgate.
(44) White Friars' Lane.	(53) Fishergate.
(45) Little St. Andrewgate.	(54) Felter Lane.
(46) Little St. Andrewgate.	(55) Little Shambles.
(47) Layerthorpe Bridge.	(56) Le Stonebow Lane
(48) Peter Lane.	(57) Walmgate.
(49) Hertergate and Castle Hill.	

## (H) CHAPELS (FREE AND CHANTRY).

(58) St. George's Free Chapel.	(64) St. Christopher's Chapel.
(59) King's Free Chapel in the Tower.	(65) St. Katharine's Chapel, Haver Lane.
(60) St. Anne's Chapel, Foss Bridge.	(66) Chapel of St. Mary-at- the-Gate.
(61) St. Anne's Chapel, Horse Fair.	(67) St. William's Chapel, Ouse Bridge.
(62) Bishop's Chapel, Clementhorpe.	(68) St. James' Chapel, The Mount.
(63) St. Christopher's Chapel (Mansion House).	

## (I) HERMITAGES.

(69) Bishophill Cell.

This is a long catalogue, and it is doubtful whether any other town or city in the kingdom could furnish so numerous or so representative a list of mediæval monasteries. To deal at length with such a formidable array is an obvious impossibility for an undertaking of this kind, but an interesting field of labour lies before some future writer. No systematic attempt has so far been made. Short accounts of several houses have been written, and the subject has been partially dealt with by Drake in his *Eboracum*, by Dugdale in his *Monasticon Anglicanum*, by Tanner in his *Notitia Monastica*, and more recently by Mr. Paley Baildon in his *Monastic Notes*; but much has been left absolutely untouched, and it is to be hoped that someone may be moved to undertake a work of this kind.

How far this was done by Dr. John Burton (see p. 229) in his *Monasticon Eboracense* is for the present unknown. Only one volume of his monumental work was published, and, unfortunately, that volume did not deal with the religious houses of the City of York. The second volume was written, as also an appendix to the two, equal in size to each of the others. The MS. of the second volume has unfortunately been lost, but is probably lying hidden away in some private library. The appendix is now in the possession of Lord Herries, the six quarto volumes being carefully preserved at Everingham Park. If ever the manuscript of the second volume is discovered and published along with the appendix, it will be the most valuable work ever written upon Yorkshire monasticism, and will throw much light upon the history of many of the houses mentioned in the above list.

At what date monasticism was first introduced into the City of York is a matter of uncertainty, but there can be no doubt that monks found their way into the northern capital at a very early period. The first reference extant is the one supplied by Hoveden, in which we are told that a certain monastery in the City of York was burnt down on Sunday, the 23rd of April, 741 :—

“*Monasterium in Eboraca civitate succensum est  
nono Cal. Maii, feria prima, 741.*”

What particular house was referred to in that passage is not known for certain. That it was York Minster is very improbable for many reasons, and why the Cathedral should have been mentioned in connection with the event is somewhat remarkable. From its earliest years the Church of St. Peter has been a Cathedral establishment, and was never, in its true sense, a monasterium, or minster. York Minster is the popular name for the Church of the Northern Primate, but its proper designation is York Cathedral. It is easy to understand the term Minster being applied

to the Cathedral at Ripon and the Collegiate Church of St. John at Beverley. Both of these churches were formerly Benedictine Monasteries before their conversion into collegiate establishments, and correctly are they spoken of as Minsters. The Cathedral Church of York, however, was never a Benedictine Monastery but always a House of Canons, and Hoveden's statement that a monasterium was destroyed by fire in the middle of the eighth century must be referred to some other religious house then existing in the capital of the north.

## PRE-CONQUEST MONASTERIES.

How many monasteries there were in the York of Saxon and Danish times we do not know, but that there were some is quite certain. Strange, indeed, it would have been if no such establishments had been found in the chief town of the county, during the period when they were flourishing in other parts of it. At Whitby, Beverley, Ripon, Tadcaster, Creyke, Gilling (near Richmond) and Barwick-in-Elmete, monasteries certainly existed in pre-Conquest days, and, contemporary with these, there were in York at least four religious houses (*vide supra*).

### (1) YORK MINSTER.

#### HOUSE OF CANONS.

The Cathedral Church of York will be dealt with in another part of this work (p. 94), and nothing need here be said with respect to its history or its present condition. It was a House of Canons, and had several collegiate bodies connected with it. The description of the former will be left in other hands ; the latter will be described in their proper place.

### (2) CHRIST CHURCH.

#### HOUSE OF CANONS.

In the days before the Norman Conquest, there stood in the street now called Micklegate an important

house of Secular Canons. The church and its buildings occupied the site of the present Priory Church of the Holy Trinity and the close belonging to it, which at the Dissolution was alienated. Very little is known of the history of this house. In the reign of William Rufus, 1089, it was converted into an Alien Benedictine Priory, and in the famous charter of Ralph Pagnell, by means of which the church was re-established and converted into a community of Benedictines, an interesting reference is made to the former condition and the subsequent desecration of the House of Canons. Here are the words of the charter :—

*“Quapropter ego Radulphus, Paganellus cognominatus,  
“divini amoris igne inflammatus, cupiens in cœlo the-  
“saurizare, quæ post hanc vitam queam centuplicata  
“recipere, habens apud Eboraci civitatem, de feodo  
“regis Anglorum, quondam ecclesiam in honorem sanctæ  
“Trinitatis constructam, olim canonicis, ac prædiorum  
“redditibus atque ornamenti ecclesiasticis decoratam,  
“nunc vero peccatis exigentibus pene ad nihilum  
“redactam, cupiens in ea servitium Dei, quod deperierat  
“reformare, tradidi eam beato Martino Majoris Monas-  
“terii, ejusque monachis perpetuo possidendam,” etc.*

“Wherefore I, Ralph, surnamed Pagnell, inflamed  
“by the fire of divine love, desiring to treasure up  
“in heaven what after this life I can receive a  
“hundredfold, having at the City of York, of the  
“fief of the king of the English, a certain church built  
“to the honour of the Holy Trinity, formerly adorned  
“with canons and rents of farms and ecclesiastical  
“ornaments, but now by sins which demand redress,  
“reduced almost to nothing, (I) being wishful to  
“re-establish in it the divine service which had  
“perished, have delivered it to Blessed Martin of  
“Marmoutier and his monks, to be in their possession  
“for ever,” etc.

It will be noticed that in this charter the church is referred to as Holy Trinity, and not Christ's Church.

It bore the double dedication before the Conquest, and for a long time afterwards. There is abundant evidence of this, and that the two names refer to one and the same church there is not the slightest doubt.

Now this reference to the former condition of Holy Trinity, or Christ's Church, is important. It shows three things—(a) it was endowed with the rents of farms; (b) it was decorated with ecclesiastical ornaments; (c) it was adorned with Canons.

(a) ITS LANDS.—An indication of the whereabouts of the lands, by the rents of which Christ's Church was maintained, is given in two places in the Great Survey of 1086. In speaking of the possessions of Richard Fitz-Erfast, Domesday Book says :—"In the "Church of Christ, near the City of York, is half a "carucate of land and three tofts." The extent of this land is not known, as the carucate was a variable quantity, but it would probably be something between forty-five and seventy-five acres, and this Domesday allusion clearly indicates that Christ's Church was no ordinary Parish Church. Another reference in the same book to the lands of Richard Fitz-Erfast further demonstrates this fact. Richard's possessions are enumerated as :—

Torp (Bishopthorpe), Christ's Church.

Mileburg (Bilbrough), Christ's Church.

Monechutone (Monkton), Christ's Church.

Esdesai (Hessay), Christ's Church,

Cnapetun (Knapton), Christ's Church, and

Christ's Church, near the City of York.

Now, putting these two passages in Domesday Book together, we learn that Bishopthorpe, Bilbrough, Monkton, Hessay and Knapton were all in a district called Christ's Church, or that they were all either then, or at some former time, belonging to Christ's Church, and that this Christ's Church, near the City of York, was a church connected with which was a large extent of land of from forty-five to seventy-five acres, together with three tofts.

These were doubtless some of the lands from which, according to Ralph Pagnell's charter, Christ's Church derived its revenues. In all probability there were many others, for Ralph's endowment of the Benedictine Priory was really a re-endowment, the lands and churches given to it being those which had formerly belonged to it when it was a House of Canons. If this conjecture, which is now generally adopted, be correct, then the possessions of Christ's Church were numerous and important, embracing lands and churches in various parts of Yorkshire and Lincolnshire.

(b) THE BUILDING.—In a paper prepared for the 1846 visit to York of the Archæological Institute, Mr. Stapleton gave an exhaustive and detailed account of the Priory of Holy Trinity.

This paper was carefully studied by Professor Willis, who had written an excellent account of the "Architectural History of York Cathedral," in connection with the same visit. In his paper Willis stated a difficulty he had experienced with respect to two events which in modern times had been referred to York Minster—(1) the fire of 741, and (2) the building and consecration of a magnificent Basilica by Archbishop Albert, in 782. For several reasons he rejected the notion that either event referred to the Cathedral. "I believe," he says, "that this description belongs to some other church, either erected in York or elsewhere in the diocese."

After having written his own paper he read that of Mr. Stapleton, and in a footnote later on he added : "The fire of 741, and the rebuilding by Albert, I have already rejected as not distinctly appropriated to this church (the Minster), and since that sheet has passed through the Press the perusal of Mr. Stapleton's elaborate history of the Church of the Holy Trinity, or *Christ Church*, at York, . . . has suggested to me that the Basilica of Albert, dedicated as it was to the *Alma Sophia*, i.e., to Christ, was probably this very Christ Church."

If this theory of Professor Willis be correct, then we know something about the church of which Ralph Pagnell in his charter said that it was "decorated with ecclesiastical ornaments." For the Basilica of Albert is elaborately described by Alcuin in a Latin poem on the Bishops and Saints of the Church of York.

"A new structure of a wondrous basilica was in  
"the days of this Bishop (Albert) begun, completed  
"and consecrated. This exceedingly lofty edifice,  
"supported on solid columns, from which curved  
"arches spring, is resplendent within, with admirable  
"ceilings and windows, and shines in its beauty  
"surrounded by many porticoes, having numerous  
"chambers under different roofs, which contain thirty  
"altars with various ornaments."

(c) ITS CANONS.—Whether this identification of the basilica of Albert with the Christ's Church standing on the south side of Ouse in pre-Norman times be correct or not, certain it is that the church which subsequently became a house of Benedictines was "formerly adorned with Canons," endowed with "rents of farms," and "decorated with ecclesiastical ornaments." There is much to be said in favour of Willis' theory, and assuming its accuracy, the chronology of the Community of Secular Canons called Christ's Church, as far as it can be ascertained, is this :—

741 A.D. The monastery destroyed by fire.

782 A.D. The basilica of Albert consecrated.

1066-1070 A.D. The church and its precincts ruined at the "rendition" of the city.

1086 A.D. The church in the possession of Richard Fitz-Erfast.

1089 A.D. The church re-established and re-endowed as an Alien Benedictine Priory.

But, in connection with this House, may not a suggestion be hazarded which may help in the solution of the enigma relative to the very early ecclesiastical history of York? Which was the church of the early Bishops of York? Unthinkingly, men have usually

assumed York Minster to be the church. But why? That church was not built till the year 627—first of wood and then of stone. From Bede's account it is evident that the wooden erection, hastily built by King Edwin, while he was receiving instruction in preparation for Christian baptism, was placed on a new site, and not on the foundations of any previously existing Christian church. Moreover, if anyone will glance at a plan of Eboracum, with the Cathedral Church of St. Peter outlined upon it, he will see that it comes almost in the centre of the Roman camp. But a Christian church would neither be wanted nor tolerated there. That part of Eboracum would be required for military purposes, and a Christian church, if one existed during the Roman occupation, would have to be erected elsewhere.

That Christianity did exist in Roman York is clear. Whether the statement that the place was made an archiepiscopal see in 311 has any foundation or not, there can be no reasonable doubt that at the Council of Arles, convened by Constantine the Great in 314, Eborius, the Bishop of York—the Bishop of the place where Constantine had been raised to the empire, probably the city of his nativity—was present. Which was his church? And which the church of Sampson, of Pyrannus, of Thadiocus, who presided over the See of York in the fifth and sixth centuries? It could not have been the church which was built in 627, but one probably that would stand on the south side of the river, where the civilian population dwelt in Roman times, and in the days which followed.

Referring to the two churches on Bishophill, the late Chancellor Raine wrote:—"They occupy the "highest ground within the city. Is this the hill on "which the earliest bishop that visited Eburacum "set up his tent, and which, after the fashion of our "spiritual ancestors, was crowned at once with a "Christian temple? There are precedents for such "a step, and the supposition will explain a name "(Bishophill) about which there has been some doubt."

This conjecture of Canon Raine's has much in its favour, and had he realised the existence in pre-Conquest days of a great and important House of Canons in the very district of which he was writing, he would doubtless have had much more to say on the matter. The various theories of Raine, of Willis and others, coupled with undoubted historic facts that have come to light, all fit in with each other most harmoniously, and will doubtless be regarded some day as important elements in the elucidation of the earliest history of York Christianity. There were certainly Bishops of York in Roman and Saxon times. Where was their church? Not where the Minster stands. Where then? In the district probably, Canon Raine suggests, called Bishophill, which took its name from the fact. But was there an important church in that neighbourhood during that period? Yes, suggests Professor Willis. In 741 a "monasterium" was burnt down there, and some years later, in 782, a magnificent basilica was erected on the site, probably the finest Saxon church ever built. This church had land around it in 1086, says Domesday Book, more than forty-five acres in extent, together with three tofts where formerly dwelt three important Saxons. In 1089 the church was re-established and re-endowed, the building and the tofts being part of the endowment, and a portion of the forty-five acres being used as the Benedictine Priory close, as far as the district thereafter specifically known as Bishophill. In that neighbourhood, two other churches had been erected, and down to the Dissolution, each of them, St. Mary's Bishophill Senior and St. Mary's Bishophill Junior, made an annual payment of two shillings and sixpence to the Priory. Why that yearly payment was made is not recorded, but it was probably the old feudal charge which the two churches would have to pay for the portion of land given them from the original half-carucate belonging to the House of Canons.

This is a rough draught of the facts and theories connected with the House of Canons on the south side of the river, which flourished in the days before the arrival of the Normans, but came to grief in the general destruction which resulted from the ravages of the Conqueror in this part of the country.

### (3) MONASTERY OF GALMANHO.

Some years before the Norman Conquest, a monastery was built on the site, or a portion of the site, where afterwards stood the Abbey of St. Mary. This pre-Conquest House was founded by a powerful Dane, who, entering the service of Edward the Confessor, became the governor of the North. Siward was his name, his title the Earl of Northumberland. About the middle of the eleventh century he began to build this religious house on a place outside the city walls called Galmanho. Appropriately Siward the Dane caused the church to be dedicated to the Danish king and martyr, St. Olaf, and consequently this pre-Norman abbey is sometimes referred to as the monastery of Galmanho, and sometimes as that of St. Olaf. The ancient dedication is still retained in the neighbouring Parish Church of St. Olave. Through many vicissitudes this old church has come down to us. Originally the church of the Danish Monastery, it afterwards, for a short time, was the conventional church of the early monks of St. Mary's Abbey until the Abbey Church was built. Later on its status was that of a chapel dependent upon the Abbey, but after the Dissolution it became the parish church of that part of the city. Its magnificent neighbour has passed away, but the church of St. Olave still remains, much altered, indeed, from its original condition, but a standing witness of the continuity of the English Church, connecting us with the Church of pre-Conquest days.

In that church its founder was laid to rest in the thirteenth year of Edward the Confessor, A.D. 1055.

## (4) HOSPITAL OF ST. PETER.

In addition to the three Houses already mentioned as existing before the Conquest, there was certainly one more, the Hospital of St. Peter. It was, of course, not simply a hospital in the modern sense of the term, though it did fill the place of a modern hospital much more nearly than most of the mediæval societies bearing that designation. But St. Peter's Hospital was essentially a religious house from its foundation to its surrender in 1539.

The date of the foundation of the house is a matter on which different opinions have been held. Some, like Tanner, ascribe it to the reign of the Conqueror, but generally it is regarded as being older than that, and there seems no reason for doubting the commonly accepted story of its origin. This account places the foundation in the reign of King Athelstan, and regards that monarch as the founder.

On his way to fight against the Scots, Athelstan called at York and asked the prayers of the Canons for a blessing on the expedition. His arms proving successful, he again called at the Cathedral on his way back, to offer his public thanksgivings. This was in the year 936. During his stay at the Minster he noticed certain Culdees, who were devoting their lives to the amelioration of the condition of a number of poor people. As an act of thanksgiving, the King gave to these Culdees a piece of land lying to the west of the Cathedral, on which they might build a separate establishment, where their hospitable and charitable work might be more successfully prosecuted ; and for the endowment of the work he granted to them one thrave of corn from every carucate of land in the Bishopric of York. Some accounts say the endowment was a thrave of every kind of corn from each carucate. But, taking the lower reckoning, this grant of the King was a magnificent gift. A thrave consisted of twenty sheaves, and when we remember

the extent of the diocese at that time, including as it did the counties of Yorkshire, Lancashire, Cumberland and Westmoreland, we can easily understand that this house became in time one of the richest of all the monastic establishments in the northern capital.

The story of its progress, however, belongs to the days after the Conquest, when its revenues were augmented, and its name was changed. But, as Athelstan founded it, so it continued down to the Conquest, a religious society whose chief work was to look after the poor, royally endowed as a separate establishment ; their Master, or Custos, at first evidently elected by the brethren, though afterwards the appointment was in the gift of the king for the time being.

The ground given by Athelstan was that on which the Theatre Royal now stands. What kind of building was first put up is not known, but it has been conjectured that it was a timber erection. Certainly, the foundations now to be seen are those of a later period than 936, and probably date back to one of the rebuildings soon after the Conquest.

## BENEDICTINE MONASTERIES.

The Benedictine order was well represented in the York of post-Conquest times, there being an Abbey, a Priory, a Nunnery and a Cell.

### (5) ST. MARY'S ABBEY.

The story of the founding of St. Mary's Abbey is an exceedingly interesting one, connecting it with two of the most famous monasteries of Saxon times —Whitby and Lastingham. About 1074, the ancient Abbey of Whitby was refounded, Stephen of Whitby being created Prior. But in 1078 he incurred the displeasure of his patron, Earl William de Percy, and had to abandon the Priory. He found his way to Lastingham, the place for ever famous as the

old home of SS. Cedd and Chad. For about two centuries the religious life had been practically extinct here, and when Stephen appealed for help to the King, the old monastery, or what was left of it, being in the king's hands, was given to him. At once the restoration began, Stephen being consecrated Abbot by Thomas Bayeux, Archbishop of York. But as he had been driven from Whitby, so in 1087 he was expelled from Lastingham, his old enemy, Earl Percy, being the cause of his eviction. He had a friend, however, in the Earl of Richmond, Alan of Bretagne, who was the owner of the Church of St. Olave, in York. This, together with four acres of land adjoining, he received as a gift from the Earl, and on this site he founded a new abbey. For some time the old Church of St. Olave was used as the Abbey Church, and the house was known as the Abbey of St. Olave. But in the year 1088, William Rufus, when at York, visited St. Olave's, and finding the accommodation insufficient, he considerably enlarged the donation of Earl Alan, and in the following year, 1089, laid the foundation of the new church, the dedication being changed from St. Olave to St. Mary.

This church suffered with many others in York from the great fire of 1137, and probably some time after this the choir was rebuilt on a somewhat larger scale.

In the year 1271, Abbot Simon de Warwick laid the foundation of a new church, the Archbishop of York, in 1278, encouraging the faithful to help in the work by granting an indulgence to all such as should contribute to the building of the great central tower. Abbot Simon lived to see the work completed within twenty-two years.

The recent excavations in the choir clearly indicate the various stages in the development of the building. The apsidal endings of the Norman church of Abbot Stephen may be seen ; distinct indications may also be noticed of a Transitional or Early English choir ;





ST. MARY'S ABBEY,  
FROM THE EAST.

*Photo: W. Watson.*

whilst the foundations of the Decorated choir, two bays larger than the Early English, are all shown.

The central tower, built during the abbacy of Simon de Warwick, was destroyed by lightning in 1376, and would be afterwards rebuilt, but the foundations of the four piers are *in situ*, as also are those of the north and south transepts. The walls of the Decorated nave on the north side are still standing, and a portion of the west front of the church.

The Abbey was surrendered in the year 1540, its annual value at that time being given by

Dugdale as	£1,550 7s. 9d.
Canon Raine as	£1,650 0s. 7½d.
Speed as	£2,085 1s. 5¾d.

The Abbey was retained by the Crown, and it is much to be regretted that, at least, the magnificent church was not preserved. But York had its Cathedral, and the district had its Parish Church of St. Olave, and the retention of a second great church was deemed unnecessary.

THE ABBOT'S HOUSE.—Very soon after the Dissolution, the Abbot's house was utilised as the residence of the Lord President of the North, the Council being settled there before December 13th, 1538. The first of these presidents to reside in the King's Manor, as it was called, was the Bishop of Llandaff, Robert Holgate, who was afterwards Archbishop of York from 1544 to 1554.

Between this house and the Ouse, a palace was erected by the King, who contemplated dwelling in it during his occasional visits to the North. His first visit was made in September, 1541, when he and Catherine Howard occupied the new palace for a short time. But the building, hastily erected, was doomed soon to disappear. The only part left of this palace is the spacious vault which faces the south front of the Blind School, and is still known as the King's Cellar.

For the first thirty years after the Dissolution little or no alteration was made in the Abbot's House.

But in 1568-9, during the presidency of the Earl of Sussex, Thomas Radcliff, a sum of over £600 was expended in repairs and enlargement. Alterations on a larger scale followed when the Earl of Huntingdon was president in 1572, and in the reign of James I., under Lord Sheffield, great additions were made, a sum of £3,301 4s. having been spent by the year 1624.

During the Earl of Strafford's presidency, further alterations were effected, the Earl being charged with unbecoming arrogance in placing his arms in one of the royal palaces, the arms which still exist over the doorway on the west side of the quadrangle.

It is somewhat difficult to distinguish which parts belong to the old Abbot's House, but after passing into the first quadrangle, the building to the right is pointed out as belonging to the house rebuilt by Abbot Sever, between 1485 and 1495, as also the greater part of the south front of the building. The stone staircase is also said to belong to the pre-Reformation period.

After the Revolution, the site of the Abbey was successively leased to different people, the buildings being regarded as a sort of stone quarry for the neighbourhood. York Castle, St. Olave's Church, and Beverley Minster have all been repaired out of the ruins ; whilst some of the limestone has been converted into lime for building purposes, or used for road repairs, or in the erection of private houses. The whole building would doubtless have gone, if it had not been for the foundation in 1822 of the Yorkshire Philosophical Society, to whom the greater part of the site of the Abbey was granted by the Crown in 1827, and, by purchase and arrangement, nearly the whole of the remaining portion has since come into their hands. Through their care and labours, what remained of the church has been kept, whilst considerable portions of the foundations

of the conventional buildings have been preserved. These parts are the following :—

- (1) The Close Walls.
- (2) The Abbey Gateway.
- (3) (?) The Hospitium and smaller gateway.
- (4) The Portal to the Chapter House.
- (5) Portion of the Great Quadrangle.
- (6) Foundations and portions of piers of domestic buildings now beneath the Museum.
- (7) Under the hall of the Museum are the foundations of another room. Its large ornamented fire-place may still be seen.
- (8) In continuation of this room was the Refectory, eighty-two feet by thirty-seven feet.
- (9) Beneath the ground in this part of the gardens are the remains of the foundations of the other monastic buildings.
- (10) The Abbot's House (portions of).

**THE ABBOT.**—The Abbot of St. Mary's was mitred, and sat as a spiritual peer with the bishops in the House of Lords. When a vacancy occurred in the abbacy, the King was informed, and he, as patron, granted licence to the monks to elect a successor. The new abbot having been chosen, his name was submitted to the King for approval, and if the election received the royal confirmation, a notification of the fact was sent to the Archbishop of York, who then performed the ceremony of consécration, and admitted the new abbot to the spiritualities and temporalities of the house.

**JURISDICTION.**—The abbot had jurisdiction not only over the monastery, but in an extensive district known as the liberty of St. Mary. He held courts, and sentenced to imprisonment or death. The prison was probably the lower portion of the building still attached to the gateway, the upper room being the court-room. The abbot's gallows were placed near the site of the mill in Burton Stone Lane (see p. 63).

**THE ABBEY CHURCHES.**—A great number of churches were given to the Abbey at various times, St. Olave's, St. Wilfrid's, St. Andrew's, St. Saviour's, St. Michael at Ouse Bridge end, and St. Crux, all in York, being

among the number. In the county there were thirty-eight other churches belonging to the Abbey, and several in other counties.

**THE ABBEY CELLS.**—Besides these churches, there were several cells, or dependent priories, belonging to the Abbey. These were —

- St. Martin's, Richmond, Yorks.
- St. Bees', Cumberland.
- Wetherhall, Cumberland.
- Saintoft, Lincolnshire.
- Haines, Lincolnshire.
- Warrington, Northumberland.
- Marske, Nottinghamshire.
- Rumburgh, Suffolk.
- St. Mary Magdalen, Lincoln.

**AN ABBEY OFFSHOOT.**—In addition to these dependent cells, one very important abbey owed its existence to the monks of St. Mary's. In 1132, sixteen monks, dissatisfied with the discipline at St. Mary's, and desirous of keeping a stricter rule, migrated to Skeldale, and founded the Cistercian Abbey of Fountains, electing one Richard as their first abbot.

**THE ABBOT'S HOUSES.**—The Abbot had also several places of residence in the county, the principal being at Overton and Deighton, and one for residence when in London attending to his Parliamentary or other duties. This London house was near to St. Paul's Wharf, and in the Parish of St. Paul.

**THE ABBEY POSSESSIONS.**—Lands, houses, rents, fees and other charges from various parts of Yorkshire and other counties furnished a large income for the maintenance of the Abbey, its monks and dependents, among the possessions being the manors of Appleton, Airmyn, Bramham, Burniston, Catterick, Clifton, Deighton, East Cottingwith, Fimber, Foston, Fulford, Gilling, Gilmanby, Grimston, Harton, Hornby, Hornsey, Kirkby, Myton, Normanby, Poppleton, Rudston, Shipton, Skelton and Spaunton.

NUMBER OF MONKS.—The number of religious at St. Mary's would vary from time to time. At the Dissolution there were the abbot and fifty monks. Besides these there would be many lay brethren and dependents of various kinds.

LIST OF ABBOTS.—A list of twenty-nine abbots is furnished in the *Monasticon*, from Stephen of Whitby (1088-1112) down to William Thornton or Dent, the last abbot, who surrendered the Abbey, November 26th, 1539, receiving an annual pension of 400 marks. The name of an additional abbot is supplied by Mr. Paley Baildon, in his *Monastic Notes*, Abbot John, who was at the head of affairs in 1413.\*

#### (6) HOLY TRINITY PRIORY.

##### ALIEN BENEDICTINES.

In the same year in which William Rufus laid the foundation of St. Mary's Abbey, another Benedictine house was founded in the city. The ancient House of Secular Canons had come to grief “at the rendition of the city,” and was now lying in ruins. By the year 1089 it had come into the hands of Ralph Pagnell,

\* Perhaps the most distinguished on this long list of abbots is William Sever, who ruled over the house from 1485 to 1502. He it was who rebuilt the abbatial residence, parts of which are still standing. During his abbacy a long and acrimonious controversy was carried on with the city magnates with reference to the rights and privileges of the Abbey. In 1495 he was appointed as the Bishop of Carlisle, but continued to hold the Abbey *in commendam*, but when, in 1502, he was translated from the See of Carlisle to that of Durham, he resigned his abbacy. Three years afterwards, May 14th, 1505, he died, and was buried in the choir of the Abbey Church, and in the recent excavations, perhaps the most important “find” has been the slab which covered his remains, and which is now preserved in the Museum. Round the margin of the slab is the inscription :

“.....m Seford sacre p.gine pfessor t quonda Abba  
hui. ....ii qui.....u aie ppic.”

“Willia[m] Seford sacræ paginæ professor et quondam  
Abbas huj[us] Monaster]ii qui .....cujus animœ  
propicietur.”

an important Norman Baron, along with many of its old possessions. As an act of thanksgiving to God, Ralph re-established the old religious house, handing it over, with many of its former belongings, to the important Abbey of Marmoutier, on the banks of the Loire, one and a half miles from Tours. No longer was it to be a House of Secular Canons, but a Benedictine Priory, under the jurisdiction of the great French Abbey.

**THE PRIORY CHURCH.**—A Norman church was soon after begun on the site of the church of the days before the Conquest. But in the fire of 1137, which, as we have seen, destroyed the Abbey of St. Mary's, the new Benedictine Church of Holy Trinity also came to grief—"Holy Trinity in the suburbs," as it is described in the account of the fire. After this disaster a Transitional building was erected, 1160-1190. It consisted of nave, choir and transepts, all having double aisles, and a great central tower, sometimes referred to as a Campanile. This church remained till the Dissolution, with very few alterations as far as the building is concerned, the only important one being the addition of the western tower, still standing.

**MONASTIC BUILDINGS.**—The domestic buildings of the Priory were of considerable extent, the close being bounded by its own wall, which stretched on the north side from the city walls to Trinity Lane, on the east from Micklegate to Bishophill, on the south from Trinity Lane to the city walls, and on the west running parallel to the city walls between its north and south boundaries. The arrangements of the domestic buildings cannot be ascertained, as they have entirely disappeared, and no record has been preserved. But they would doubtless follow on the usual lines of Benedictine houses, there being no geographical or other reason for any serious departure from the usual arrangement.

**REMAINS.**—There is not very much left of the Alien Priory. The nave of the church is still standing,

but shorn of its aisles except one bay on the north side. In the western bay, which stood as a ruin until 1902, was a portion of the west doorway, and on the south side of the present tower could be seen the triforium and clerestory of the westernmost bay. This triforium and clerestory went round the church, on the inside the triforium exhibiting three pointed arches, on the outside being a continuous arcading, having seven arches in each bay. This may be seen in the present tower, the seven arches having been copied on the south side in the recent restoration.

Portions of the west piers of the central tower of the Norman church are still to be seen near the chancel steps, giving a splendid example of the junction of the Norman and Early English styles. Otherwise, the central tower has disappeared absolutely. A recent excavation showed that the foundations of the north transept are *in situ*. The south choir wall has also been preserved, in some places to the height of a dozen courses, and may now be seen in the Rectory Garden. Until 1904 the east bay of the choir formed the skittle alley of the adjacent public-house, "Jacob's Well." It has recently been rescued from such a base use, and is now held on the same tenure as the remaining part of the old choir, which consisted of five bays; a small portion also of the foundation of the east wall being now visible above ground.

The last remaining portion of the domestic buildings, the porter's lodge, over the Priory Gateway, was wantonly destroyed in 1855, in order to make a new street. This was a beautiful example of an Early English gateway, with a fine stone groining and a considerable amount of ornamentation. After the Dissolution it passed into lay hands like the rest of the Priory precincts, and several tenements were erected within the gateway. Now not a trace remains of the old Priory, except the church and portions of the south and west boundary walls.

“ JACOB’S WELL.”—Abutting on the choir at the north-eastern angle was an old house which in 1472 was the residence of two chantry priests. It was no integral part of the Priory buildings, being outside the close, though it was the property of the Priory and the residence of two of its chantry priests. At the Dissolution it passed away from the Priory, but afterwards was purchased and became the residence of Isabel Warde, the last prioress of Clementhorpe, who died there in 1569. Later on it was converted into a public-house, and remained an inn until 1904, when it was purchased by the rector, and is now used as the Parish Room of Holy Trinity.

THE PRIORS.—The priors were elected by the Abbot of Marmoutier. A list of seven is given in the *Monasticon*, but this was considerably augmented by Mr. Baildon in the *Monastic Notes*, and the present rector has discovered the names of some others in the public records and elsewhere, the names of thirty-six being now known.

THE STATUS OF THE PRIORY.—From its foundation, in 1089, the Priory was under the jurisdiction of, and its head appointed by, the Abbot of Marmoutier. Considerable friction was caused by this French connection, especially in a time of war, and Holy Trinity was in danger of being suppressed in common with other alien houses. But through the astuteness of the Prior, the aliens at York were spared, though separated from the mother Abbey near Tours. In 1426 they asked that they might be naturalized, and their petition was granted, the house henceforth being practically an abbey, though retaining its old name, its priors being elected by the brethren. In this condition it remained down to the Dissolution.

ITS CELLS.—Though itself an alien priory, Holy Trinity exercised in one respect a sort of abbatial power, three other religious houses being under its jurisdiction. One of these was Allerton Mauleverer Priory, which was under the rule of Trinity, however,

for only about ten years. The Priory of St. Mary at Hedley, near Bramham, was a cell of Trinity, being founded by its monks, and remaining under their rule till its suppression in 1414. The third dependent was the Priory of Tickford. This house was a cell of Marmoutier down to the suppression in 1414; instead of sharing the fate of most alien houses, it was spared, but made a cell of Trinity, and remained so till the Dissolution. The Priory obtained possession of a number of churches from time to time. In York itself these churches were St. Helen's (Fishergate), St. Cuthbert's, St. Gregory's, St. Nicholas', All Saints' (North Street), St. James' Chapel, St. Helen's (Dring-houses). Many fine churches in Yorkshire were also in the possession of the Priory, among them being Leeds, Adel, Barton-le-Street, Hooton Pagnell, Moor Monkton, Bilbrough, Crambe, Newton-on-Ouse and Thurnscoe; and a number in Lincolnshire—West Rasen, Irnham, West Ashby, Burton Stather and Roxby. Besides its advowsons, the Priory owned much land and property in various parts of Yorkshire and Lincolnshire, several manors, two whole "vills," Coneysthorpe and Sturton Grange, and a number of rents and fees from other sources. In Pope Nicholas' taxation, 1292, the house was valued at £60 10s. 5d.; in an extent made in 1379 the income was sworn as £189 16s., and at the Dissolution it was valued at £196 17s. 2d. In judging of these amounts it is necessary to remember the relative value of money then and now.

ITS MONKS.—It is difficult to estimate the number of the brethren residing at Holy Trinity. They would naturally vary with the circumstances of the house. In 1379 there were one prior, three English monks, two deacons, four clerks, four chaplains, and at the same time there were five corrodists and seven other pensioners. At the Dissolution there were the prior and ten priests. The Priory was surrendered in 1538, by Richard Hudson, *alias* Speght, who received

an annual pension of £22. He continued to reside in the neighbourhood till his death in 1545, when by his will he was buried in the choir of his old church, “ behynde the lectron in the saide qwere.”

POST-DISSOLUTION HISTORY.—Though the domestic buildings have all disappeared, the Priory Church, through a peculiar circumstance, has been allowed to remain. The Parish Church of St. Nicholas used to stand in Micklegate in front of the Priory Church. St. Nicholas was an old Norman structure, and by the time of the Reformation was somewhat dilapidated. When, in 1547, it was decided to unite a number of York parishes, St. Nicholas and Holy Trinity were joined. But since one of them had to be sacrificed, it was decided to retain the better church. St. Nicholas, therefore, was demolished, and the Priory Church became the Parish Church. Through this circumstance it happens that of all the monastic churches existing in the city in mediæval days, the only one still used for divine service is the one in which the Alien Benedictines used to worship.

In 1551 the central tower collapsed in a storm. It evidently fell in the direction of the nave, for the choir was standing in 1569, when Isabel Warde died. In her will she requests to be buried in the choir, “ neare besyde my stawle.” The fall of the tower would cause the demolition of the triforium and clerestory, and then, too, would go the transepts. At what date the choir was destroyed there are no records to show, but it would probably be in the sixteenth century, and it must have been before 1639, as the old Rectory built in that year stands on the north choir wall. From that period down to modern times, four bays of the aisleless nave, without chancel, transepts, triforium and clerestory, were used as the Parish Church. In 1732, a flat underdrawn ceiling was erected ; in 1850, an execrable south aisle was added ; in 1886, a modern chancel was built on the site of the old central tower ; and in 1902-1905 a

general restoration took place, when the ruined west bay was rebuilt, the remaining portion of the west doorway being retained, and all the work undertaken on the old lines from existing evidence that was unmistakable. The west gallery, erected 1829, was removed ; the floor lowered to the old Norman level ; the bases of the massive piers restored, most of them having been sawn or broken away ; the flat under-drawing removed ; the triforium on the north side of the west bay repaired, and the corresponding one on the south side rebuilt ; the tower repaired and made secure ; the fourth bay of the north aisle rebuilt and the old Perpendicular door inserted in the actual doorway which had been removed.

**THE NORTH-WEST TOWER.**—The tower now existing at the west end is a great curiosity. It is really the tower belonging to another church, the Church of St. Nicholas, which stood in front. In the year 1453, the old St. Nicholas tower was evidently in a bad condition, and the four churchwardens sought and obtained permission to “build their steeple anew” on the north pinion wall of the Priory Church. They erected it, therefore, on the west bay of the north aisle, the consequence being that one portion of the clerestory and triforium has been preserved, clearly indicating what the church was like in its palmy days.

**ENCROACHMENTS.**—Not many churches have been so encroached upon as Holy Trinity. Around the tower was a wondrous assortment of buildings, a slaughter-house over the north lancet, a hay-loft over the west lancet, and five domestic outbuildings in the angles of the buttresses. These have all been purchased and removed, and now the old church, which is the successor of the monasterium burnt down in 741, of the Saxon basilica of Archbishop Albert, and also of the Norman church erected before 1137, is in an excellent state of preservation, a more worthy representative of its former self, though now even but a fragment.

## (7) ST. CLEMENT'S PRIORY.

BENEDICTINE NUNS.

In the account just given of the Priory of Alien Benedictines it was stated that at the Dissolution the last prioress of St. Clement's came to reside in the house abutting on the choir of Holy Trinity, at its north-east angle. The house which she surrendered was situate in a hamlet called Clementhorpe, about a quarter of a mile from the city.

The date of the foundation of this Nunnery is given by some as *circa* 1130, by others as 1145. Those who take the later date are the followers of Drake. But he evidently was guilty of a clerical error, for his statement in *Eboracum* is that it was founded "in the reign of King Henry I., in 1145." As Henry I. died in 1135, it is clear that 1145 is wrong. The charter of foundation was witnessed, among others, by Hugh, the Dean of York, who died in 1138, and those who give the date as "about 1130" are not far from the mark. The founder of the house was Archbishop Thurstan, who held the northern primacy from 1114 to 1140. He granted to God, St. Clement and the nuns of St. Clement, the place on which their house was erected, together with two carucates of land in the suburbs of York, and twenty shillings issuing from a fair in York. The Priory from its foundation was an independent house, under the jurisdiction of no abbey, but subject only to the Archbishop of York. In 1192 an attempt was made by the Archbishop of that time, Geoffrey Plantagenet, the natural son of Henry II. and Fair Rosamond, to lower the status of the house. Archbishop Geoffrey was naturally much interested in the Abbey of Godstow, near Oxford, and he attempted to make St. Clement's a cell of Godstow. Keenly did the prioress and convent resent this indignity, and Alicia, the prioress, went to Rome and made an appeal to the Pope. Though the Archbishop

disregarded the appeal, and excommunicated all the sisters, their cause eventually triumphed, and the independence of the Nunnery was maintained.

THE PRIORY CHURCH.—The ancient Parish Church of St. Clement was appropriated to the Nunnery, and doubtless was used as the Priory Church. If so, it would be in the same condition as many other monastic churches, one part of it being parochial, and the other monastic.

ITS PROPERTY.—The Priory was not a large one, but considerable property was conferred upon it by various benefactors, in York, Cawood, Grimston, Whitwell, Milford, Monkton, Preston-in-Craven, Otley, Sudewell, Saxton, Swinefleet, Thorpe-Malbis, Wilton and elsewhere. Several churches were given to the prioress and convent from time to time, among them being Thorp-super-Ouse (Bishopthorpe), St. Clement's (York), and Horton-in-Ribblesdale. From these various properties a considerable income was derived for the maintenance of the house, the value at the Dissolution being assessed at £57 7s. 9d. (Tanner says £68 11s. 8d.).

THE NUNS.—What was the number of sisters at the foundation of the Priory is not recorded, but probably the number at the Dissolution would be about the average—the prioress and nine nuns, nine servants and one corrodist. The names of sixteen prioresses are known.

THE DISSOLUTION.—In 1536 the Priory was surrendered. The Commissioners of Henry VIII. arrived at the Nunnery on June 13th, and on the 31st August the community was disbanded.

THE LAST Prioress.—Isabel Warde was the last prioress. Before she surrendered the house she had been in considerable difficulty. To meet the extra expenses connected with the commissioners' visit she had been compelled to sell a silver chalice and cup, together with some reliquaries. When turned out of her home she received a pension of ten marks per

annum. Where she went immediately is not known, but in 1549 she purchased one of the tenements adjoining the choir of Holy Trinity, and there she resided. In 1564, she bought the next tenement, and joined it to the other. These two houses she occupied till 1566, when she gave them to the feoffees of the parish for the benefit of the parochial poor. On June 20th, 1569, she made her last will and testament (see p. 150), and within a few days she must have passed away, for her will was proved on the seventh of the following month. She must have been considerably over seventy at the time of her death, as in 1505 she had been admitted as a member of the Guild of Corpus Christi.

PRIORY REMAINS.—Not a vestige of the old Nunnery now remains. In the eighteenth century some of the ruins were in existence, and down to the year 1903 a small portion of the close wall was standing, near the bottom of the street called Clementhorpe. But that last fragment was swept away, and the whole site is now occupied with dwelling-houses.

#### (8) ALL SAINTS, FISHERGATE.

##### BENEDICTINE CELL.

It has been seen that St. Mary's Abbey and Holy Trinity Priory had several smaller houses or cells dependent on them. So also had most of the larger monasteries. In Fishergate, York, there formerly stood such a small community, a cell of the Benedictine Abbey of Whitby, the cell of All Saints, Fishergate.

FOUNDATION.—In Norman times the Parish Church of All Saints was in existence, and in the reign of William II. (1089-1100) this church was given by the King to the Abbot and Convent of Whitby, on condition that the monks of that house should pray for himself and his heirs. It was to be held by them as a cell of their house, and a stipulation was made that some of the monks should always be resident at All Saints', for the regular performance of divine

service. They soon acquired a certain amount of property, which was confirmed to them by a charter of Henry II. (1154-1189), which charter ratified the original foundation of the cell, together with the privileges of *sac*, *soc*, *tol* and *tem*, and similar privileges to those then possessed by St. Peter and St. Cuthbert, in the City of York. Archbishop Thurstan had previously conferred upon the cell all such privileges and exemptions as were enjoyed by Beverley and Ripon Minsters. And, later on, 1216-1227, Pope Honorius confirmed to the little community all their property and immunities.

SITE.—The exact site of the church is not known, for not a fragment remains to tell of its former existence. But it was in Fishergate, and “without the city walls.” In the valuation of churches made during the reign of Henry V. it is described as Allhallows *near* Fishergate, and in the Act of 1547 it is called Allhallows *within* Fishergate. In all probability it stood on a portion of what is now the Cattle Market, across the road from Fishergate Bar, and a few yards further east.

THE CHURCH.—After the church was appropriated to Whitby, and became one of its cells, it would continue to be parochial as well as monastic. In 1531, a certain chaplain, Robert Weddersel, made his will, requesting to be buried in “the Church of All Saints, Fishergate, without the city walls.” After the Dissolution the church remained as a parish church, and by the Act of 1547 it was arranged that it should be joined to the Parish of St. Lawrence. This took effect in 1585, and between the two dates, or possibly shortly afterwards, the ancient fabric of All Saints would be demolished.

### CLERICAL ORDERS.

The clerical orders came into existence in the eighth century, and, as we have seen, they were represented in the days before the Conquest, in the northern capital,

at the Minster and at Christ's Church in Micklegate. In the twelfth century a stricter rule was enforced among the canons in some houses, and so there arose a distinction between canons secular and canons regular, the former being those who officiated in cathedrals and collegiate establishments, the latter those who lived in monasteries and observed monastic discipline.

(9) ST. ANDREW'S PRIORY.

GILBERTINE CANONS.

CANONS OF THE ORDER OF SEMPRINGHAM.

The Regular Orders were represented in York by the Gilbertine Canons, who had their habitation in the Priory of St. Andrew, Fishergate. This order was an English foundation, having been instituted in 1148 by St. Gilbert, who was the son of Josceline, the Rector of St. Andrew's Church, Sempringham, in the county and diocese of Lincoln. Consequently, they are sometimes called Gilbertine Canons, and sometimes Canons of the Order of Sempringham.

FOUNDATION.—The Gilbertines in York commenced their work at the very beginning of the thirteenth century, the founder of the Priory being Hugh Murdac, the Archdeacon of Cleveland, and not the Archbishop of York as is frequently stated. In the year 1202 Murdac gave to the canons, then "serving God at St. Andrew's in Fishergate," the church and the lands adjacent to it, together with certain lands and rents in other places. In addition to the lands and property conferred on them by the founder, the canons received a number of private gifts at various times for the endowment of their house. In the very year of their foundation the Dean and Chapter of York gave them the rent of two carucates of land in Cave, in exchange for a small portion of land they owned in front of the west door of the Minster. Afterwards they acquired property at York, Bustardthorp, Thoraldby, Kirkby-in-Cleveland, Dromundby, Stokesley, Buskby, Thorp, Goodmanham, Marston and Warthill. The

canons seem to have been less fortunate than many houses in acquiring the advowsons of churches. Only one is mentioned in the records which have come down to us, that of Kirkby Useburn. They only held it for a short time, abandoning their claim to it during the lifetime of the founder, in favour of Fountains Abbey.

They were also responsible for the celebration of daily Mass in the Chapel of St. Mary, Kirkby-in-Cleveland, for which they received, in 1311, two tofts, one mill, fifteen bovates, sixteen and a quarter acres of land, two acres of meadow, one acre of waste land, and £3 rent in Kirkby, Dromundby, Stokesley and Buskby. This was to provide for the maintenance of three chaplains to perform the service.

**THE CLOSE.**—The close of the Priory occupied the plot of land between Fishergate and the Foss on the east and west, and the Glass Works and Blue Bridge Lane on the north and south. The site is now called Stone Wall Close. In the year 1292 royal licence was given to the prior to enclose a lane adjoining the south wall of the close, and extending from Fishergate to “the water of Use.”

In the year 1332 protection was granted by the King to the prior for a year. The house had fallen on evil times, and three years later the prior and convent granted to Henry, the Bishop of Lincoln, the three plots of land within their close :—

- (1) Three acres to the east of the church,
- (2) Three acres to the west of the church, and
- (3) Two acres to the north of the church.

On these eight acres certain houses had been erected, probably part of the domestic buildings, which were given to the bishop, together with free ingress and egress. This grant was made to the bishop and his successors that they might have a place of residence “as often as they came to York for Parliaments and Councils or for any other cause.” The reason alleged for making the grant was that the bishop, “for the good of the Priory, which is in these days depressed

in many ways, has laid out great sums as well in building houses as in repairing other houses thereon, and that he intends to lay out still more in repairing the houses and cloisters of the Priory."

THE PRIORY CHURCH.—Before the establishment of the Gilbertine Order in York, the Parish Church of St. Andrew was in existence. In the foundation charter it was given by Archdeacon Murdac to the canons, and would doubtless afterwards have both parochial and monastic rights. It would almost seem as though the parochial rights predominated, for in the grant above referred to in connection with the Bishop of Lincoln, certain chapels are mentioned as being reserved for the use of the canons. Moreover, the church was given to the Priory of Newburgh in 1389 : "*ecclesiam sancti Andree in Eboraco que sedet in Fiskergata,*" and such a grant could not have been made of an absolutely *monastic* church. On the other hand, no mention is made of the church in the list of parochial churches standing in the reign of Henry V. The church stood about equidistant from Fishergate and the Foss, somewhat to the north of the centre of the close. The Priory was founded for twelve canons. Whether that number was always maintained does not appear, but at the Dissolution the numbers were very small, there being then only the prior and three monks. No table of heads of this house is furnished by the *Monasticon*; but Mr. Baildon has unearthed the names of the five marked \* in the following list :—

(1)	G——	<i>circa</i> 1202
*(2)	Bartholomew	occurs 1208
*(3)	Robert	„ 1210
*(4)	Baldwin	„ 1219
*(5)	William	„ 1230-1240
*(6)	Robert	„ 1262
(7)	Robert	„ 1377
(8)	John Hawkesworthe	„ 1481
(9)	William Beseet	„ 1506
(10)	William Tod	„ 1518

“G.” would seem to have been the first prior, as it was in the time of Hugh Murdac, the founder, that he quit-claimed the Church of Kirkby Useburn to the Abbot of Fountains. The seventh, Robert, was one of a party of men who were charged with trespass in 1377, doing great damage to the property of one John de Lokton, at Hoton-upon-Derwent and Bolton-by-Pokelyngton. The house was surrendered to the King on 28th November, 1538, “by the consent of the whole brotherhood,” the value of the Priory being estimated by Dugdale at £47 14s. 3½d., and by Speed at £57 5s. 9d. In 1546 the site was granted to John Bellew and John Broxholme, and the church and other buildings would soon be demolished, no mention of the former being made in the Act of 1547. Nothing now remains to mark the site, except a few fragments of the south close wall in Blue Bridge Lane.

## THE MILITARY ORDERS.

The military orders were instituted soon after the Conquest—the Knights Hospitallers about 1092, the Knights Templars in 1118, and the Order of St. Lazarus subsequently. Only the Templars had their representatives in the City of York.

### (10) THE KNIGHTS TEMPLARS.

POSSESSIONS.—The master and brethren of the Templars very early obtained possession of a mill at York, which was situate near the Castle; and in the year 1232, King Henry III. granted them, in frankalmoine, “a piece of land near the mill of the said brethren, without York, lying between the said mill and the water called Use, and running from the bar beneath the Castle to the street called Fiskergate.”

CHAPEL OF ST. GEORGE.—On this land near the Castle they subsequently erected a chapel, dedicated to St. George, in which their chaplain officiated. At the suppression of the order in 1309, which was completed in 1312, Thomas Norton was the chaplain,

"who celebrated divine service in the Chapel of the Templars at their mills by the King's Castle at York." His stipend was six marks per annum, payable at Martinmas and Whitsuntide; and on May 30th, 1312, a royal grant was made to him of an additional sum of two marks payable at the same feasts, the whole to be derived from the rents "appertaining to the chapel."

**KING'S FREE CHAPEL.**—These rents, together with the mills, were thenceforward the property of the Crown, the chapel being called "the King's Free Chapel." In 1314 the rents were in arrear, and the chapel services were abated in consequence. A collector was therefore appointed by the King, and the rents were to be regularly levied "for the sustenance of the chaplain, and not converted to any other uses."

**WARDENS.**—In 1327, Richer (Icherius) de Ledes was appointed chaplain "for life." In 1338 he was deceased, and was succeeded by Henry de Seuerby. Later on, John de Ketilwell was chaplain, and subsequently Robert de Couton, who in 1382 was succeeded by John de Kyngeslowe. In this year, 1382, the chapel was besieged by a crowd of about 120 persons, who broke the walls and doors, the chaplain being granted royal protection, which extended to his possessions : "the plot of land called 'Le Holme,' lying between the Castle and the Use." In 1396, Simon Gaunstede became warden of the King's Free Chapel, and in 1426 William Brounyng received the appointment for life.

Of the subsequent history of the Templars' Chapel nothing is known, and not a fragment now remains of it.

### THE MENDICANT ORDERS.

The Conventional or Mendicant Orders came into being in the early part of the thirteenth century. Soon they found their way into England, and naturally into the northern capital. Though they frequently

came into collision with the clergy, the universities and the other monastic orders, they obtained great influence in the country, and became popular in certain quarters. This is seen from the fact that sums of money were very commonly left to them by testamentary bequests, and by the fact that persons of rank frequently desired to be buried in their churches. The four principal orders of Mendicants had houses in York—the Grey Friars, the Black Friars, the White Friars and the Austin Friars. Two other Friaries also were established temporarily in the city,—the Crutched Friars and the Friars of the Sac.

## (II) FRANCISCAN PRIORY.

## GREY FRIARS. FRIARS MINORS.

Lawton, in his *Religious Houses*, states that the Franciscan Priory was said to have been founded in York during the reign of Henry II. This is evidently a clerical error, as St. Francis, the founder of the order, was not born till 1182. Their rule was drawn up in 1209, and the order found its way into this country in 1224.

FOUNDATION.—It was in the time of Henry III. that the Franciscans settled in York, as is stated by Tanner, but what part of that reign does not appear. It must have been before the year 1268, as during that year (52 Henry III.) they obtained the royal licence to enlarge their area by enclosing a ditch near the Castle.

ENLARGEMENTS.—In 1280 a further enlargement was made by enclosing a street, twenty-three and a half perches long by eighteen feet broad in one place and fifteen feet in another. This was followed by another alteration in 1290, when by royal licence they were allowed to “enclose a lane which is close to their wall, and which runs from the highway to the lane leading to the mills near York Castle, provided that they make another lane on their own ground of the same length and breadth close to the

said lane." In the following year, 1291, permission was given them to "complete a stone wall begun by them on the bank of the Use, and to hold it and the space so enclosed for the enlargement of their area." This wall proved prejudicial to the interests of the people dwelling on the opposite side of the river, in Skeldergate, and in 1305 permission was obtained by the citizens to erect a wall on the Skeldergate side of the river.

In 1314 a further licence was given the Friars to acquire the land from "their middle gate by the head of the chancel of their church" to the lane called "Hertergate," and from thence to the River Use, for the enlargement of their area.

In 1380 they obtained a grant that offal or filth should not be thrown by butchers or others into the river or the lanes near their House to their nuisance, but taken to some distant place.

SITE.—Drake, in his *Eboracum*, expressed doubts as to the site of the Franciscan Priory, not being certain on which bank of the river it stood, and suggesting that it might possibly be in the vicinity of Baile Hill. But the quotations from records that have come down to us clearly establish that it was near the Castle, near Hertergate, opposite Skeldergate, and not far from the Castle Mills. From all this it is evident that the Friary close was bounded on the west by the river, on the north by the street now called Friargate, on the east by Castlegate, and on the south by the city wall and Tower Street.

CHURCH.—The church had been erected before 1314, as it is mentioned in the licence of that year. Of its appearance and size we have no knowledge, but it possessed a chancel.

Many privileges were conferred on the house by the various monarchs, and it appears that it was sometimes used by the King and his Court when staying in York. In 1335, for instance, a mandate

was issued for the supply of timber for repairs, "a wall and a well" being specially mentioned, "in the garden of the Friars Minors by the door of the kitchen, for the King's refreshment when he shall stay there." The French historian, Froissart, refers to the house as being the place where the monarchs stayed when in York, the King and the Queen having separate apartments allotted to them for the holding of their train.

The Franciscans in England were divided into seven wardenships, one house in each district being placed over the others. The York house was the principal one in this part of the country, and had jurisdiction over the Franciscans at Beverley, Boston, Doncaster, Grimsby, Lincoln and Scarborough.

**DISSOLUTION.**—The York house was surrendered on November 27th, 1538, by the last prior, Dr. William Vavasour, fifteen friars and five novices, the deed being executed in the Chapter House, with the consent of the whole convent. In 1542 the site of the Priory was granted to Sir Leonard Beckwith, who also obtained those of Holy Trinity (York), Selby Abbey and Bylands Abbey. The house and church were speedily demolished, and now nothing remains except portions of the boundary wall near the river and in Tower Street.

#### (12) DOMINICAN PRIORY.

BLACK FRIARS.      FRIARS PREACHERS.

FRIARS OF THE TOFTES.

On the site now occupied by the old Railway Station there stood in Roman days a temple, dedicated to the god Serapis, part of the foundations of which were laid bare in the year 1770. Among other things found was a flat grit-stone, with the inscription (in Latin): "This temple, sacred to the god Serapis, was erected, *a solo*, by Claudius Heronymianus, legate of the sixth conquering legion." Many other evidences of Roman occupation have been discovered on the site at various times.

After the departure of the Romans, the place seems to have been covered with dwelling-houses, which in the days of the Conquest were laid waste, the land falling into the King's hands. The site was thence-forward known as the "Kinge's toftes" (see page 76).

FOUNDATION.—In the reign of Henry III. the place was still in the possession of the King, and on March 4th, 1228, a considerable portion of it, together with the King's Chapel of St. Mary Magdalene, was given to the Dominican Friars "abiding in York." The land granted is very definitely specified in the charter, in such terms, however, as cannot now be clearly understood. But it evidently was the portion bounded by the city walls on the west and north, and on the south by the great street adjoining; that is to say, it was that portion now owned by the Railway Company inside the walls and extending east as far as Barker Lane. This grant of land was made for the purpose of building, and the Black Friars would at once begin to erect their monastery, using the Chapel of St. Mary as the Priory Church.

Forty years later, September 3rd, 1268, the same monarch gave to the Friars another portion of the tofts near the walls for the enlargement of their site, on condition that they made a well for the public use instead of one they disturbed. This grant was confirmed by Edward I., on November 15th, 1280, who also, on February 18th, 1298, further increased the site by the gift of three tofts; on May 1st, 1300, giving them another piece of land towards "the water of Ouse" for the enlargement of their coast. In the reign of Richard II., the close walls of the Priory had been broken down, and on November 24th, 1382, the King gave the Friars permission to rebuild, confirming to them and their successors for ever their estate, which was further confirmed to them on June 21st, 1464, by Edward IV. By means of these various donations the Dominicans seem to have come into possession of nearly the whole site of land now

occupied by the old Station and the Railway Offices recently erected.

THE CHURCH.—No record has come down to us of the building of any new church. Probably the Friars would use the old Chapel of St. Mary Magdalene, perhaps enlarging it to meet their requirements. In the later part of their history their “church” is spoken of, though in all the royal charters reference is made to the “chapel.” The site of the church is defined in the will of William Sallay, who died in 1408, in which six houses are referred to as being “at the corner of Gregore Lane and North Street, *opposite to the Church of the Friars Preachers.*” From this it seems certain that the building stood on the ground now occupied by the Railway Company opposite the end of Barker (Gregory) Lane.

THE PRIORS.—No catalogue of heads is given in the *Monasticon*, but Mr. Baildon, in *Monastic Notes*, furnishes a list of seven :—

- (1) Aland, first prior.
- (2) Geoffrey de Worksop, 1301.
- (3) Thomas de Middleton, succeeded 1304.
- (4) Robert de Holme, 1330.
- (5) John Multon, 1455.
- (6) John Pickering, executed 1537.
- (7) Bryan Godson, *last prior*, 1538.

THE FRIARS.—The community does not seem to have been a large one. The names of several appear in the Register of the Corpus Christi Guild :—John Roos, admitted 1463-4; John Calvard, 1464-5; Will. Byrwod, 1467; John Rothom, 1468; Tho. Hudson, 1471; John Bower, 1472; Dom. Milo, 1520.

At the Dissolution there were the prior, six brethren and four novices.

TESTAMENTARY BURIALS.—Though the Dominicans did not acquire much property, apart from the site of the Priory, many small sums of money were left to them for their maintenance, as the wills in the York Registry testify. The church also seems to have been

frequently chosen as the last earthly resting place of many persons, among them being the following :—

Dame Katherine, Baroness de Greystock, *circa* 1410.

Beatrix Selby de Ebor (will), 23rd March, 1425-6.

Alderman Richard Shyrwood (will), 21st August, 1443.

Alderman William Holbeck (will), 9th May, 1477.

**THE DISSOLUTION.**—In 1537 the refractory prior, John Pickering, was executed, and Bryan Godson chosen as his successor. His work was soon over, for on November 27th, 1538, he surrendered the Priory into the King's hands, the deed being signed in the Chapter House. The domestic buildings and the church were soon demolished, no mention of St. Mary Magdalene being made in the Act of 1547. The site was granted in 1546 to William Blytheman. Later on it was converted into gardens, which were known as “Friars’ Gardens.” But in 1836 the land was purchased by the Railway Company, and the Station erected on the site. Not a vestige is left of the church or the domestic buildings, and nothing but fragmentary records to tell the story of the York Dominicans, unless it be the seal found in the Gardens in 1816, which is supposed to be the seal of one of the priors, the inscription being :—

LESEEL IEHAN LEGROS.

The original is now in the possession of Mrs. Burtt, Elton Villas, Darlington.

### (13) CARMELITE PRIORY.

#### WHITE FRIARS.

**FOUNDATION.**—The Carmelite Priory was founded in York by William de Vescy, in the year 1255. He gave them certain lands and houses which he possessed in the district south of Hungate and Stonebow Lane, and on that site they built their monastery. It appears, however, that prior to this they had had a temporary dwelling in Bootham, in the Horse Fair. This is clear from an entry in the Patent Rolls, which

records the transference in 1314 from "the Carmelite prior and friars" to the Dean of York, Robert de Pykeryng, of a plot of land in Bouthum-by-York, "upon which at one time they were accustomed to dwell." The following year, 1315, the Dean gave certain lands and houses in Knapton-by-Acomb for the maintenance of a chaplain, who should celebrate divine service in a Chapel of St. Mary which he purposed building on the site "where the Carmelite prior and friars of York formerly dwelt." This was probably the land at the south-west end of the street now called Union Terrace.

THE PRIORY SITE.—The permanent Priory was built on the site given by Lord Vescy, in the parish of St. Saviour-in-Marisco, which was considerably enlarged from time to time by various donors. Eventually the monastic close was bounded on the north by Stonebow Lane, on the east by Hungate, on the west by Fossgate, and on the south by the River Foss.

In 1295, William de Vescy gave another messuage in "Staynbogh"; in 1314 the King granted certain messuages and plats in the street called "Mersk," which he had received of the gift of Geoffrey de Sancto Quinto; in 1315 the same King gave the friars certain land adjoining this site, which Thomas le Aguiller, of York, had granted him; in 1316 he also conferred on them other land which he had received from Abel de Rikhale; in 1331, John de Hathelsay and William de Thouthorp each gave one messuage near the Friary; in 1338, Master William la Zouche gave them three acres and certain houses built thereon; Lord Percy, *circa* 1380, gave them a plot of land, twenty feet square; and in 1393 John Berden and John Braythwait gave them another plot, 100 feet square. All these lands were adjacent to that already possessed by the Carmelites, and were all conferred on them for the purpose of enlarging their site.

THE PRIORY QUAY.—The Priory close being bounded on the south by the Foss, the King gave them, in 1314,

“ by reason of the affection ” which he “ bears to the Carmelite prior and friars in the City of York,” licence to “ construct a quay in their own soil within their dwelling place upon the bank of the King’s stew of the ‘ Fosse ’—that they may have one boat to carry to their said dwelling place stone, brushwood and other necessaries, as well under the bridge of Fosse as elsewhere in the stew.”

THE CHURCH was dedicated to St. Mary. In 1304 a commission was given to consecrate the churchyard within the Parish of St. Saviour, and an indulgence was granted to all who should visit the church and make their offerings on the high altar of St. Mary on Tuesday, 5th October, 1304, for the sustentation of lights and ornaments.

DISPUTES.—There seem to have been certain conflicts between the Carmelites and the rector of St. Crux, about tithes and other offerings, the rector having suffered loss on account of the building of the Priory with its church. To settle the dispute it was arranged in 1320 that the prior should pay certain annual dues to the rector to recoup him for his losses. Later on another trouble arose between the rector and prior. At the gate of the Priory an oratory had been erected for the celebration of divine service, and this did injury to the neighbouring Church of St. Crux. In 1340 an arrangement was come to “ that there be thenceforth no service therein celebrated, no bell tolled, no bread or water hallowed, nor be administered by any clerk or lay person, that the religious receive no more oblations there, and that Our Lady’s image, then in the oratory set up, be absolutely removed.”

A painful event took place at the Priory towards the end of the fourteenth century, and on July 19th, 1386, the royal pardon was extended to “ Friar John Wy for the death of Friar John Harold, killed twelve years ago, in the conventional house of the Carmelite Friars in the City of York, and of any consequent outlawry.”

THE DISSOLUTION.—The Priory was surrendered on November 27th, 1538, by the last prior, Simon Clarkson, nine brothers and three novices. In 1544, the site was granted to Ambrose Beckwith. No remains are now standing except a portion of a wall behind the Pavement end of Fossgate, but what the wall is it is now difficult to say.

#### (14) AUGUSTINE PRIORY.

##### AUSTIN FRIARS.

FOUNDATION.—This house was founded some time before 1278, by Lord Scrope. Its site was that now occupied by the houses in Lendal between the Congregational Church and the Post Office, and the land behind them down to the Ouse.

PROPERTY.—In 1289 a messuage in York was given to the Friars by John de Cranewych; in 1344 another York messuage, by Robert Clarel, “for the enlargement of their dwelling”; in 1353 an annual rent of twenty shillings was given by Thomas de Thwenge, Clerk, coming from his lands and tenements in Rotsey; in 1356 a messuage adjoining their dwelling was given to them by William de Hakthorp, Clerk, and William de Hedon, Clerk, for the purpose of further enlarging their house. And in 1382 the Mayor and citizens granted them “a narrow plot by Aldconyngstrete (now Lendal), near their church, extending from a corner of their old wall to their old gate.” This plot they were empowered to “enclose and build upon, on condition that they repair the pavement there at their own expense, and without causing any hindrance to the course of the river.”

THE PRIORS.—The names only of four priors of this house are known:—

- (1) Robert, 1278-80 (Baildon).
- (2) John de Pickering, occurs 1369 (Baildon).
- (3) William de Staynton, occurs 1372 (Drake).
- (4) John Aske, occurs 1538, *last prior* (Drake).

THE FRIARS.—The community was only a small one, at the Dissolution there being nine friars and

four novices. Speed's estimate of the value of the house—£180—must be wrong, as that implies more possessions and a larger house than they could possibly have.

THE DISSOLUTION took place on November 28th, 1538, in the Chapter House, the surrender being made by the prior and brethren. In 1558 the site was granted to Thomas Rawson and his wife Christiana.

REMAINS.—A small portion of the old boundary wall may be seen from Lendal Bridge, but nothing else remains of the House of Austin Friars.

#### (15) HOUSE OF FRIARS OF THE HOLY CROSS. CROSSED FRIARS, CRUTCHED FRIARS, CROUCHED FRIARS, CRUCIFERE.

This order of Mendicant Friars, founded by Gerald at Bologna, in 1169, found their way into England in 1244. Their first house was at Colchester, six or seven others being founded subsequently. Of these, one was at York, but in what part of the city is not known, though Barker Hill and the neighbourhood of Monk Bar have been mentioned as the probable site. They began to settle in York *circa* 1310, but as they were not of the four principal orders of Mendicants, they received no encouragement from the Archbishop, and their residence in the northern capital seems to have been but of short duration. These Crutched Friars have frequently been confused with the Trinitarian Friars, the confusion arising from the red cross they wore affixed to their dress. The Trinitarians were, however, quite a distinct order, and were sometimes designated “Red Friars.”

#### (16) FRIARS OF THE SAC.

#### PENITENT FRIARS, FRIARS DE PÆNITENTIA, FRIARS OF THE PENANCE OF JESUS CHRIST, FRIARS OF THE PENANCE OF GOD, FRIARS DE SACCO.

These friars first came into England in 1257, settling near Aldersgate, in London. The following year they

had a house in Cambridge, and about the same time another house was established in Norwich. Then followed houses at Oxford, Newcastle-on-Tyne, Worcester, Lynn, Leicester, Lincoln and York.

The last-named house does not appear in the lists given by those who have written on English monasteries ; but that one did exist in York is certain from two recently published works, the *Calendar of Close Rolls* (5 Ed. II.) and the *Register of Archbishop Walter Giffard* (Sur. Soc., Vol. 109). In the Register an account is given of an examination of Ordination Candidates, on 20th September, 1274 ; and among those examined for the priesthood are "Frater Thom. de Harepam and Frater Hugo de Leycestria *de penitentia Christi Ebor.*" The entry in the *Close Rolls* records a grant of the site on which the friars' dwelling stood, being "an order to restore to Roger de Roston the plot of land whereon the Friars of the Penance used to dwell in York, which came to the King's hands upon the death of the said friars." The order did not make much headway in England, and in 1307 it was suppressed. Some of the priories were incorporated with the larger Houses of Mendicants, but others were abolished altogether, the sites being granted to private individuals. Among this latter class was the house at York. Nothing whatever is known of the situation of the Priory. Every trace of it has perished, and its very existence would have been lost but for the documents just brought to light at the Public Records Office and in York.

### COLLEGIATE ESTABLISHMENTS.

Collegiate establishments consisted of a number of secular canons, priests, or minor canons, who lived together under rule. The heads of such collegiate bodies were styled either dean, master, warden, or provost, and under the canons were chaplains, songmen and choristers. A collegiate church was similar to

a cathedral, but lacked the bishop's throne. In York there were three of these colleges, all connected with the Minster—Bedern College, St. Sepulchre's College, and St. William's College.

### (17) BEDERN COLLEGE.

#### MINOR CANONS. VICARS CHORAL.

**FOUNDATION.**—The Bedern College was founded before the year 1252, by William de Lanum, formerly a canon of the Cathedral, for thirty-six vicars choral, whose duties would be to sing the service and be responsible for the occasional offices at the Minster. The vicars were under the charge of the sub-chanter, who was styled warden, keeper, custos, or master. The constitution of the college was settled by Archbishop Walter Gray, about the year 1252, though the incorporation of the establishment did not take place till about the year 1422.

**SITE.**—The college buildings were near the Minster, across Goodramgate, in the place still called the Bedern. It is sometimes described as being within the Cathedral close, but that could not well be, as the public street separates the Bedern from the Minster precincts.

**CHAPEL.**—Being a house of vicars choral connected with the Minster, the college was usually called St. Peter's College, though the chapel was dedicated to the Holy Trinity. The original number of vicars has now been reduced to five, including the sub-chanter.

**THE REVENUES.**—The establishment possessed large revenues for the maintenance of the vicars, being assessed in 1535 at £236 19s. 4d., in 1536 at £192 9s. 3d., and in 1546 at £255 7s. 8d. At the suppression of these establishments the emoluments of the vicars were left to them, and in the early part of the nineteenth century their estates were commuted.

**REMAINS.**—The site of the college was granted in 1548 to Thomas Golding and Walter Cely, but the chapel was still retained by the minor canons. It still remains, in a much dilapidated condition, capable

however of an excellent restoration. A portion also of one of the college buildings, probably the refectory, still exists, and is now used as a carpenter's shop. The old gateway also stands at the entrance to the Bedern, though the door is wanting.

### (18) ST. SEPULCHRE'S COLLEGE.

#### ST. MARY AND THE HOLY ANGELS' CHAPEL. COLLEGE OF PREBENDARIES.

**FOUNDATION.**—Some time before the year 1161, Archbishop Roger du Pont l'Eveque founded this college, and built the church “in honour of the Blessed Mary the Mother of God and of the Holy Angels.” The church or chapel, therefore, was known in its earliest days as “*St. Mary and the Holy Angels.*”

**SITE.**—The church stood between the door of the Archbishop's Palace and the north aisle of the nave of the Minster, into which it opened by means of a door, which still remains.

**THE COMMUNITY.**—Archbishop Roger founded the church for twelve canons and a sacrist, master or warden. There were to be four priests, four deacons and four sub-deacons. About a century later, in 1258, Archbishop Sewall added to the original twelve on the foundation two priests, each of whom was to have his deacon and sub-deacon. These six went under the name of “*Conducts.*”

**THE ENDOWMENT.**—Archbishop Roger endowed the college with eleven churches, five of which were his own, the rest being obtained from “the faithful of his diocese.” Among these churches were Harewood, Hooton Pagnell, Thorparch, Collingham, Bardsey, Otley and Calverley. In 1535, the value of the college estates was £171 19s. 2½d.

**UNPOPULARITY.**—The college being instituted for “the celebration of the divine services to the eternal honour of God” and “the glory of” Archbishop Roger's “successors,” the chapel and its services were of an elaborate character, and the Minster canons

gave no cordial welcome to the new prebendaries of the chapel. The new foundation was too near the Cathedral, and "gave offence to the canons." The Archbishop appeased the irate canons, however, by exonerating them from, and transferring to the sacrist of the chapel, the duty of providing what was necessary for some of the rites and usages connected with Maundy Thursday.

"*ST. SEPULCHRE.*"—The chapel was known not only by its original dedication, but also as "*St. Sepulchre's*," or the "*Chapel of the Holy Sepulchre*." Several theories have been offered in explanation of this ascription. (1) It has been thought that in the chapel was erected a sepulchre during the time required in Holy Week. (2) Others have traced the name to the fact that many of the Archbishops were interred in the chapel, the remains of some being removed to it from other parts of the Minster during alterations. (3) It has been also suggested that the name originated with the appointment of the six "*conducts*" by Archbishop Sewall, whose duties were to celebrate in the chapel daily for the dead. The sacrist was not elected by the prebendaries, but appointed by the Archbishop. During a voidance of the See the appointment was in the King's hands, and in the Public Records many such appointments are referred to.

**ARCHBISHOP'S VISITATION.**—Archbishop Lee ordered the sacrist and canons to appear before him in 1534, but many refused to obey the summons. He then ordered his official to renew his command, telling them that if they did not appear he would "still proceed in the matter." The college submitted, and the Archbishop issued certain injunctions. It was found that the canons (1) shortened the service, (2) came late, (3) left early, (4) did their duty by proxy, and yet (5) claimed their commons.

The Archbishop ordered that to earn their penny for each attendance at Mattins, Mass and Vespers they were (1) to be present at the beginning; (2) not

leave before the end, except for good cause ; and (3) if for any reason they left, they were to return.

To make matters quite clear, they were informed that (1) Mattins began at the Venite Exultemus, (2) Mass at the Gloria in Excelsis, and (3) Vespers at the 1st Psalm ; and that canons not then present, or leaving before the end, should "lose their penny."

The Archbishop complained of other irregularities : the canons slurred over and omitted words, and talked. They were ordered to celebrate devoutly, "so as to be understood by the bystanders, on pain of losing their penny."

**REMAINS.**—There are now no portions standing above ground of the ancient chapel, though the foundations are still in existence to show what the general plan of the building was. But the doorway which led into the north aisle of the nave of the Minster remains, built up on the outside, but with the old door showing in the interior. This doorway, as seen from the nave, is one of great beauty. In a niche above the doorway is a decapitated figure of the Virgin, and on either side are two mutilated figures of angels ; on the west side also are the arms of France, and on the east side those of England. Altogether, the decoration forms a very interesting piece of local history, indicating the fact that the Chapel of "St. Mary" and the "Holy Angels" was erected during the time when England and France were under the same monarch. There are other reminders of the chapel. In the buttress near the doorway is a staircase, with its built-up entrance showing on the west side of the buttress, and with another doorway higher up on the north face of the buttress, this being probably the entrance to a triforium passage in the chapel. In the north aisle of the Minster nave, too, near the St. Mary's door, stands a tomb which is said to be that of Archbishop Roger, the founder of the chapel. This, however, is doubtful, as the present nave wall was built more than a century after the death of the prelate.

## (19) ST. WILLIAM'S COLLEGE (see p. 66).

## CHANTRY PRIESTS.

FOUNDATION.—In the year 1453, Henry VI. granted to the Earl of Northumberland, the Archbishop of York, the Dean, Precentor and other members of the Cathedral, letters patent for building a college in the Cathedral Close for the chantry priests connected with the Minster. But that scheme failing, the intention was carried out seven years later by George Neville, then Bishop of Exeter, and shortly afterwards Archbishop of York. On May 11th, 1461 (not 1460, as is commonly stated), the King's licence was granted "for George, Bishop of Exeter, and Richard Nevill, Earl of Warwick, to found a college, to be called the College of St. William, York, for the chantry priests of the Cathedral of York, one of whom is to be Provost of the same"; and for the Dean and Chapter of the Cathedral to grant lands and tenements in the city to the Provost and Fellows of the College, and for the acquisition in mortmain by the latter of lands to the value of £100 yearly, with other ordinances and privileges.

THE BUILDING.—The erection of the college began forthwith. Whether a new building was erected is not quite clear. Probably the work consisted of the restoration of an old structure which had been the house of the Prior of Hexham, with considerable additions. At all events, on January 25th, 1465, Edward IV. made a "grant to Christopher Borough, the Provost, and the brethren of the College of St. William, York, of all those stones called 'freestone' lying in the Quarry of Hodlestone, by the bank of the River Ouse, for the better building of the college." The college was erected on a plot of ground lying to the east of the Minster. The buildings formed a quadrangle, which was entered through a good fifteenth century perpendicular archway, on each side being figures of St. Christopher and St. Mary

the Virgin, and in the niche above a figure of St. William. Across the quadrangle was another porch of later date, which formed the principal entrance to the building, the upper floor being reached by a splendid oak staircase, over eight feet wide. At the foundation of the college the community consisted of twenty-three priests, who served chantries in the Cathedral. But the number changed with the progress of time, and later on there were as many as thirty-six priests. In accordance with the foundation deed, they had to have their "lodgings and commons together," and to be under the charge of one of their number, who was styled Provost, and whose nomination was to be in the hands of Archbishop Neville and his brother Richard for ever.

**VALUE.**—In the year 1536 the brethren were found to have lands and tenements of the yearly value of £22 12s. 8d., besides the income derived by the individual priests from their chantries. At the suppression of the chantries, this college shared the common fate, the site being granted in 1550 to Michael Stanhope and John Belloe. In 1642 the Royal Printing Press was set up in the college by order of Charles I., and in it were printed many of the political pamphlets of that period. Later on it was let out in tenements to numerous poor families, in which condition it remained till two years ago. It has now been purchased, and is in course of alteration for the use of the Northern Convocation, and so, after centuries of vicissitude, will in the future be used for church purposes again. The two archways, the old oak staircase, the cobbled quadrangle, and a number of mutilated sculptured figures remain.

### HOSPITALS.

The original purpose of these houses was for the entertainment of travellers, and, as a rule, they were built in the principal thoroughfares. Later on, many were founded to help the sick and infirm, and

particularly those who were suffering from leprosy. They varied in size, some vying in their powers of accommodation with the largest abbeys, others being only able to admit two or three pilgrims at a time. They observed, as a rule, the discipline of St. Augustine, each house being under a head, who was styled master, warden, or custos.

#### (20) ST. LEONARD'S HOSPITAL.

FOUNDATION.—This house was really founded in pre-Conquest times, under the name of St. Peter's Hospital (*q.v.*, No. 4), but after the Conquest it was re-modelled by William I., William II., Henry I. and Stephen, the last named building "in the High Street adjoining the Hospital a church in honour of St. Leonard." Whilst, therefore, St. Leonard's is the lineal descendant of St. Peter's Hospital, the re-foundation, with the building of the church, under its new name of St. Leonard, is to be ascribed to the reign of Stephen.

THE PATRON.—The hospital being of royal foundation was in the gift of the King, and the bulk of its property was acquired from the various monarchs. Attempts at various times were made by others to appropriate the house, and several times it was temporarily wrested from the King's hands.

THE MASTER.—The head of the hospital was termed master or warden, and under normal circumstances was appointed by royal grant. A long list of masters is given in Baildon's *Monastic Notes*, though many names of heads have come to light since that book was written in 1895. The custody of the house was granted for life, and the masters were not removable "without just cause."

POSSESSIONS.—The enumeration even of the various properties which came into the hands of this house is impossible in a work of this kind. Churches, tenements, lands and manors in great number were conferred on the brethren from time to time in the

northern counties. But as with St. Peter's Hospital, so with St. Leonard's, the principal source of this revenue was the "thrawe (twenty sheaves) of corn for every plough in the counties of York, Lancaster, Westmoreland and Cumberland."

**SITE OF HOSPITAL.**—The present ruins of the Hospital are apt to mislead people as to the dimensions of the house and its close. But a cursory glance at the ruins shows that the buildings extended across Museum Street. Where the exact boundary walls of the close were it is difficult to tell, but an entry in the *Patent Rolls* (27 Edward I.) throws a little light on the matter, since it tells us that the master and brethren obtained licence "to stop a lane leading from Blayke Strete, near the hospital wall, to the street going to the gate of Bouthum, and to enclose it with a wall for the enlargement of their court."

**THE INMATES.**—The establishment seems to have been by far the largest in York. At one time there were :—

1 master,	30 choristers,
13 brethren,	2 schoolmasters,
4 secular priests,	6 servitors, and
8 sisters,	206 beadmen.

The numbers would, of course, change from time to time, and we read frequently of corrodists and royal dependents connected with the house.

**FOOD.**—The inmates certainly were well attended to as regards their bodily needs. This is shown in connection with the appointment of one of the King's dependents, who was to "receive such meat and drink as a chaplain of the hospital received." And to make matters clear the amount was specified : "A loaf of white bread, a gallon of ale of the better quality ; flesh and fish for dinner and supper, also a loaf of the second quality, and a gallon of ale of the second quality."

**DISCIPLINE.**—The brethren and sisters lived strictly under rule. Silence was observed in the cloister,

refectory and dormitory. The lay-brothers were not to go beyond the nave door except in processions, and neither they nor the sisters were to leave the bounds of the church without definite permission.

THE STATUS OF THE HOUSE.—Though the hospital was essentially a religious establishment, it was entirely free from episcopal control, and was not subject to the visitation of any ecclesiastic. The master was appointed by the King by grant in frankalmoin, and the house had the absolute privileges of a free chapel, a new master not even being presented to or instituted by the ordinary.

The Dean and Chapter naturally regarded with jealousy the independence of the hospital. The brethren were originally an off-shoot of the Minster, and in the early days of their history the Chapter collected the thraves of corn, and administered the revenue, for the benefit of the hospital inmates. Frequently they attempted to recover authority over the hospital, and in the reign of John they succeeded, forcibly removing the master named John, and appointing their own. They continued to appoint. About 1280 the King recovered the advowson of the hospital against the Minster authorities, and things reverted to the *status quo ante*.

Besides being an establishment for “religious,” St. Leonard’s did duty as an almshouse, a grammar school, and a hospital in the modern sense of the term. In its foundation it was essentially an almshouse, the ancient Culdees devoting their energies to relieving the poor, and as late as 1401 it was referred to in the *Patent Rolls* by that name, Robert de Shone being then appointed as porter to “the King’s almshouse of St. Leonard.” That it was a place of education is shown by two schoolmasters being kept in the hospital, and in 1341 the Dean and Chapter and their commissary were ordered by Edward III. “not to intermeddle with the grammar schools in the Hospital of St. Leonard.” That the house tended the sick is

clear from many references in the records concerning the establishment, and an interesting fact is recorded that opposite the hospital gate there formerly existed a street called *Footless Lane*, where diseased people were kept by the master for fear of infection, until they were sufficiently recovered to mingle with the others.

The collection of Peter's Corn (the thraves) frequently led to disturbance, and many scenes of distress are recorded in connection with the matter. Often, too, the hospital was at loggerheads with the Archbishop and the Dean and Chapter ; and in 1339 there was sad internal strife, which occasioned a royal enquiry to be made into the condition of affairs. The inquisition led to an agreement which was confirmed by the King.

In the quarrel just referred to the brethren accused the master of misappropriation of funds. A similar charge had been made in 1308 against the master, Walter de Langton, and in 1341 a royal commission was appointed to consider a charge of "decay and misrule." In 1383 another commission was held "to enquire touching the diminution of the number of chapels, brethren and sisters, and many defects in the buildings, books, vestments, ornaments and goods, through the waste and carelessness of the warden and ministers." No wonder that in 1390 the hospital was declared to be "greatly dilapidated, impoverished and in debt."

**DISSOLUTION.**—What the annual value of the hospital estate was in its palmy days no one knows, but at the Dissolution it was estimated at £500 11s. 1½d., and this would not, of course, include the "thraves of corn." The Dissolution took place on December 1st, 1539, when the master, Thomas Magnus, with the consent of the whole brotherhood, surrendered into the King's hands. In 1544 the site was granted to Sir Arthur D'Arcy, and in 1564 to Lord Dudley. Subsequently the Archbishop's Mint was erected on

a part of the site ; in the seventeenth century the property came into the hands of Viscount Halifax, and he, in 1675, sold it to the Corporation for £800, in whose possession it still is.

**REMAINS.**—Some interesting fragments remain of the old Hospital of St. Peter under the Theatre Royal *in situ*, and one column with its base and capital has been removed to St. Leonard's. Of St. Leonard's Hospital some very interesting portions remain : the covered entrance passage, an ambulatory, a chapel and a part of the cloisters. The ambulatory is a good example of Transitional work, and possesses a groined roof, supported by six octagonal pillars. Between this and the multangular tower are the bases of four pillars which may have been the site of the cloisters. Above the ambulatory would be the infirmary, and adjacent to it would be the infirmary chapel, which still remains. To the south-east of the ambulatory is the old entrance to the house from the Ouse. The chapel, which now stands as a ruin, could not have been the hospital church. That must have been a large and fine structure, as the number of chaplains, brethren, lay brethren, beadmen, choristers, sisters and servants would indicate. The site of it is not known, but it was in “the high street adjoining the hospital,” and in it beside the high altar were at least two others, St. John the Baptist and St. Edmund.

#### (21) ST. NICHOLAS' HOSPITAL.

(LAZAR HOUSE.)

No records have come to us to tell us when this house was originally founded, or who was the founder. It is sometimes said to have been begun “*tempore* Maude the Empress,” and she has been referred to as the founder. But the statements are not correct. It was in existence during her lifetime, and she was a benefactress of it, but how long it had then been in existence we do not know. An enquiry was held in 1275 concerning this early benefaction, when it

was found that "Matilda, the good Queen of England," gave to the master and brethren one carucate of land and one and a half acres of meadow in the suburbs of York. This benefaction was confirmed by King Stephen, and they held the land many years, till it was seized by the Sheriffs of York, who had it for more than twenty years.

SITE OF HOSPITAL.—The hospital stood outside Walmgate Bar, on the south side of Hull Road. It was a considerable distance without the Bar, just beyond Milton Street, but on the other side of the road. The hospital was a lazaret house, or a hospital for lepers. In the Charter of the Empress Matilda, a distinct stipulation was made that the brethren for ever should find victuals for all lepers, who should come to the hospital on the eve of the Feast of SS. Peter and Paul, *i.e.*, on June 28th. That the hospital was a lazaret house is also borne out by many references, notably one dated 1285, when an inquisition was held by the then Mayor, John Sampson, and Thomas de Normanvill, concerning "the affairs of the hospital of lepers of St. Nicholas, York."

THE MASTERS.—The house being "of royal foundation," the masters were normally appointed by the King, sometimes "during pleasure," but generally "for life." A list of fifteen of them is given in *Monastic Notes*, to which the following six may be added :—

1305	William de Wellop.
1319	Robert de Grymston.
1384	Adam de Akum.
1388	John de Akum.
1389	Thomas de Popelton.
<i>ante</i> 1399	William de Neweton.

THE RELIGIOUS.—The establishment was for both brothers and sisters. How many there were we do not know. The number would not be great, as the income was but small. At the Dissolution there were only six sisters.

FOOD.—If the inmates fared as well as the lepers who came to the house on the 28th June, they did very well, for Queen Maude stipulated that they should receive “bread, ale, a mulvel with butter and salmon when in season, and cheese.” Early in its history this house seems to have suffered from mismanagement. In 1292 it was “found to be in a state of decay, by reason of the inept and inordinate conversation and administration of the masters and keepers, and by the admission of brethren and sisters against the statutes and rule.” In that year articles were drawn up by the Archdeacon of York for the management of the house, which were ordered to be read annually before the brethren and sisters in their church, on the Eve of St. Nicholas the Confessor. But in spite of this ordinance there are many subsequent records of misrule.

THE CHURCH.—The church stood in front of the hospital, by the side of the Hull Road. It was a parochial church, the village of Grimstone being a part of the parish. It was mentioned in the list of parish churches standing in the reign of Henry V., and was then stated to be of the annual value of £5. Because of its parochial rights, the church was allowed to remain after the Dissolution, and in 1547 and 1585 St. Edward’s was joined to it. It stood until the year 1644, when it was utterly ruined in the siege of York. It must have been one of the finest in York, if the whole building was of the same character as that which remains.

THE DISSOLUTION.—The house would be dissolved along with the smaller monasteries, and it would appear as though it were then joined to Holy Trinity Priory, as in the revenues of that house at its dissolution, one of the items is : “Ebor Civitas—Hospitale St. Nichi £26 10s. 6d.” The value of St. Nicholas’ at the suppression is entered as £29 1s. 4d.

REMAINS.—Nothing is left of this house of lepers, but after the destruction of the church, in 1644, two

beautiful porches were removed to the churches of St. Margaret and St. Lawrence, where they may still be seen, being two of the finest archæological treasures of the city. The three bells were saved through the intervention of Lord Fairfax, and they are now preserved in the ruined steeple of St. John's, Micklegate. A few stones of the church are also preserved in the barbican of Walmgate Bar, and the remains of a monumental slab.

## (22) ST. THOMAS' HOSPITAL.

FOUNDATION.—The origin of this hospital is somewhat obscure. When it first came into existence, and who was its founder, are equally unknown. Originally it was established as a guild or brotherhood in honour of St. Thomas the Martyr, before the year 1391, and subsequently was converted into a hospital.

CORPUS CHRISTI GUILD.—In course of time the hospital became the local habitation of the Corpus Christi Guild. This fraternity was established generally in the year 1264, by Pope Urban IV., and it would probably not be very long after that the York branch was formed. In the Guild Register, published by the Surtees Society, the fraternity is said to have been "founded" and "begun" in 1408. But there is something mysterious about the statement. For there is not the slightest doubt that the Guild existed in York during the fourteenth century, and there is internal evidence in the Register itself to indicate an earlier "foundation" and "inception" than 1408. For not only does the Register contain the names of those admitted in 1408, but also the obituary of members for that year; and it is very strange that of the nine who died in that year the admissions of eight are not recorded. They must have been admitted earlier. It has been stated that the first home of the Guild was at Trinity Hospital, Fossgate, from which place they migrated to St. Thomas' Hospital. Possibly this change took place in 1408, and that the Register

is simply that of the Guild when it had come to its permanent headquarters.

**CONVERSION INTO HOSPITAL.**—The Guild was converted into a hospital in 1372, when fourteen messuages, seven shops and £1 12s. rent in the city and suburbs were given to it. But whether this refers to the Fossgate Hospital or to St. Thomas' is doubtful. When the date of the Guild's migration to St. Thomas' is known, then this will be made clear. But it would seem to refer to St. Thomas', for shortly afterwards, in 1397, we read of "the poor infirm of the hospital of St. Thomas the Martyr extra barram de Mickly Bar, in the suburbs of York."

**GUILD REGISTER.**—The Register of the Guild, with names of masters, keepers and members from 1408 to 1546, still exists, and has been published by the Surtees Society. Drake's statement that the Guild was instituted on November 6th, 37 Henry VI. (1458), is obviously wrong, that being the date of incorporation.

**PURPOSE OF HOSPITAL.**—Originally a house for "religious," then the headquarters of the Guild, it also undertook the work of ministering to the poor. Ten poor people lived in the hospital, each having £3 6s. 8d. per annum. There were also provided eight beds for strangers, and one poor woman to look after the beds received 13s. 4d. a year.

**FRATERNITY.**—The fraternity consisted of a master and six priests, who were called keepers. They were removable annually within the octave of the feast of Corpus Christi. The Guild was responsible for the organisation of the Corpus Christi play, which was performed every year, for which each trade of the city had to furnish a pageant, based upon some Biblical scene. The play was a most popular annual event, and drew a vast concourse of people into the city. It was continued down to the year 1584.

**SUPPRESSION.**—At the general suppression of Guilds of this kind St. Thomas' Hospital was spared, and in 1549 it was ordered that the Lord Mayor for the

time being should be the master of the hospital, the poor people and beds for strangers to be maintained as before. The value of the property, in 1598, belonging to the old Guild, was £33 6s. 2d.

REMAINS.—The hospital buildings were allowed to remain after the suppression. They were standing, though in a somewhat dilapidated state, till the beginning of the eighteenth century. Above the chapel window, on the outside, was an image of the Virgin and the Holy Child, and in the window stained glass representing the canonized Archbishop, to whom the hospital was dedicated. In 1742, “my Lord Mayor” was desired “to remove what painted glass he shall think curious and valuable out of St. Thomas’ Hospital, and putt it up in the windows of the Guildhall or the Council Chamber.” But, alas! it cannot now be traced. In 1787 the hospital was considerably reduced in size, and the chapel completely destroyed. And in 1862 the whole of the remaining portion was taken down, and a new brick hospital of St. Thomas erected, further down Nunnery Lane, for twelve poor widows.

### (23) ST. ANTHONY'S HOSPITAL, PEASEHOLME.

A considerable amount of confusion exists with regard to the foundation of this hospital, for several reasons. (1) Leland’s statement (1538) is erroneous that the founder was Sir John Langton, “mair of York.” (2) Drake unwarrantably says that it was founded 200 years before Leland’s time. (3) It is frequently confounded with St. Anthony’s Hospital, Gillygate. (4) Difficulties of recognition have sometimes arisen owing to its double dedication to St. Anthony and St. Martin the Confessor.

FOUNDATION.—The guild existed certainly in 1435, for in that year John Ase bequeathed to it “one metebord, two tressles and one table cloth.” In 1438, John Sherwood, a York citizen, left to it 3s. 4d., and in 1444 a draper called Thomas Lyverton gave

to it in his will a similar sum. About the beginning of the century a number of the better class of citizens banded themselves together and formed the guild or fraternity. For some years they existed without any legal status, but in 1446 six of them obtained from Henry VI. a charter of incorporation, and that is generally regarded as the year of the foundation of the guild.

**THE FOUNDERS.**—The six men who procured the charter were :—

- (1) William Balle, master in 1450.
- (2) Thomas Crathorn, Freeman 1422; Chamberlain 1439; Sheriff later on; Lord Mayor 1445; Master of the Merchants' Company 1447; M.P. for York 1447.
- (3) John Kelyngham.
- (4) Thomas Cotys, Freeman 1440; a lawyer.
- (5) Richard Thornton, a fuller of cloth; Chamberlain 1441; Sheriff 1447; died 1474; buried in St. Lawrence's Church.
- (6) John Ase.

**THE CHARTER.**—The charter provided that the guild was to be dedicated :—(1) To God. (2) To Blessed Mary. (3) To St. Martin the Confessor.

It also ordered an annual election of a master and two keepers, and permitted the members of the guild to accept a piece of land on which a chapel and guild buildings were to be erected. This land was offered by Sir John Langton, Kt. It was situated in Peaseholme, at the junction of the Green and Aldwark.

**NAME OF GUILD.**—Before the incorporation the fraternity was known as St. Anthony's Guild. But in the charter it was named the Guild of the Blessed Mary and St. Martin, which was therefore its legal name. But the old dedication was the popular one, and ordinarily was used in connection with the hospital. Besides the master and keepers there were brethren and sisters non-resident, together with a resident chaplain and seven poor men. The chaplain was to

perform divine service daily, and the poor bedesmen to offer constant prayer for the well-being of the King and Queen before and after death.

THE CHAPEL, dedicated to the Blessed Virgin and St. Martin, was consecrated in 1453. It stood on the east side of Aldwark, its entrance being from that street. On each side of the doorway was a niche, a statue of St. Mary being on one side, and on the other one of St. Martin.

The buildings were finished about 1453. Beside the chapel there were the domestic buildings and the great hall, which was larger than the Guildhall, being eighty-one feet long, fifty-eight feet broad and forty feet high. The lower part of the building was of stone, the upper of half timber work, which in the seventeenth century was replaced by brick. The open roof was very bold, with many rich carvings of grotesque figures and angels.

TRIENNIAL FEAST.—Every third year the master and keepers gave a sumptuous feast to the members of the Guild and the members of the Corporation with their wives. At the general suppression of chantries, in 1545, St. Anthony's was spared, with its old constitution of master, keepers, inmates and triennial feast. The buildings were granted to the Corporation, who had also the control of the Guild and its officers.

DISSOLUTION.—In 1627 the Guild was dissolved, the then master and keepers delivering up their crosses, or symbols of office, to Mr. Elias Micklethwaite, the Lord Mayor. Previous to this, in 1551, it was proposed to turn the buildings into a sort of almshouse or school. In 1569 it became a small factory for wool spinning, carding and webbing, and in 1577 two mills for corn grinding were provided. In 1640 it became a magazine for arms ; in 1644 it was used as a hospital ; in 1655 it was converted into a prison ; in 1705 that portion of it which was not used as a prison was appropriated by the Corporation for the purposes of the Blue Coat

Boys' School, and since 1805 the whole of the buildings have been used for that object.

REMAINS.—A considerable portion of the hospital remains, the lower part being of stone, the upper part of brick, which has replaced the mediæval timber and plaster work. The lower portion is sufficiently unaltered to show the general design of the old building with its windows, doorways, mouldings and buttresses all of the fifteenth century style. The built-up arch of the chapel doorway is also visible from Aldwark, the mutilated figures of St. Mary and St. Martin being *in situ*. The great hall still remains, with its bold roof, its corbels and carvings and other ornamentation. The aisles are cut off and are used for private rooms.

#### (24) TRINITY HOSPITAL, FOSSGATE.

FOUNDATION.—On February 12th, 1371 (not 1382 as is frequently stated : the year was 45 Edward III.), this hospital was founded by John de Roucliffe. The founder's intention was to endow it with such property as would bring in a sufficient revenue to maintain one warden or master, thirteen poor and infirm people, and two poor clerical schoolmasters.

MERCHANT ADVENTURERS.—Roucliffe not providing a sufficient endowment, the hospital was not in so flourishing a condition as its founder hoped, and in November, 1445, it was arranged that the Incorporated Company of Merchants should take possession of its properties. They endowed the hospital for a priest, who should receive as his stipend ten marks per annum, and it was arranged that each of the thirteen poor and infirm people who lived in the hospital should receive fourpence a week.

THE DEDICATION.—The hospital was built, in accordance with the founder's wish, to the honour of the "Holy Jesus and the Blessed Virgin," but when the chapel was erected, at the beginning of the fifteenth century, it would probably be dedicated to the Holy Trinity. The licence was granted by the Archbishop,

on August 7th, 1411. Rarely is the establishment referred to under the name of the original dedication, but generally as Trinity Hospital, and in more recent times as the Merchants' Hall.

The hospital was erected in Fossgate, near the bridge, and on the west side of the street. The chapel stood to the south of the buildings, on the ground floor. There was a chantry of St. John the Baptist in the hospital, Dom John Jakson being the cantarist in 1501. Possibly this explains the fact that Stevens says the hospital was built in honour of "St. John and Our Lady."

**DISSOLUTION.**—At the suppression of the chantries, Trinity Hospital was one of the victims. In 1535 it had been valued at £6 13s. 4d. per annum. Fifteen years later it was suppressed, the endowment going to the Crown. But the Merchants' Guild retained the buildings and the chapel. Till recently ten poor men and women lived there in the rooms beneath the large hall, each of them receiving 8s. 6½d. per month. The rooms were lately found to be unfit for residence, and the pensioners receive an increased allowance and live elsewhere.

**REMAINS.**—The great hall still exists, surrounded by paintings of the Merchants of York and other leading citizens. Below are the rooms formerly inhabited by the poor pensioners, and at the south end is the chapel in which divine service is held and a sermon preached once a year.

#### (25) FISHERGATE HOSPITAL.

Nothing seems to be known of this hospital, except that it is mentioned as standing in the year 1399, being referred to in the *Patent Rolls*, 1 Henry IV. It was built near to the Church of St. Helen, Fishergate, the supposed site of this church being in the neighbourhood of Winterscale Street.

#### (26) HOLY PRIESTS' HOSPITAL.

This hospital stood on a plot of ground between Peaseholme and Haver Lane, to the south-east of the

destroyed Church of All Saints, Peaseholme. Nothing is known of its foundation or subsequent history.

#### (27) LAYERTHORPE GATE HOSPITAL.

This is sometimes called Bigod's Hospital, because it was near their mansion, and of their foundation. Leland, who visited York in 1538, refers to it : "There was a place of the Bigotes hard withyn Laithorp Gate, and by it a Hospital of the Bigotes fundation."

Wellbeloved states that the hospital stood within the Postern, near the mansion of the Bigods, and that the site of the house was clearly indicated by the stone wall opposite to St. Anthony's Hospital and St. Cuthbert's Church. The same family that founded the hospital was also responsible for its demolition, for, as Leyland tells us, "Syr Francis Bigot let both the hospital and his house al to ruine."

Nothing of the hospital is left standing.

#### (28) MONKGATE HOSPITAL.

Lawton, following Tanner and the *Monasticon*, calls this Marygate Hospital, evidently misled by a clerical error in copying a will. In the copy the street is called Markgate, and this has been interpreted as referring to Marygate. It probably was Monkgate in the original. The hospital was founded by Robert Holme or Howme before the year 1406, for in the will of Thomas, his brother, which was proved in that year, occurs the bequest : "*pauperibus in Hospitali nuper Roberti Howme fratris mei in Markgate in sububrio Ebor, x s.*" This is probably the same house as that mentioned by Skaife as a Maison Dieu, which, he says, was founded in 1392 by Robert Holme, and stood in Monkgate, near the bridge.

#### (29) MICKLEGATE HOSPITAL.

FOUNDATION.—Sir Richard de Yorke was the founder of this house. In the reign of Henry VII. he entered

York by "brenning of Fisscher Gate," and the "communes of Yorkshir . . . would have behedid" him.

SITE.—In Micklegate, but what particular part is unknown. Leland described it as being "hard without the very side of Michelgate," and probably he meant the Bar. Whether the hospital was ever used is not certain, but it was never completed.

### (30) ST. ANTHONY'S HOSPITAL, GILLYGATE.

Nothing seems to be known of this hospital beyond the statement of Drake that "at the end of Gillygate, next the Horse Fair, stood once a small religious house, called the Spital of St. Anthony in Gillygate." Others following him have stated that it was "at the east end of Gillygate." No other fact is recorded of this house, and Drake gives no reference to the source of his information. He is particular, however, in his reference to the site of the hospital, and, though considerable confusion has arisen between this hospital and the more important one of the same dedication in Peaseholme, there is no reason to doubt the accuracy of Drake's statement as to the existence of the house in Gillygate.

### (31) ST. GILES' HOSPITAL.

FOUNDATION.—An early date must be assigned to this hospital. At what precise period it was founded is not known, but it was in existence in the year 1274.

MARKET AND FAIR.—In that year, 1274, the master and brethren obtained licence from Edward I. to hold a "market and fair at their manor of Newton-on-Ouse." Nothing more is known about this house than that it was in York.

### (32) ST. HELEN'S HOSPITAL.

Of the foundation of this hospital nothing is known. It stood without Fishergate Bar, and its name would imply that it was not far from St. Helen's

Church in Fishergate. Possibly it is the same as the one called Fishergate Hospital (No. 25), as that was said to stand near St. Helen's. The Hospital of St. Helen was a lazaret house, or a house for lepers.

(33) ST. MARY'S HOSPITAL THE GREATER,  
BOOTHAM.

(ST. MARY THE VIRGIN.)

**FOUNDATION.**—The Dean of York, Master Robert de Pikeryng, obtained the King's licence on September 20th, 1314, to acquire from the Carmelite prior and brethren the plot of land in Bootham, in which they formerly dwelt before their migration to Hungate. The Dean assigned the land so acquired to a chaplain to celebrate divine service daily for the souls of the King and the Dean, and the souls of their ancestors and heirs. At first possibly the disused Carmelite buildings would be utilised for this purpose, but in the following year the Dean was purposing the erection of a new "Chapel of St. Mary at Bouthum-by-York, where the Carmelite prior and friars of York formerly dwelt."

**CHANTRY.**—In the first place the chapel was intended as a chantry for one chaplain. Later the scope was widened and six priests were assigned to the chapel. Licence for the land on which the chapel was built was given by the King on condition that 200 Masses were to be said, the Dean stipulating that Mass was to be said daily. On January 28th, 1315, the Dean endowed the chantry with property at Knapton-by-Acomb—three messuages, three bovates, thirty-six acres of land and four acres of meadow. Subsequently the chantry was changed into a hospital for a master and brethren.

**SITE.**—In the *Monasticon* it is also called "Bootham Hospital in the Horsfair," and Drake refers to it as the "Hospital of Our Lady, Horse Fair." What particular part of the Horse Fair it stood upon is not

certain, but the supposed site is that now occupied by houses at the south-west corner of Union Terrace.

In 1453, William Eure, the son of Sir William Eure, of Old Malton, and grandson of Lord Fitzhugh, was instituted "Master of the Hospital of the Blessed Virgin in Bootham." In 1460 he was collated to the precentorship of the Cathedral. Frequently this hospital is confused with St. Mary's Hospital the Less, also in Bootham. This latter was dedicated to the Magdalene, whilst the Greater Hospital was dedicated to the Blessed Virgin.

**VALUE.**—The hospital was valued in 1535 at £37 per annum. At the general suppression of chantries, St. Mary's was included. After the Dissolution, the hospital was converted by Philip and Mary into the Free Grammar School of the Dean and Chapter of York, and at the present time the property forms part of the endowment of St. Peter's School.

#### (34) ST. MARY'S HOSPITAL THE LESS, BOOTHAM.

(ST. MARY MAGDALENE.)

**FOUNDATION.**—The Lesser Hospital of St. Mary, Bootham, was founded, *ante* 1481, by John Gysburgh, the precentor of York Minster, who died in that year.

The house was founded for two chaplains, and was more in the nature of a chantry chapel than a hospital.

**VALUE.**—In 1535 the house was stated to be worth £9 6s. 8d.

It stood on the south side of Burton Lane, where the street joins Bootham. Burton Lane was formerly called Chapel Lane, after the Magdalene Chapel.

#### (35) ST. KATHARINE'S HOSPITAL, THE MOUNT.

(LAZAR HOUSE.)

There were three small hospitals in York bearing this dedication, and confusion has naturally arisen at times as to which of the three was meant.

**FOUNDATION.**—The date of the foundation of the house on the Mount is unknown. It existed early, however, for it is mentioned in the Public Records as standing in the year 1333 (*Pat. Rolls*, 7 Ed. III.).

**HOUSE OF LEPERS.**—That the Mount Hospital was a lazarus house is certain from the fact that in 1333 “protection for two years, with clause *rogamus*,” was granted “for the leprous men of the Hospital of St. Katherine, by the Church of St. James, York, collecting alms.” What was the constitution of the establishment is not known. It would appear that there were some sisters, for in 1496 “Isab. de domo St. Katerinæ” was admitted a member of the Corpus Christi Guild.

**SITE.**—The hospital stood on the west side of the road, on the land now occupied by the houses No. 24-27, The Mount, and the gardens behind. The site adjoined that on which the houses in Mount Parade now stand. In the year 1334 the hospital is described as being in Dringhouses : “Protection for one year for leprous men of the Hospital of St. Katherine, Drynghous, seeking alms for the support of their house.” The hospital was allowed to stand after the suppression of the chantries, but in 1652, being in a bad state of repair, it was taken down and rebuilt. This later erection remained until very recently in a dilapidated condition, but kept up for the maintenance of several poor widows. It was removed in the year 1835 to Holgate Road, near Mount Terrace, where a plain brick structure now stands with rooms for four poor widows, who each receive a pension of £15 annually. Nothing remains of the old lazarus house.

### (36) ST. KATHARINE'S HOSPITAL, FISHERGATE.

Of the foundation, the site, or the history of this house nothing is known. It is mentioned by Skaife, but where he obtained his knowledge, or in what part of Fishergate it stood, is not stated.

(37) ST. KATHARINE'S HOSPITAL,  
BY ST. NICHOLAS.

The site of this hospital is uncertain. There were two churches dedicated to St. Nicholas, one in Micklegate, the other in Hull Road. Consequently the hospital has been described as :—

(1) In Micklegate. (2) Without Walmgate Bar.

(38) ST. JOHN THE BAPTIST'S HOSPITAL.

This hospital is said to have stood in Aldwark, not far from the Church of St. Helen-on-the-Walls, but nothing of it seems to be known. Skaife places it immediately in front of the Merchant Taylors' Hall.

(39) ST. LOY'S HOSPITAL.

The Hospital of St. Loy stood at Monk Bridge end, according to Drake, and probably at its east end. Skaife has so placed it in his mediæval plan of York, and others have held the same view about its site. The only fact known about it is that it was a house for lepers, though Drake makes the general statement that it was "a house for the entertainment of poor strangers or pilgrims."

(40) HOSPITAL OF ST. JOHN AND OUR LADY.

Drake locates this hospital in Fossgate, and others have stated that it was on Foss Bridge. Stevens, in his continuation of the *Monasticon*, says that the Trinity Hospital in Fossgate was built "in honour of St. John and Our Lady." There certainly was a chantry of St. John the Baptist in the Trinity Hospital. It should be remembered, too, that the Trinity Hospital was originally founded to the honour of "the Holy Jesus and the *Blessed Virgin*." This dedication is referred to in an entry of the *Patent Rolls* (1 Hy. IV., pt. iv., m. 6), where it is recorded that "the remainder" of a certain property fell to "the master or warden and the brethren and sisters of the

guild or fraternity of St. Mary in Fossegate." For these reasons it is most likely that the Hospital of St. John and Our Lady, and that of the Trinity in Fossgate, were identical, St. John being the altar of a chantry, and St. Mary being a part of the original dedication.

### MAISONS DIEU.

Besides the hospitals already mentioned, there were a number of smaller foundations in York differing very little from the less important hospitals, called Maisons Dieu. They were very similar to chantry chapels, but as a rule had accommodation for several poor people. They were hospitals and chantries combined, but both on a small scale.

#### (41) OUSE BRIDGE MAISON DIEU.

**SITE.**—There was a Maison Dieu standing at the west end of the old Ouse Bridge. When it was founded is not known, nor by whom, but it is mentioned as early as the year 1332.

**CHANTRIES.**—There were at least two chantries in this small house. One was founded at the altar of St. Mary, for the soul of John de Ergum and Juliana his wife ; and the other at the altar of St. Giles, for the soul of Roger de la Marr.

The names of two ladies connected with the house are mentioned as becoming members of the Corpus Christi Guild in 1440 and 1474 respectively : "Johanna Norton in le Maisendieu super pontem," and "Alicia Rose in le Masyndew super pontem Usæ."

#### (42) NORTH STREET MAISON DIEU.

**FOUNDATION.**—The founder of this house was William de Salley, who was Sheriff of York in 1397-8. He was a member of the Corpus Christi Guild, but there is no record of his admission. His name is the first on the Guild's Obituary. He founded the Maison Dieu in 1401, and died in 1408.

SITE.—His will indicates the approximate site of the Maison. He left to his wife the tenement in North Street, in St. John's Parish, with its front in the "royal street" (Micklegate), and six houses in the lane there "juxta le Meson Dieu," "on the south side of the lane." This would seem to indicate the site as being behind the shop now occupied by Hazell and Miles, opposite St. John's Church.

(43) NORTH STREET MAISON DIEU.

A second Maison Dieu was erected in North Street.

DATE.—1396.

FOUNDER OR PATRON.—John de Acastre.

(44) WHITE FRIARS' LANE MAISON DIEU.

FOUNDATION.—This house was founded by John Holme, in the year 1472, and is referred to by Dodsworth as standing in 1481.

SITE.—White Friars' Lane, in which the house was situated, was near Stonebow Lane.

(45) LITTLE ST. ANDREWGATE MAISON DIEU.

DATE.—1385.

FOUNDER.—Thomas de Duffeld.

SITE.—Exact site not known.

(46) LITTLE ST. ANDREWGATE MAISON DIEU.

DATE.—1485.

FOUNDER OR PATRON.—John Bedford.

SITE.—Exact site not known. This may be the same house as the preceding.

(47) LAYERTHORPE BRIDGE MAISON DIEU.

DATE.—1407.

FOUNDER.—John de Craven, Sheriff of York.

SITE.—Near to Layerthorpe Bridge.

(48) PETER LANE MAISON DIEU.

DATE.—1390.

FOUNDER.—John de Darnyngton.

## (49) HERTERGATE MAISON DIEU.

DATE.—1390.

FOUNDER.—Thomas Holme. He was probably brother to Robert Holme, the founder of the Monkgate Hospital (see No. 28).

SITE.—The house is described as standing in Hertergate and Castle Hill. The former street is now called Friargate, and the Maison Dieu would probably be near the east end of Friargate, not far from St. Mary's Church.

## (50) JOHN MARTON MAISON DIEU.

DATE.—1436.

FOUNDER.—John Marton. Perhaps the John Marton who was one of the keepers of the Corpus Christi Guild in 1440-1441.

SITE.—“Near Fishergate and the Foss.” It would be in the vicinity of Fishergate Postern.

## (51) CASTLEGATE MAISON DIEU.

DATE.—1481.

FOUNDER.—The Earl of Northumberland.

SITE.—In Castlegate, but the exact locality is not known.

## (52) ST. ANDREWGATE MAISON DIEU.

DATE.—1397.

FOUNDER.—Richard Platter.

SITE.—In St. Andrewgate.

## (53) FISHERGATE MAISON DIEU.

DATE.—1442.

FOUNDERS.—The Guild of St. Christopher.

SITE.—In Fishergate.

## (54) FELTER LANE MAISON DIEU.

This house is referred to in a will dated 1558, but who was the founder is not stated.

## (55) LITTLE SHAMBLES MAISON DIEU.

A Maison Dieu was standing in the Little Shambles in the year 1470. Nothing is known of its history beyond that.

## (56) LE STONEBOW LANE MAISON DIEU.

DATE.—Mentioned in a will in 1362.

SITE.—In Stonebow Lane. Skaife locates the site on the north side of the lane, and about midway from either end.

## (57) WALMGATE MAISON DIEU.

This house is called the Maison Dieu of the Shoemakers, but of its foundation and its history nothing is known. It stood near Walmgate Bar.

## FREE AND CHANTRY CHAPELS.

During mediæval times a great number of chantries were founded. In the first centuries after the Conquest the charitable instincts of the rich expressed themselves in the building of monasteries, hospitals and other religious houses. But during the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries there was a diminution in the erection of monastic institutions, and numerous chantries were founded in existing monasteries or parish churches. Sometimes separate buildings were erected for these chantry purposes, as the one built and dedicated to St. Mary the Virgin at Bootham (see No. 33), by the Dean of York. This was afterwards converted into a hospital. But there were a number of such chapels which remained independent chantry chapels to the end.

Besides these there were several "Free Chapels." They were so called because they were free from the jurisdiction of the bishop or other visitor. Generally, free chapels were built on manors anciently belonging to the Crown, and erected for the use of the King and his retinue when resident there. Frequently

these manors passed out of royal hands, with the chapels, which in such cases usually remained “free.” In some special cases, under royal grants, free chapels were allowed to be built on manors which were not in the King’s hands.

### (58) ST. GEORGE’S FREE CHAPEL.

**FOUNDATION.**—This chapel originally belonged to the Templars. It was built shortly after 1232, on a piece of land given to the Knights by Henry III., and was dedicated to St. George.

**CONVERSION.**—When the order of Knights Templars was suppressed, 1309-1312, the chapel came to the Crown, and was thenceforward known as the King’s Free Chapel, or St. George’s-in-the-Fields.

**SITE.**—The chapel was situated in St. George’s Fields, to the south of the road between Castle Mills Bridge and Skeldergate Bridge, and about opposite the Public Baths. The chaplain of St. George’s was frequently styled warden. The names of some of them are given in No. 10.

**SUPPRESSION.**—At the suppression of chantries, in 1545, St. George’s went with the rest, but the chapel was not destroyed immediately. In 1630 a manufactory stood upon its foundations. Now every trace of it seems to have been swept away, though a stone cross belonging to the chapel is preserved in the Museum.

### (59) TOWER FREE CHAPEL.

About the middle of the thirteenth century another free chapel of the King was founded in the Tower of his Castle at York. In the 30th Henry III. (1246) the first chaplain was appointed, his annual stipend being £2 10s. The chalice and vestment belonging to the chapel cost £2 16s. There seems to have been some rebuilding or alteration, for in 1312 Edward II. gave orders to “cover with lead the chapel *newly constructed* within the Tower of the Castle.”

## (60) ST. ANNE'S CHAPEL, FOSS BRIDGE.

**DATE.**—This chapel, which stood partly on Foss Bridge, was built a few years after the erection of the bridge, in 1403. It was in existence in 1418, for in that year William Muston died, having bequeathed twenty shillings “to the fabric novæ capellæ super pontem Fossæ, Ebor.” On November 14th, 1424, the chapel was licensed for the celebration of divine service, and was dedicated to St. Anne or St. Agnes.

**SITE.**—The chapel stood on the east side of the bridge and the north bank of the river.

**CHANTRIES.**—There were three chantries in this chapel :—(1) Founded by Robert Howme, Senior. He was a citizen and a merchant. The annual value was £6 13s. 3d. (2) Founded by Alain Hammerton, the annual value being £5 5s. If this founder were the same as Alan de Hammerton, City Chamberlain in 1405 and died 1406, it would show that the chapel was built about the same time that the bridge was rebuilt. (3) Nicolas Blackburn, on January 6th, 1424, founded another chantry, endowing it with goods and plate of the value of £2 19s. 8d., with an annual rent of £4 16s. 4d., and an obit, value 6s. 8d. The chantry was founded for a priest to sing for his soul between 11 a.m. and 12 noon. This time was afterwards altered to 4 a.m. to 5 a.m., to suit the convenience of parishioners and travellers.

## (61) ST. ANNE'S, HORSE FAIR.

No records are extant to give information of this chantry chapel. It has been stated to be in Gillygate, in the Horse Fair, but in what particular part is unknown.

## (62) BISHOP'S CHAPEL, CLEMENTHORPE.

This was a chapel erected to commemorate the death of Archbishop Scrope. The execution of the Archbishop took place on June 8th, 1405, and the date of the chapel was subsequent, therefore, to that

year. The site of the chapel was in the very field, possibly on the exact spot, where the beheadal took place. The field is described by Gent as being near Bishopthorpe; by Drake as being between Bishopthorpe and York; by Browne, quoting from Clement Maydstone, the son of a contemporary of the Archbishop, as "in a field by Clementhorpe, near York." The various descriptions are not opposed, Browne being simply more precise than the others. The exact site would be on the west side of Bishopthorpe Road, probably on the land now occupied by the houses numbered 75 to 81. There are no remains of the chapel, but the land on which the houses stand in Bishopthorpe Road and Nun Mill Street behind, was until recently called the "Chapel Field."

### (63) ST. CHRISTOPHER'S CHAPEL.

This chapel was erected by the Guild of St. Christopher for the use of the fraternity. The Guild was founded on March 12th, 1396, by Robert Dalhey and other citizens of York. Afterwards, 1446, the Guild of St. George was united to it, and the fraternity was afterwards known as the Guild of St. Christopher and St. George. In the previous year, 24th November, 1445, the Mayor and citizens united with the Guild, and decided to erect, at their joint expense, the present Guildhall on the site of the old hall that had belonged to the Guild.

The date of the erection of the chapel was shortly after the year 1396.

**SITE.**—The chapel, a stone building, stood on the site of the present Mansion House, in front of the old hall that was the common hall of the brotherhood.

**SUPPRESSION.**—The Guilds were suppressed in the year 1545, being of the annual value of £16 15s. 8d., and on August 4th, 1549, Edward VI. granted to the Mayor and citizens the Guilds and all their possessions except the bells, the lead and the advowsons of churches belonging to the Guild.

The chapel was afterwards converted into a dwelling-house, which later on became an inn with the sign of the cross keys. This was removed in 1726, and the present Mansion House was erected.

#### (64) ST. CHRISTOPHER'S CHAPEL.

Drake and others mention the existence of another chapel dedicated to St. Christopher, but on what authority they do not state, and the only thing said of it is that the site is unknown.

#### (65) ST. KATHARINE'S CHAPEL.

Drake and those who follow him are solely responsible for this chapel being on the list of York Chantry Chapels. They state that it was in Haver Lane, and it must, therefore, have been in the vicinity of the Holy Priests' Hospital (see No. 26). Possibly it was the chapel belonging to that establishment.

#### (66) CHAPEL OF ST. MARY-AT-THE-GATE.

**SITE.**—This chapel stood on the Abbey Walls, adjoining the principal gateway of St. Mary's Abbey, and for this reason it is called the chapel of St. Mary-at-the-Gate.

**DATE.**—The date of its erection, and for what special purpose it was designed, are not known. But it was standing in the year 1395, for on April 4th of that year Pope Boniface IX. granted a "relaxation of five years of fine quadragene of enjoined penance to penitents who on the feasts of the Blessed Virgin visit and give alms for the conservation of her chapel by the gate, on the wall of the Monastery of St. Mary's, York."

#### (67) ST. WILLIAM'S CHAPEL (CHANTRY CHAPEL AND FREE CHAPEL).

**SITE.**—This chapel stood on the north side of the Micklegate end of Ouse Bridge—the greater part of it on the bridge.

FOUNDATION.—Two different accounts are given of the origin of the chapel. One of them ascribes its foundation to the twelfth century, the other to the thirteenth century :—

(1) In 1153, William, the Archbishop of York, came to the city. A joyous crowd met him, so great that as they passed over the old Ouse Bridge it gave way, and many people fell into the river. Through the Archbishop's prayers none of them were drowned, and to commemorate the event the chapel was built in honour of the Archbishop.

(2) The other account states that the chapel was erected in 1268, that Masses might be offered and prayers said for the souls of a number of people who perished in a fray on the bridge, between John Comyn, a Scotch nobleman, and the citizens of York.

The latter account is the more likely for several reasons :—

(1) The architecture indicated the thirteenth and not the twelfth century. (2) The chapel could not have been built before 1235, for that is the year in which Archbishop Walter Gray granted a brief for obtaining charitable contributions for the rebuilding of Ouse Bridge. (3) The Archbishop was not canonized till the year 1277. (4) Archbishop William's memory was greatly venerated, and he would be "Saint" William by popular acclamation in the middle of the thirteenth century. What more natural than for the citizens to carry out the two objects at one and the same time, by building a chapel for the repose of the souls of those who perished in the battle on the bridge, and to commemorate the miracle of 1153, by dedicating it to Archbishop William, who in the next decade was canonized?

CHANTRIES.—It was in essence a chantry chapel. At the high altar would be the Masses for the souls of those slain in 1268, and for St. William; and in addition four other chantries at least were founded from time to time :—

(1) Towler Chantry, founded by Richard Towler and Isabel his wife. (2) Wistoo Chantry, founded by Helewis de Wistoo, the widow of Robert de Wistoo, and valued in 1545 at £4 13s. 4d. (3) Marr Chantry, founded by the executors of the will of Sir Roger de Marr, who was a priest at the altar St. Eligii, in the Chapel of St. William, and valued in 1545 at £1 16s. 5d. (4) Fourbour Chantry, founded by John Fourbour, at the altar St. Eligii.

FREE CHAPEL.—St. William's was not only a chantry chapel, but was also called the “King's Free Chapel upon Ouse Bridge.” This is evident from a description of Henry Cukeson, the master of the Guild of Corpus Christi in 1525, who is also called the “chaplain of the Perpetual Chantry at the altar of St. William in the Free Chapel of our Lord the King, upon the Bridge of Ouse.”

SUPPRESSION.—St. William's shared the same fate as the other chantries in 1545. Its properties were confiscated, and the building was subsequently used for many purposes. In 1555, one Robert Morres, chaplain, was permitted the use of the chapel “for his skole to teach children in.” The building afterwards was used as an exchange for business men, and later on it served the threefold purpose of a record office, a kidcote or prison for felons, and a council chamber. The old bridge having become covered with houses and shops was considered dangerous, and at the beginning of the nineteenth century was taken down and rebuilt, the Chapel of St. William being removed in 1810. Every trace of the chapel is gone, but there are excellent engravings, notably that by Cave, about 1810.

#### (68) ST. JAMES' CHAPEL.

FOUNDATION.—The chapel of St. James was one of the first to have been erected in York. It was founded by one Roger the Priest, who was priest of St. Gregory, about the beginning of the reign of

Stephen (1135-1154). It certainly was in existence in the year 1179, when it was confirmed as belonging to the Priory of Holy Trinity, Micklegate.

**PURPOSE.**—It was founded at the “stone cross outside the west gate of the city,” and was given to the Trinity monks on condition that they caused divine service to be performed there “without intermission.” It was evidently of the nature of a small cell of the priory, rather than a chantry chapel, though it is generally spoken of under the latter denomination.

**SITE.**—The site of the chapel was that now forming the front gardens of Beech House and Daresbury House, the Mount end of the road leading to South Bank, and the garden on the other side.

The chapel was the first in York which anyone entering the city from the south would come to. And being opposite the “stone cross,” where pilgrims would make their devotions, it became famous as being the chapel from which the Archbishops started, when on their way to the Minster to be enthroned. He would probably pray at the stone cross, the religious ceremony would begin in the chapel, and then the Archbishop walked barefoot to the Cathedral, the carpet which had been previously laid being afterwards given to the poor of the city.

**GALLOWS.**—King Stephen granted to this chapel the land on which the thieves’ gallows stood, *extra portam civitatis*. This was probably the site of Tyburn on Knavesmire. A gruesome story connected therewith is related of the year 1280. A man called Elenstring was hanged there for the crime of larceny, and his body was brought to St. James’ Chapel for burial. On arrival he was found to be alive, and then was pardoned!

**SUPPRESSION.**—There is no mention of this chapel, either in the Survey of Chantries or in the dissolution of the monasteries. Probably the chapel was regarded as an integral part of the Priory of Holy Trinity, and its emoluments would go with those of the monastery.

AFTER HISTORY.—The chapel was standing in 1585, was in the hands of Robert Blackaller in 1612, but in ruins in 1651 ; and in 1736 the last portion of the foundations was removed. Not a trace of it now remains, but the stones forming the yard wall of No. 37, The Mount, formerly belonged to the chapel. One small stone, which had been part of an arch, is preserved at Holy Trinity Priory Church, where also is the bowl of an octagonal font, found in the garden behind Beech House, and which formerly did duty in all probability at St. James' Chapel.

### (I.) HERMITAGES.

Hermitages were solitary, independent cells, inhabited by private individuals, and not in any way connected with larger monastic institutions. Sometimes they were caves cut out of rocks ; frequently they were simple bridge erections ; occasionally the parvise or small room over a church porch did duty as a recluse's cell ; and sometimes a hermit would live his solitary life in a small tenement in a crowded street.

#### (69) BISHOPHILL CELL.

There were doubtless many of these private cells in a monastic city like York. One comes to light in the will of Margaret Speight (dated 1532), the mother of Richard Speight, the last prior of Holy Trinity, who among many bequests leaves to "the Ancres (anchoress) upon Bushopehill" the sum of xiid.

## THE MERCHANT ADVENTURERS OF YORK.

MISS MAUD SELLERS.

**T**HREE is ample material for a complete history of gild life in York. In addition to the MSS. in possession of the Merchant Adventurers and the Merchant Taylors, the ordinances of the various craft gilds were often copied into the House Books, or Corporation Minutes as they are now called.

Among the municipal records is also a most valuable MS., *Memoranda touching the City of York*, covering the fourteenth, fifteenth and sixteenth centuries; it contains, among other interesting matter, the ordinances of thirty-seven craft gilds. So completely have these organizations, which were once an important feature of the industrial life of the city, passed away, that even the names of some of them convey little meaning to us.

The Merchant Adventurers and the Merchant Taylors, however, still survive.

It is impossible within a limited space to give an account of all these gilds and companies. As a choice had to be made, it naturally fell upon the Merchant Adventurers.<sup>1</sup> The reasons for the choice are obvious, for this fellowship was not limited to one particular body of traders: it embraced all the prominent members of all the chief trades, as distinguished from the handicrafts of York. The Company's records give a picture of York as a self-centred trading community with limited aims and bitter jealousies, but occasional glimpses are given of a different York—a York in touch with the larger interests of national life, visiting and trading with countries "beyond the sea"; it is this dual nature of the fellowship that constitutes

its chief interest and charm, and justifies its selection as the best representative of the complete life of mercantile York.

The Merchant Adventurers of York were a specialized branch of the Mercers' Company, which was granted a charter by Henry VI., in 1430.

The length of time that the Company had been in existence before its incorporation is unknown, but there is no evidence of any connection between the Mercers and the ancient Gild Merchant of York.

From the register of the names of the governors and the brethren, which begins in 1420 and continues uninterruptedly until 1796, it is clear that the Company was sufficiently organized in 1420 to have a master and twenty-nine brethren.

"The Names of all the Free brethren of Mercers "and Merchants of York sometymes called the Gyld "of the holy Trynytyes in Fossgate in the yeare "of our lord 1420"; the heading to this register, which is found in a thick demy quarto volume bound in vellum, in possession of the Merchant Adventurers of York, seems to suggest that their origin was religious rather than mercantile.

A careful study of the earliest book of the Mercers' Company would doubtless throw considerable light on the connection between the Gild of Holy Trinity and the Mercers' Gild. Unfortunately the MS. is not in the possession of the Merchant Adventurers of York, but in a private library.

The Merchants have always held their meetings in Trinity Hall in Fossgate, and on the dissolution of religious gilds by 3 Edward VI., they took over the religious and charitable functions of the dissolved Trinity Gild, although the endowments were annexed by the Crown. Even now they maintain the chapel, and pension ten old men and women, once resident in the Fossgate building, out of their own funds.

So long as foreign trade was principally conducted by the Hansards, the mercers of York probably took

little part in it, but a spirited attempt to wrest English trade out of foreign hands was made by a company of London mercers, later the Merchant Adventurers, who had developed out of the Brotherhood of St. Thomas of Canterbury, and risen into importance under Edward III. It was not, however, until 1407 that a charter conferring various privileges and a certain measure of self-government was conferred upon these merchants, with the exclusive right of trading to Holland, Zealand, Brabant and Flanders, by Henry IV. For almost a century after their incorporation, they were engaged in a duel with the Hansards ; by the time of Henry VII., however, they had not only supplanted to a certain extent their rivals, but their very success had become a menace to the expansion of English trade, for they levied a heavy fine of £40 on all Englishmen trading to the territories granted to them by charter. In fact, the fellowship had degenerated into a monopoly in the hands of a limited number of merchants, chiefly from London, whose object was to prevent others sharing the huge profits that were rapidly turning the Merchant Adventurers into Merchant Princes.

The effects of this exclusive policy were especially disastrous to the merchants of York, whose export trade in woollen cloth was much hampered ; they therefore hailed the King's interference with these fifteenth century monopolists with satisfaction.

Possibly the Act drawn up to prevent these extortions gives a highly coloured picture of the distress in the country, for it declares that on account of the "uncharitable and inordinate covetousness for "their singular profite and lucre" of the Adventurers, "all the cities, townes, and boroughs of the realme "in effect be fallen into great povertie, ruine and "decaie," the customs and subsidies decreased "and "the navy of the lande gretly decreased and minished." The Act expresses great indignation because these exactions were levied in the name of religion, for they

had grown out of small tolls collected "by colour  
"of fraternitie of Thomas becket bishop of Canterbury  
"at which tyme the saide fyne was but the value  
"of an olde noble sterlynge and so by colour of such  
"feigned holynes it hath suffered to be taken of a  
"fewe yeres passed." After this somewhat rhetorical  
preamble the Act deals in a practical manner with  
the difficulty. From that date every Englishman  
"Being the Kyng's true liege man" shall have liberty  
to trade to any place within the Company's juris-  
diction on the payment of a fine of ten marks  
sterling (£6 13s. 4d.).

The passing of this Act was a factor of the utmost  
importance in the history of the York fellowship.  
So many of the mercers availed themselves of this  
extension of privilege at a lowered fee, that within  
a few years a Court of Merchant Adventurers was  
grafted on to the Mercers' Company, and, as all the  
more important members of the older organization  
were connected with foreign trade, gradually the name  
of what was originally only a section of the society  
was applied to the whole fellowship. Although  
the retailer was not excluded from the York Company,  
as he was from the Fellowship of Merchant Adventurers  
of England, his opinion would not carry as much  
weight in the councils of the Company as the more  
substantial merchant's. The Eastland Company,  
another society of York merchants trading beyond  
the seas, draws a clear distinction between the mercer  
and merchant, and only admits the latter. The  
definition is given in their book of ordinances: "A  
"merchant that is such an one as hath of some good  
"contynuance not lesse then three yeres traded at  
"home and abroade beyond the seas merchantlike."

Mercers, merchants and mercers, Merchant Adventurers, the changes in the name of the fellowship mark three steps in its development. The appointment of different searchers for the different groups of members points also to a certain differentiation within the society itself.

Fortunately, in spite of the disappearance of many valuable manuscripts, there still remains sufficient evidence extant to furnish a fairly adequate account of the organization of the York fellowship and its relations with the Merchant Adventurers of England. On the one side, as the representative of the older organization, the Company of Mercers incorporated by Henry VI., it continued its general work of supervising the trade of the city—in this capacity its powers are only limited by the statutes of the realm ; but in its new capacity, as a committee of the Merchant Adventurers of England, it is thrust into a subordinate position and forced, while defending its absolute freedom as a local trading community, to acknowledge itself bound as a foreign trading community to obey the laws made by the continental Court of Adventurers. The Company was not a joint stock enterprise : each merchant traded with his own capital at his own risk, but in return for certain impositions that he paid to the General Fellowship, on the goods that he exported and imported, he received various advantages ; for an influential and rich company of merchants, having their chief court abroad, could obtain from the various continental powers many trading privileges that would have been denied to a less distinguished body of men. Prior to the development of consular service the success of foreign trade depended on some such organization. The York merchant attending the great sales of merchandise, which were held four times a year in the mart towns on the Continent, would have found himself seriously hampered in his trade had he not had the court to assist him when difficulties arose between him and the foreign buyer or seller. The government of the whole body of Merchant Adventurers, whether living in London, the provinces, or abroad, was vested in two distinct councils—the Court of Assistants and the General Assembly, both sitting on the Continent, but each having separate functions.

The Court of Assistants, consisting of a Governor and twenty-four Assistants, was invested with supreme legislative and executive power ; it made the laws and ordinances governing the whole society, and could punish any refractory brother by fine and imprisonment. The powers of the General Assembly, at which all the members of the fellowship abroad had the right to attend, were less definite, but it wielded one weapon of undoubted power, for the election of the Court of Assistants was in its hands. The fact that the Court of Assistants was elected by the General Assembly and removable at their pleasure, prevented any flagrant disregard of the wishes of the general as opposed to the official members of the society. The frequency of these elections, too, increased the power of this check on what would otherwise have been a purely autocratic assemblage, for the Governor was elected annually, the Assistants four times a year. These assemblies were coincident with the four great marts, when many members were abroad, so they would be fairly representative and national gatherings, though the London element predominated. The Merchant Adventurer might be called from York at any time to act as Assistant at Middleburg, Bruges, Rotterdam, Antwerp, Hamburg, or wherever the Court was held ; one, James Harrington, was fined twenty pounds for refusing to obey the summons. The office of Assistant was no sinecure ; all difficulties, from a paltry dispute between two brethren haggling over farthings, to an international question of the utmost importance were brought before the Court.

The York Merchant Adventurers have series of letters covering the middle period of the sixteenth century, which show clearly the nature of the correspondence between the provincial and the chief Court.

A letter from Antwerp in 1567 to the Worshipful Company of Merchant Adventurers of York is a typical example :—

" Generall Court holden In Andwarpe the 6 daye of  
" Marche 1567.

" Wheare of late the Citie of Hamborowe have at  
" our speciall instance and sewte graunted to us dyvers  
" goodly privileges upon hope yt we shulde occupie  
" and use somme trade thither and for that purpose  
" have according to their grant prepared a howse for  
" us, and for that if we should not mayntayne somme  
" trad thither yt is possible theye of the Citie might  
" think we used them rather for a refuge in tyme of  
" necessitie then for a playne meanyng which might  
" turne to the Company greate descredicte, not only  
" theire but in all other places heareafter according  
" whereof and for yt yt is thought convenient wyselye  
" to foresee soe the quiet and saulfe occupieeng of ye  
" Company wheresoever daunger may hereafter happen,  
" and to thintent we may have prooef of the usage  
" of owre privileges. It is therefore ordeyned and  
" enacted ye first four shippes which shalbe laden  
" aftar the last daye of Marche by the brethren of owre  
" Company in such manner and fourme as of late  
" hath ben used for the lowe countries shalbe laden  
" and departe for and to the said Citie of hamborowe."

Any brother who ships any clothes, kersies or other woollen commodities in any other ships to any other port incurs a penalty of forty shillings. Thus neither the time of shipment nor the port of discharge was left to the York merchant ; he was not even allowed to settle the amount of goods he exported, nor the vessel in which he sent them. Alien as are these regulations to modern *laisser faire* methods, it would be unjust to dismiss them as economically unsound.

The continental Court claimed with some justice that by restraining importation when there was a glut in the market, and encouraging it when there were signs of scarcity, they prevented financial crises and obviated the worst risks of unrestrained speculation. The risk of piracy, too, necessitated the utmost caution in the choice of seasons for shipping,

and it was the special business of the Court to collect the necessary data on which to base wise decisions in these matters.

The best proof of the utility of the society lies in the fact that half the merchants of England belonged to it, for shortly after the drastic reformation of the Company by Henry VII., local courts sprang up at York, Newcastle, Hull, Norwich, Ipswich, Exeter, Bath, Boston, Devizes, Salisbury and Yarmouth. Three of these courts, York, Newcastle and Bristol, are still in existence.

It was suggested, when the Adventurers were forced to leave Antwerp, that they should establish their chief Court at some port in England, and the claims of York were urged by Richard Clough, who had at one time been Sir T. Gresham's secretary, but the suggestion was not received with favour. The Adventurers migrated to Hamburg.

Unlike the Eastland Fellowship, a company doing an extensive Baltic trade, which imposed a similar constitution on all the subordinate courts, and entrusted no legislative power to any, the provincial courts of the Merchant Adventurers differed in organization, though apparently all had legislative powers for local purposes given to them.

In Newcastle, though not in York, the Merchant Adventurers claimed to be a co-ordinate power with the Adventurers of England, refused to pay the impositions levied on the other outports, or to regard themselves as a localized committee of the Adventurers.

John Wheeler, Secretary of the General Fellowship, wrote his *Treatise of Commerce* in 1601, and seven years later collected and transcribed the Laws and Ordinances of the Company. According to the *Treatise of Commerce*, a specific ordinance gives the Court of Assistants the right to establish these local courts, the locality being settled by the General Assembly, the organization by the Court of Assistants.

" By the said Governor and Assistants are also appointed and chosen a Deputie and certain discreet persons, to be associates to the said Deputie, in all other places convenient as well within as without the realme of England, who all hold correspondance with the Governor of the Company and Cheife Court in the Marte Towne on the other side of the seas, and have subalterne power to exercise Merchant law, to rule and looke to the good ordering of the Brethren of the Company every where, as far as may be, and their Charters will bear them out." This last clause, " as far as may be, and their Charters will bear them out," proves decisively that the relations between the local courts and the chief Court differed in each centre.

York, however, in spite of its powerful local court, met with scant respect at the hands of the superior court. This is clear from an interesting letter from Edward VI., preserved in the Company's archives, " to one John Pykkerynge one of our Court Masters of this oure Realme hauntyng the parties of Flanders." The letter states that the Mercers of the City of York have complained that " contrarye to the ancient customes of olde tymes," when they go to Flanders to pursue their trade, they are not fairly dealt with by the Company there, " unto theyr gret losse hurt and prejudice as all at large is expressed in the same complaynt." The fellowship is commanded to treat " ye said mercers in thos parties beyonde the sea with all favour and honestee . . . as ye lust to do us singler pleasor and woull answere to us at your pryll." It was with the hope of strengthening their position that in 1581 the York Company obtained the additional Charter from Elizabeth.

Incidentally the Charter gives a clear picture of the difficulties that beset the sixteenth century York merchants. Pirates and shipwrecks were the most formidable dangers they had to contend with, but

the failure of many foreign houses of business had inflicted serious losses on them. The fall of Ouse Bridge, besides embarrassing traffic, had choked the river with rubbish and rendered it unnavigable, so that their working expenses for unloading were heavier than formerly. The dangers of specialization were apparent even in the sixteenth century, for the Charter points out that the same merchants, not being handcraftmen, "when once they fell into poverty they could "in no way help themselves and emerge therefrom "but live upon the charity and alms of the Richmen "of the same society," but even the successful members complain that they are already overburdened with the maintenance of the many poor in Trinity Hospital. The Charter gives the York Merchants almost unlimited powers of self-government. They could make laws and ordinances, which all merchants, mercers and shopkeepers in York or its suburbs were forced to obey; in case of disobedience to these ordinances the Company could fine or imprison the delinquents. The supervision of weights and measures was an important part of their duties. No one was allowed to open a shop until he had become a member of the Company. There were four methods of admission—by patrimony and the payment of a fee of ten shillings; by service of eight years to some free brother of the Company, and the payment of thirteen shillings and fourpence; by redemption, the fee being originally £6 13s. 4d., but this was raised to £30 in 1630; and by honorary membership. The fee for redemption at the Chief Court varied considerably, at one time it was as high as £200, but a distinction was always drawn between the Adventurers of England and those of the outports; in 1635 the former paid £50, the latter £25 each; finally, at the end of the seventeenth century, the Hamburg Company, as the Adventurers of England began to be called, voluntarily reduced their fine to forty shillings—probably the local courts reduced theirs at the same time.

The charter does not ignore the claims of the Chief Court ; although the election of the Governor was left to the fellowship in York, only a member of the Fellowship of Merchant Adventurers of England was eligible. *Nominare tres de magis idoneis personis existentibus liberis de mercatoribus adventur Anglie ac de societate predicta, de quibus ipsi eligent unum per suffragium euisdem societatis aut maiores partes euisdem.* The charter of Elizabeth was ratified by James I., and the Merchants took the opportunity to correct and amend their own ordinances. A copy of these revised regulations is still in the possession of the York Adventurers. The opening ordinance reiterates the stipulation of the charter that both Governor and Deputy shall be members of the Fellowship of Merchant Adventurers of England, or "the Marchantes Adventurers of thold hance," to quote the exact words.

But the regulation dealing with apprentices even more clearly demonstrates the subordinate position of the York society. It is there expressly stated "That all the compayne of Merchants and Mercers of "this Cittye and everie of them shall from hensfurthe "for the number and stynt of ther apprentices to "clame or have anie fredome here in this cittye of "York according to his Maties charter to us granted, "be, whollye and fullye ruled and governed according "to an acte made at Andwarp the eighte and twentieth "daie of August 1582 for the stynt of Apprentices by "the Marchantes Adventurers there assembled." But there is external as well as internal evidence of the pacific disposition of the York Company. In a long and acrimonious correspondence between Newcastle and the Chief Court, on account of the refusal of the northern residency to pay impositions or to obey the ordinance regulating the stint of apprentices, the York brethren are constantly held up to the recalcitrant men of Newcastle as an example of the correct manner in which the continental court should

be approached. Again, the fact that those apprentices who wished to take up the freedom of the fellowship had to repair to the court abroad in order to achieve their purpose, emphasises the paramount position of that court.

The ordinances give an amusing picture of sixteenth century trade methods and afford a striking contrast to the hustling, self-advertising latter-day ways :—  
“Whereas of Late some Brethren of this fellowship  
“have by themselves and their apprentices heretofore  
“used not onelie to stand at the corners of stretes,  
“and in other mens shoppes, but also have gone to  
“the comon Inns, where the chapmen buyers of flax  
“and other marchandize have Lodged, and ther have  
“often sollicyted them to ther owne shoppes ware  
“houses or sellers, for the vantage of their owne flax  
“Iron and other Marchandize, the said chapmen  
“manye of them beinge depelie indebted to diverse  
“Brethren of this fellowship, who by means thereof  
“have not onelie Lost ther chapmen and ordinarie  
“customers, but also have been Long times driven of  
“ther payments, yea and sometimes thereby have  
“Lost ther debtes, to the great damage of manye  
“Brethren of this fellowshipp, And for avoydinge of  
“the same It is by auctorctye of this Courte estab-  
“lished and enacted, That for hensfurth it shall not  
“be Lawfull for anie Brother of this fellowshipp,  
“nor his servant or apprentice, to Lodge or kepe  
“table in anie comon Inn wher anie chapmen buyers  
“of flax or other marchandize, or ther carryers comonlie  
“frequent eat or use to Lodge, upon paine of everie  
“one herein offendinge to forfeite and paie for every  
“offence xls.”

Brethren are forbidden under a like penalty to stand at the corners of streets or in streets soliciting buyers. Hawking and any attempt to lessen the city's trade by starting shops in the country districts is absolutely prohibited. The fellowship undertook the most strenuous supervision of the manners and

morals of its members. The strictest etiquette is imposed on the members when they meet in assemblies. "For as muche as disorders and discentions in assemblies is offensive to God and displeasinge to man, and especially in such as should be accompted wise, And seeing that amongst us Marchantes in our assemblies diverse times suche thinges have hapened, For the Remedyng thereof it is by comon consent enacted, That whosoever first standeth up in anie courte generall or assistant, shall without interrupcon be suffered to make an end of his speeches and none to stand up in the meantime and whosoever doth (excepte Mr. Governor) to pay for everie suche offence xiid. And also whosoever shall make anie speache in anie courte generall or assistant, that he shall direcete the same by specyall wordes either to the Governor deputye or ells to the whole assemblie in such quiete and decent manner as shalbe to be wel thoughte of upon paine if he do otherwise to paie for everie his offence xiid. Also it is Likewyse enacted, That none shall take upon him to speak in anie one matter above thre times upon paine of everie offence xiid."

Thus the turbulent, quarrelsome brother and the loquacious brother are strongly repressed.

The most stringent enactments are those dealing with the hated interlopers, who set up shop or exercise merchandise, or buy or sell merchandise growing beyond the seas, without belonging to the fellowship. But the brother who buys or sells goods for the use of others not free of the Company is also hardly dealt with. Another ordinance enacts "That no brother of this fellowshipp shall hereafter go to se or buye anie cloth broughte to this Cittye to be sold in no place but in our Hall therefore appointed in paine of x4s.

An extract "from a Quarter Courte holden at Trinity Hall in Fossegate the thirteenth day of October Anno Dom. 1679," shows that these

ordinances were not only drawn up but rigidly enforced :—

“ John Baynes having lately taken an apprentice paid for absences at a Court and sermons 16  
“ Mr. Wood and Mr. Kighley for short gownes 6d. each 10  
“ Alderman Carter paid for want of a Tippet 6d., but had it returned, being ignorant of ye Act.  
“ Alderman Ramsden to be called on the next Court for want of his Tippet and for leaving the Court without leave.”

It is a distinctive feature of English commercial life that the sons of men of rank engaged in trade sooner than on the Continent. The Merchant Adventurers and the Eastland Merchants formed the link between the two classes. In a defence of the policy of the society that emanated from Hull in the middle of the seventeenth century this is pointed out : “ Many young men are sent over to learn the Language and Manners of those places (the Low Countries), whereby they are better able to manage the Trade, and if any prove Deboist and do not behave themselves as becomes Merchants, the governours of these places have power to send such men home, that they may not become a Discredit to our Kingdom, nor a losse to their Principalls. While there is a government (and consequently a peculiar Privilege in any trade) it encourageth gentlemen and others to prefer their Children to those Trades, because of those Endes.” The Roll of Apprentices of the Merchant Adventurers of York certainly bears out this contention, for many of the names of the best-known Yorkshire families figure there. Nor was this trust misplaced : the apprentice who was sent abroad lived a sort of collegiate life in a house set aside for the purpose, if he use dicyinge mummynge cardinge dancinge or anie other unlawfull games, whereby he doth waist and imbasell his Mr. goodes, he shalbe clearlie dismissed and excluded from the freedom of this fellowshipp.”

Apparently some of the residencies had a chaplain, for William Hart was for many years Pastor of the English Church of Merchant Adventurers at Stade; he died in 1622, and had evidently managed to amass a considerable fortune, some of which he left for the benefit of the Merchant Adventurers of York. But he was a discriminating benefactor, and left directions that "Old Hance Merchants that are "in necessitie have it several times, if they be such "as are decayed through providence and not through "their owne prodigallitie, it being more charitie to "relieve an old man that hath soe lost an estate than "a young man that never had any." Puritanism had a strong hold on the fellowship; a new ordinance was passed at "the Head Court holden att Ousebridge "the xxviiith day of March Anno Dm. 1647":—

"It is enacted that if any brother of this Societie "shall not be present att the Sermons which hereafter "shalbe upon any of the Quarter Courte dayes, he "shall paye two shillinges every such neglecte unles "he can shew verie good and sufficient cause for his "absences one fourth part of which fine is to be paid "to the officers, and ye remainder to the poore." Many of the Governors were staunch Parliamentarians. Four of the five aldermen who were discharged from office at the Restoration had been Governors of the fellowship.

The amount of trade done by the Merchant Adventurers as a whole was enormous. Their sphere of activity extended from the mouth of the Somme to the Skaw. In 1601 the annual exports of the whole fellowship were valued at one million pounds, and they employed fifty thousand men in Flanders alone. The fact that they exported raw material and thus deprived their own countrymen of work and gave employment to foreigners is at the root of most of the criticism of them as monopolists.

But, of course, the trade done by the York Merchant Adventurers would be a very small proportion of the whole. When the Merchant Adventurers agreed to lend Queen Elizabeth £30,000, the York brethren's

share only amounted to £425. If they were assessed in proportion to their trading enterprises, York could not have done a very extensive foreign trade. The York Adventurer who also joined the Eastland Company was free to trade to the Baltic as well as the North Sea.

From the national point of view the Adventurers ceased to be of any importance after the end of the seventeenth century, but as a factor in local trade, they still in York continue to exist in the modern form of a Chamber of Commerce.

The more ceremonial side of the fellowship is still kept up, the York Court continues to meet in Trinity Hall, and at the Michaelmas Court a sermon is preached by the Chaplain in the Chapel under the Hall, at which the Governor, Deputy and Wardens are present in their robes of office. They also attend a service in All Saints' Church on the 27th of January. These services are in commemoration of two seventeenth century benefactors, Alderman Thomas Herbert and Jane Stainton.

#### MSS. IN POSSESSION OF THE MERCHANT ADVENTURERS OF YORK.

*The Laws and Ordinances of the Merchant Adventurers of York, 1603.*  
*A Register of the Governors and Free Brethren of the Company.*

Various items of information and some wills are also included in the volume (1420-1796).

*Court Book of the Merchant Adventurers.*

*Court Book of the Eastland Merchants, 1645-1696.*

*Laws and Ordinances of the Eastland Merchants, 1616.*

#### BIBLIOGRAPHY.

*Brit. Mus. Cott. MSS. Galba, B. xi., f. 264.*

" " Add. MSS., 13,913. *The Laws, Customes and Ordinances of the Fellowship of Merchant Adventurers.*

Ashley, W. J.—*English Economic History.*

Boyle, J. R.—*Newcastle Merchant Adventurers* (Surtees Soc. 101).

Cunningham, W.—*Growth of English Industry and Commerce.*

Davies, R.—*Municipal Records of York, XV. Century.*

Gross, C.—*Gild Merchant.*

Kerry, C.—*Mercers' Company of York. Antiquary, XXII., XXIII.*

Lingelbach, W. E.—*The Internal Organization of the Merchant Adventurers of England*, Trans. R. Hist. Soc., XVI.

Sellers, M.—*York in the XVI. and XVII. Centuries. Eng. Hist. Review, IX., XII.*

Sellers, M.—*The Eastland Merchants*, Camden Soc., N.S. X.

Wheeler, J.—*Treatise of Commerce, 1601.*

*Statutes of the Realm, XII. Henry VII., C. 6.*

*State Papers, Domestic, Charles I., 1635.*

*York Municipal Records, Vol. XXXVII.*

## BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCHES OF EMINENT CITIZENS.

ROBERT H. SKAIFE.

ALCUIN is commonly stated to have been born at York, then Eoferwic, in 735 A.D.—a somewhat earlier date is, however, more probable. Whether he was actually born in the city is uncertain, but his boyhood was spent there as a pupil of Ælbert, master of the school founded by Archbishop Egbert. Of this school Alcuin subsequently became the master, as well as the custodian of the library, which was one of great fame and value, through his assiduity in the collection of MSS.

In 782 Alcuin went to reside at the Court of Charlemagne, and died at the Abbey of St. Martin, Tours, in 804 A.D. He was the most famous schoolmaster of his time, and for many years the school at Eoferwic was one of great celebrity, to which scholars resorted from Ireland, Germany and elsewhere.

[J.S.R.]

ATKINSON, JAMES, Surgeon, son of — Atkinson, of York, Surgeon ; born 1759 ; Surgeon to York County Hospital and York Dispensary ; appointed Surgeon to the Duke of York ; one of the founders of the Yorkshire Philosophical Society (see p. x.) and York Musical Society. Amassed a magnificent library (*cp.* Dibdin, *Northern Tour*, Vol. I., p. 210) and published a volume of extraordinary interest, *Medical Bibliography, A and B* (London, 1834). Died March 14th, 1839. Buried in St. Helen's, Stonegate.

[G.A.A.]

BECKWITH, THOMAS, F.S.A., Painter and Genealogist ; eldest surviving son of Thos. Beckwith, attorney,

Rothwell (by Elizabeth, daughter of Robt. Ray, attorney, Howley Hall, near Wakefield). Died 17th February, 1786, aged fifty-five ; buried at St. Mary's, Castlegate, near his wife, Frances, daughter of Joseph Beckwith, of York. He prepared for the Press (but it was never published) a little work entitled *A Walk In and About the City of York*.

BECKWITH, STEPHEN, M.D. ; died at his house on Bishophill, 26th December, 1843, aged seventy-three. A table tomb in the Minster bears his recumbent effigy in marble, and a record in brass of his munificent bequests to that edifice and various institutes, schools and charities in York.

BURLINGTON, RICHARD, THIRD EARL OF, "celebrated for his architectural tastes" ; great-grandson of Richard Boyle, first Earl of Burlington, Recorder of York, 1685-8. He designed the Assembly Rooms in Blake Street, to which "he presented an elegant chandelier of crown glass" ; and died in 1753, aged fifty-eight.

BURTON, JOHN, M.D., F.S.A. ; born at Colchester in 1710 ; settled in York in 1735, and became hon. physician to the County Hospital. The prototype of "Dr. Slop," in *Tristram Shandy*. Buried at Holy Trinity, Micklegate, in 1771. Principal work, the *Monasticon Eboracense*, 1758 (see Davies, *Yorks. Archaeol. Journal*, Vol. II.).

CARR, JOHN, "one of the most eminent of the provincial architects" ; born at Horbury in 1723 ; free in 1757 ; L.M. 1770 and part of 1785 ; died s.p. at Askham Richard Hall, 22nd February, 1807, leaving a fortune of £150,000. (See Davies, *postea*.)

CONSTANTINE THE GREAT is often stated to have been born in York. This has been denied by Niebühr and others ; he was, however, at Eboracum when his father, Constantius Chlorus, died in 306, succeeding him as Emperor of Rome. He died 337. [J.S.R.]

CROFT, JOHN, F.S.A., Wine Merchant ; son of Stephen Croft, Esq., of Stillington (great-grandson

of Sir Christopher Croft; Knt., L.M.\* 1629 and 1641); born 29th February, 1731-2; resided for several years in Oporto; free in 1770; Ch. 1772; Sh. 1773-4; died 18th November, 1820, at his house in Aldwark; buried in the Minster. Author of a *Treatise on the Wines of Portugal*, 1788; *Excerpta Antiqua*, 1797; *The Memoirs of Harry Rowe*, etc. His widow, Judith, daughter of Alderman Fras. Bacon, was buried near him in 1824.

DAVIES, ROBERT, F.S.A., Town Clerk 1827-48; died 23rd August, 1875, aged eighty-two; son of Peter Davies, of York (by Ann, daughter of Robert Rhodes, L.M. 1808); married in 1826, Elizabeth, daughter of Geo. Cattle, of the same city. In October, 1875, Mrs. Davies gave to the Dean and Chapter of York a large number of valuable books, in memory of her husband, who was the author or editor of several antiquarian works, e.g.: *A Memoir of the York Press*, 1868; *Life of Marmaduke Rawdon, of York*; [Camden Society]; *Memoirs of Sir Thomas Herbert, of Tinterne*; *Martin Lister, M.D.*, F.S.A.; *John Burton, M.D.*, F.S.A.; *Francis Drake, F.R.S.*; and *John Carr, Architect*; [Yorks. Archæol. Journal], etc., etc.

DEALTRY, JOHN, M.D., "whose skill in his profession was only equalled by the humanity of his practice"; died suddenly as he was visiting his patients, 25th March, 1773, aged sixty-five; buried in the Minster. Son of Henry Dealtry, Vicar of Wistow. He occupied the house in Lendal built by Dr. Clifton Wintringham. His relict, Elizabeth, daughter of Richard Langley, Esq., of Wykeham Abbey, was buried near him 15th September, 1812, aged eighty-four.

DRAKE, FRANCIS, F.S.A., son of Fras. Drake, Vicar of Pontefract; born there in 1696; settled in York in 1718; appointed City Surgeon in 1726;

---

\* L.M., Lord Mayor; Free, freedom of the city; Ch., Chamberlain of the city; Sh., Sheriff of the city.

Hon. Surgeon to the County Hospital 1741, but was deprived December 20th, 1745, on his refusal to take the Oath of fealty to the Government; married at the Minster, in 1720, Mary Woodeare, of Crookhill; died at Beverley in 1771. Principal work: *Eboracum*, 1736. (See Davies, *antea*.)

ETTY, WILLIAM, R.A., eminent Painter; son of Matthew Etty, miller and ginger-bread baker, Feasegate; born in that street, 10th May, 1787; buried in St. Olave's Churchyard in November, 1849.

FAWKES, GUY, the conspirator; son of Edward Fawkes, Registrar of the Consistory Court of York (son of William Fawkes, Registrar of the Exchequer Court, by Ellen, daughter of William Harrington, Lord Mayor in 1536); baptised at St. Michael-le-Belfrey, 16th April, 1570; educated at the Grammar School in the Horse Fair, under John Pulleyn, B.A.—among his fellow pupils were Thomas Morton (son of Richard Morton, Sheriff 1581-2), afterwards Bishop of Durham; and John and Christopher Wright, his fellow conspirators. Executed at Westminster, 31st January, 1605-6.

FLAXMAN, JOHN, R.A., Sculptor and Draughtsman; second son of John Flaxman, of London, a maker and seller of plaster casts; born in York, 6th July, 1755, during a business visit of his parents, who brought him to town in 1756. He was appointed Professor of Sculpture in the Royal Academy in 1810; died s.p. in 1820, and was buried at St. Giles'-in-the-Fields.

FOTHERGILL, MARMADUKE, was born at Percy's Inn, Walmgate, 1652. After studying at the University of Cambridge, he obtained the living of Skipwith, subsequently removing to Pontefract, and then to Westminster, where he died in 1731. He was a man of great learning and piety, as well as a collector of books and MSS., which, after his death, were transferred to the library of York Minster.

GARENCIERES, THEOPHILUS, Apothecary ; Ch. 1753 ; Sh. 1771-2 ; died at New Malton, 1st January, 1784, aged sixty-nine. Son of Theophilus Garencieres, Vicar of Stainton ; apprenticed in 1729 to Alderman Wm. Dobson, whose daughter, Elizabeth, he married in 1738. She died in 1739, and on 30th September, 1740, he married, at the Minster, Elizabeth, daughter of —— Brooke (by Anne, eldest daughter of Wm. Davye, Esq., of Fockerby). The Vicar was probably descended from "the most famous and learned Theophilus de Garencieres, of Paris," who was incorporated a doctor of physic at Oxford, 10th March, 1656-7, "not only upon a sight of his testimonial letters (which abundantly speak of his worth), subscribed by the King of France, his Ambassador in England (to whom he was domestic physician), but upon sufficient knowledge had of his great merits, his late relinquishing the Roman Church, and great zeal for that of the Reformed." (*Cp. Munk., Roll Coll. Surg., I., 275.*)

GARENCIERES, THEOPHILUS DAVYE, Apothecary ; eldest surviving son of the above (by his second wife) ; born 22nd May, 1742 ; free in 1767 ; Ch. 1783 ; Sh. 1788-9 ; L.M. 1796 ; died s.p.m.s., 13th March, 1803 ; buried at St. Helen's, Stonegate. A brass plate in the south aisle bears this inscription :—"Near this place lie the bodies of two maiden sisters, Barbara and Elizabeth Davye, each having completed her 98th year. Barbara was born in 1667, and died in 1765 ; Elizabeth was born in 1669, and died in 1767."

GENT, THOMAS, Printer, Author and Artist, came from Dublin to York, and was journeyman (1714-5) to the under-mentioned John White, Printer, whose quondam "fair handmaiden," Alice Guy, he married at the Minster, 10th December, 1724, she being then the widow of White's grandson, Charles Browne, Printer. Died 19th November, 1778, aged eighty ; buried at St. Michael-le-Belfrey. Principal works :

*The Histories of York* (1730), *Ripon* (1733), and *Hull* (1735). *The Life of Thomas Gent, Printer, of York, Written by Himself*, appeared in 1832.

GILES, HENRY, Glass Painter ; fifth child of Edmund Giles, Glazier (Ch. 1660), and his wife Sarah ; baptised at St. Martin's, Micklegate, 4th March, 1645-6 ; buried there 25th October, 1709. Ralph Thoresby, the Leeds antiquary, considered him "the famousest painter of glass perhaps in the world." His sister Rachel (born in 1652, died in 1688) married Samuel Smith, Bell-founder, York, and was mother of Samuel Smith, also a bell-founder, Sh. 1723-4, who possessed the drawings and a great quantity of curious painted glass which had belonged to his uncle, Henry Giles.

GOODRICKE, JOHN, Astronomer ; eldest child of Henry Goodricke, of York (died in 1784), by Levina Benjamina, daughter of Peter Sessler, of Namur, and grandson of Sir John Goodricke, Bart., of Ribston. Born at Groningen, 17th September, 1764 ; died unmarried, at York, 20th April, 1786 ; buried at Hunsingore. He "earned lasting distinction by his investigations of variable stars," and was rewarded with the Copley medal in 1783. [Cp. *Royal Soc. Trans.*, 1785, "On the discovery of the period of the variation of the light of a star near the head of Cepheus."] Fourteen days before his death he was elected a fellow of the Royal Society. His mother died in Lendal, 29th April, 1809.

GOWLAND, JOHN, Apothecary to George I. and George II. ; son of John Gowland, Barber-surgeon ; free in 1686, Ch. 1704 ; buried near his ancestors, at St. Martin's, Coney Street, in 1776. He left the greater part of his fortune (£60,000) to his nephews, John and Thomas Mayer, sons of his sister Mary, wife of John Mayer, L.M. 1742 and 1762.

HALFPENNY, JOSEPH, Draughtsman and Engraver ; son of the Archbishop's gardener ; born at Bishopthorpe, 9th October, 1748 ; apprenticed to a house

painter ; clerk of the works to John Carr, architect, when he was restoring the Minster ; died at his house in Gillygate, 11th July, 1811 ; buried in St. Olave's Churchyard. Principal works : *Gothic Ornaments in the Cathedral Church of York* (1795-1800) and *Fragmenta Vetusta* (1807).

**HERBERT, SIR THOMAS, Bart., Traveller and Author** ; eldest son of Christ. Herbert, Esq., of Ottrington (son and heir of Thos. Herbert, Lord Mayor of York in 1606), by Jane, daughter of John Akeroyd, Esq., of Foggathorpe ; born in Pavement, No. 26-7, where a bronze plate has been placed to mark the house ; baptised at St. Crux, 4th November, 1606 ; Groom of the Bedchamber to Charles I., whom he attended on the scaffold. Author of *Some Yeares' Travels into divers parts of Asia and Afrique*, 1638 ; *Threnopia Carolina*, 1678, etc. Sir Thomas died at his house in High Petergate, 1st March, 1681-2, and was buried near his ancestors in the Church of St. Crux. See Davies (*Yorks. Arch. Journal*).

**HEWLEY, SIR JOHN, Knight, of Bell Hall** ; son and heir of John Hewley, of Wistow (by Dorothy, sister of Alderman John Wood) ; M.P. for the city, 1677-85 ; died s.p.s., 24th August, 1697, aged seventy-seven ; buried at St. Saviour's. Sir John gave pecuniary aid in the production of Dugdale's *Monasticon* and Poole's *Synopsis Critorum*. His widow, Dame Sarah Hewley, daughter and heiress of Robert Wolriche, Esq., of Gray's Inn, founded the Hospital for Old Women in York which bears her name, was a "munificent benefactress to the Presbyterian denomination," and was buried near her husband, 26th August, 1710, aged seventy-three.

**HILDYARD, FRANCIS, Bookseller and Stationer** ; Ch. 1695 ; died in 1731. Son of Major John Hildyard, of Ottringham ; free in 1681 ; married, first, Rebecca, daughter of Richard Lambert,

Bookseller, York ; secondly, Dorothy, daughter of Thos. Wheatley, of Wakefield, by whom he had—

HILDYARD, JOHN, Bookseller ; Sh. 1742-3 ; buried at St. Michael-le-Belfrey, 2nd February, 1757, aged forty-seven. In 1754 he printed and issued a sale catalogue of 30,000 volumes, in various languages.

HUDSON, GEORGE, Linendraper, son of a Yorkshire yeoman ; born at Housham, 10th March, 1800 ; apprenticed in 1815 to Messrs. Bell and Nicholson, Drapers, College Street, York ; became a partner in the firm, with Richard (son of James) Nicholson, whose sister Elizabeth he married in 1828. Elected Alderman 31st December, 1835 ; Lord Mayor 1837-8, 1838-9, and 1846-7 ; declared disqualified 9th November, 1849 ; died in Churton Street, Pimlico, 14th December, 1871 ; buried at Scrayingham, 21st December. M.P. for Sunderland 1845-59. In 1833 he became a promoter of railways, and was eventually chairman of some of the most important companies in the kingdom, the title of "Railway King" being given to him by the Rev. Sydney Smith.

KENRICK, JOHN, F.S.A., Classical Scholar and Historian ; one of the founders of the Yorkshire Philosophical Society, and curator of its antiquities ; married in 1824, Loetitia, daughter of the undermentioned Chas. Wellbeloved ; died 7th May, 1877, aged eighty-nine.

LISTER, MARTIN, M.D., F.R.S. ; son of Sir Martin Lister, Knight, of Radclive, Bucks. (descended from the Listers of Thornton-in-Craven), by his second wife, Sarah Temple. Born about 1638 ; resided at York 1670-83, "and was the first to notice that important relic of Roman military architecture usually called the Multangular Tower." M.A. (St. John's College, Cambridge), 1662, where his life-long friendship with John Ray began. Died at Epsom, 2nd February, 1711-2. (See Davies, *antea*.) Made Physician to Queen Anne. Buried at Clapham, to the

poor of which place he left a legacy. Publications : *Historia Animalium Angliae*, 4to, London, 1678 ; *Johannes Godartius, of Insects*, 4to, York, 1682 (illustrated by Place—vide *postea*) ; *De fontibus Medicatis Angliae*, 1682 ; *Historia Conchylorum*, folio, 2nd edition, 1699 ; nearly forty papers in the *Roy. Soc. Transactions*.

[G.A.A.]

MURRAY, LINDLEY, Grammarian ; resided in the suburban village of Holgate from 1784 until his death, 16th February, 1826, aged eighty, and was interred in the Friends' Burial Ground on Bishophill. His English Grammars, prepared at the request of the teachers in the Friends' Girls' School, were composed in the summer-house of his garden, which "was said to exceed in variety the Royal Garden at Kew." His *Memoirs* (written by himself, and edited by Elizabeth Frank, The Mount, York) were published in 1826.

PECKITT, WILLIAM, born at Husthwaite in 1731, was famed for his skill in the art of painting and staining glass, which he practised in York in the middle of the eighteenth century ; some of the stained-glass windows executed by him, adorn the south transept of the Minster. He died at York, October 15th, 1795.

PHILLIPS, JOHN, born 1800, at Marden, Wilts. ; Keeper of York Museum and Secretary of the Yorkshire Philosophical Society 1825-40 ; Assistant Secretary of the British Association 1832-59, President 1865 ; F.G.S. 1828 ; F.R.S. 1834 ; Wollaston Medal Geological Society 1845, President 1859-60 ; LL.D. Dublin 1857, Cambs. 1866, Oxford D.C.L. 1866 ; successively Professor of Geology at King's College, Dublin and Oxford ; Keeper Ashmolean Museum, 1854-70. Died at Oxford 1874. His scientific works include *The Geology of Yorkshire*, 1826 ; *The Rivers, Mountains and Sea Coast of Yorkshire*, 1855 ; *The Geology of Oxford and the Valley of the Thames*, 1871,

and a large number of papers in the *Proc. Roy. Soc.* and other scientific papers (See also p. xiv.). [G.A.A.]

PIGOTT, EDWARD, Astronomer ; son of Nathaniel Pigott, of Whitton, Middlesex (a relative of the Fairfaxes) ; discovered at York, on 22nd May, 1783, the comet which bears his name. His deaf and dumb friend, the above-named John Goodricke, introduced by him to astronomy, co-operated with him.

PLACE, THOMAS, Amateur Artist and Engraver ; son of Rowland Place, of Dinsdale, Durham (by Catherine, daughter and heiress of Chas. Wise, of Copgrove, Yorks.). He lived nearly forty years in York, where he made some experiments in pottery, producing a grey ware with black streaks, and was one of the first Englishmen to practise the newly discovered art of mezzotint-engraving—one of his portraits being that of his friend, the above-named Henry Giles, Glass-painter. He died at the Manor House, 21st September, 1728, aged eighty-one, and was buried at St. Olave's.

PORTEUS, BEILBY, was born in York in 1731, being the youngest but one in a family of nineteen children. He went from a school at Ripon to Christ's College, Cambridge, and shortly after his marriage, in 1765, became Rector of Hunton, in Kent. In 1776 he was appointed Bishop of Chester, and in 1787 succeeded Dr. Lowth as Bishop of London. He died May 13th, 1809.

SMEATON, JOHN, Watchmaker ; free in 1647 ; Ch. 1666 ; died 25th August, 1680, aged sixty-two ; buried at Whitkirk, 28th August, being described on a tablet in the chancel as "late of York." His son, John Smeaton, of Austhorpe Lodge, near Leeds, was grandfather of the eminent engineer, John Smeaton, F.R.S., who designed the Eddystone lighthouse.

SMITH, SAMUEL, Whitesmith and Bell-founder ; buried at Holy Trinity, Micklegate, 7th February, 1660-1. His son and successor

SMITH SAMUEL, Ch. 1684, died in April, 1709, and was buried near his father. By Rachel, sister of the above-named Henry Giles, Glass-painter, he had

SMITH, SAMUEL, Bell-founder ; Ch. 1713 ; Sh. 1723-4 ; who died in August, 1731, and was buried near his ancestors. The bell-house of the Smith's was on Toft Green. Some of their work is described by Mill Stephenson, F.S.A., in the *Yorks. Archaeol. Journal*, Vol. xviii.

STERNE, REV. LAWRENCE, M.A., the eccentric author of *Tristram Shandy* and *A Sentimental Journey* ; eldest son of Lieut. Roger Sterne (died in Jamaica in 1731), a younger son of Simon Sterne, Esq., of Halifax (third son of Richard Sterne, Archbishop of York), by Mary, daughter of Roger Jacques, Esq., of Elvington (eldest son of Sir Roger Jacques, Lord Mayor in 1639), and heiress of her brother Roger, who died in 1680. Born at Clonmel, Ireland, 24th November, 1713 ; became a canon of York, and held the livings of Sutton-on-the-Forest, Stillington and Coxwold. On 30th March, 1741 (Easter Monday), he married, at the Minster (see p. 66), Elizabeth (died at Angouleme about 1773), daughter of the Rev. Robert Lumley, Rector of Bedale, by whom he had an only child, Lydia, who married, in 1772, at Alby on the Tarn, Languedoc, Mr. Alex. Anne Medalle. Lawrence Sterne died intestate at his lodgings in New Bond Street, 18th March, 1768, and was interred March 22nd, in St. George's Burial Ground, Bayswater Road. His body is said to have been resurrected on March 24th, and carried to Cambridge for dissection, where it was recognised. On 4th June, 1768, administration of his estate was granted to his widow Elizabeth.

SAINT ROBERT OF KNARESBOROUGH was the eldest son of Robert Flowers (or Flours), twice mayor of

York during reign of Richard I., being born near the end of the twelfth century. He became a monk of the Cistercian Order, and, removing from York to Knaresborough, lived in a hermitage amongst the rocks. He subsequently removed to Spofforth, but returned to Knaresborough, where he ended his days. He may have introduced the Trinitarian Order into England in 1224. His cell, to which many visitors resorted, including King John (*cp. Cal. Pat. Rolls, 1201-16*, p. 156), is situate among rocks overhanging the Nidd. Died (?) 1235. [G.A.A.]

TELFORD, JOHN, Gardener and Seedsman (third son of Geo. Telford, Gardener, York); Ch. 1723; Sh. 1751-2; died 12th November, 1771, aged eighty-two. He "was the first that brought our northern gentry into the method of planting and raising all kinds of forest trees for use and ornament." In 1810 his grandson, John Telford, sold "the excellent grounds (the Friars' Gardens) and equally good business connection—the growth of a century and a half," to James Backhouse, of York, whose present representatives, the Messrs. Backhouse, now occupy the extensive gardens in Holgate and at Cattal.

TUKE, WILLIAM; born at York, 1732; Ch. 1768; died 1822; was the virtual founder of the York Retreat in 1796, where the humane treatment of the insane was introduced into England. [J.S.R.]

TUKE, HENRY, son of William Tuke; born 1755; Ch. 1787; died 1814; was a philanthropist and author, principally of biographical works relating to the Society of Friends, in which Society he was a valued minister. [J.S.R.]

TUKE, SAMUEL, Philanthropist and Author, was the eldest son of Henry Tuke; born at York, 1784; Ch. 1828; died 1857. He was the author of *A History of the Retreat*: the notice of this book in the *Edinburgh Review*, by Sydney Smith, was the means of drawing public attention to the humane treatment of the

insane in the York Retreat, and to the beneficent results which had followed therefrom. [J.S.R.]

TUKE, DANIEL HACK, youngest son of Samuel Tuke, was born at York, 1827 ; died 1895 ; was the author of important works relating to insanity and its treatment. [J.S.R.]

THURNAM, DR. JOHN ; born at Lingcroft, York, 1810 ; died 1873 ; M.D. Aberdeen 1846 ; F.R.C.P. 1859 ; superintendent of the York Retreat, and subsequently of the Wiltshire County Asylum. He was the joint-author of *Crania Britannica*, and of numerous works dealing with archaeology, and also upon insanity (e.g., *Statistics of Insanity*, 1843). His collection of crania is now in the Anatomical Museum, Cambridge—a few, discovered at Lamel Hill, still remain at the Retreat. [G.A.A.]

WELLBELOVED, CHARLES, Archæologist ; born in London in 1769 ; died 29th August, 1858 ; buried in the graveyard of St. Saviourgate Chapel, in which he had officiated for more than half a century. He was one of the founders of the Yorkshire Philosophical Society, curator of its antiquities, and occupied the Divinity chair in Manchester College, Monksgate, for thirty-seven years. Amongst his pupils was James Martineau, who thus describes him : "A master of the true Lardner type, candid and catholic, simple and thorough, humanly fond of the counsels of peace, but piously serving every bidding of sacred truth." Principal antiquarian works :—*An Account of the Abbey of St. Mary, York (in Vestusta Monumenta)*, 1829 ; and *Eburacum : or York under the Romans*, 1842. (See Kenrick.)

WIDDINGTON, SIR THOMAS, Knight, Recorder 1637-58 and 1660-1 ; M.P. 1654-8 and 1660-1 ; Speaker 1656-8 ; Lord Chief Baron of the Exchequer 1658-60 ; died in London, 21st December, 1664. Sir Thomas married Frances, daughter of Ferdinand Lord Fairfax ; owned and occupied a house on the south side of Lendal, and was the author of

*Analecta Eboracensia: or Some Remaynes of the Ancient City of York, Collected by a Citizen of York,* which work remained in manuscript until 1897, when it was edited by the Rev. Caesar Caine.

WILBERFORCE, WILLIAM; born at Hull, 1759; died 1833; whilst not a York citizen, was closely identified with the city for many years as one of the Members of Parliament for the then undivided County of Yorkshire. His ardent philanthropy, especially in opposition to the slave trade, and his winning eloquence, endeared him to large numbers of persons, not usually taking an active part in political strife. In the contest of 1807 nearly £40,000 was raised by his friends to secure his return.

[J.S.R.]

WINTRINGHAM, CLIFTON; buried at St. Michael-le-Belfrey, 15th March, 1748. Son of Wm. Wintringham, Vicar of East Retford; born in 1689 (Jesus College, Cambridge); practised in York with the highest reputation and success for thirty-five years. He was physician to the York County Hospital, and built for himself a mansion in Lendal (now used as "Judges' Lodgings"), being succeeded as occupant by the above-named Dr. Dealtry. His medical writings (*inter alia*) give a record of the Typhus, then epidemic in York: *Commentarium nosologicum, morbos epidemicos in urbe Eboracensi ab 1715, ad 1725 grassantes complectens.* London, 1727.

[Munk, *Roll Surg.*, II., p. 34.] [G.A.A.]

WINTRINGHAM, SIR CLIFTON; born in York, 1710; M.D. (Trinity College, Cambridge); F.R.S. 1742. Served as physician-general to the Army in the campaign of 1742, at Dettingen; gazetted physician to King George III. in 1762, and knighted same year, and received baronetcy 1774. He died 10th January, 1794, and a monument to his memory was placed in Westminster Abbey. In 1773, he published a valuable edition of Mead's *Monita et Præcepta*

*Medica*, and a collated edition of his father's works.  
[Cp. Munk, *Roll Coll. Surg.*, II., p. 250.] [G.A.A.]

WITTIE, ROBERT, M.D. (King's College, Cambridge) ; son of George Wittie, of Beverley, Esquire ; baptised November, 1613 ; practised his profession in Coney Street twenty years ; removed to London and received Honorary F.R.C.P. 1680 ; died 1684. Author : *Scarborough Spaw*, Lond., 1660 ; *Gout Raptures*, Cambs., 1677 ; *Ouranoscopia, in English, Latin and Greek Lyricke Verse*, Lond., 1681. [Munk, *Roll Coll. Surg.*, I., 413.] [G.A.A.]

## THE MINSTER LIBRARY.

REV. CANON WATSON, M.A.

THE Library of the Dean and Chapter of York has its home in the ancient Chapel attached to the Palace of the Archbishop and the residences of the thirty canons which clustered round the north and east sides of the Minster. It was removed here in 1810, from the building which stands near the south-west corner of the South Transept.

The Library may be said to date from the eighth century, when Egbert was advanced to the See of York, and with the advice and assistance of Bede established here a university and school, of which Alcuin was subsequently the master.

Though injured and perhaps almost destroyed by the Danes in 867, it seems to have survived through the troublous days of the ninth and tenth centuries, for, according to Canon Raine, "in the eleventh century no one place in Britain or France possessed such a store of books" as York.

The old Library near the South Transept was built in 1418-19, under the direction of the treasurer, Thomas Haxey, shortly after the receipt of thirty-nine manuscripts which the previous treasurer, John Newton, had bequeathed to the Dean and Chapter "*in subsidium et relevamen librariæ facienda.*"

Mention is made of the Library in the injunctions of Edward VI. in 1547, and certain orders were made

by Archbishop Holgate in 1552, and Archbishop Grindal in 1572, at their visitations of the Cathedral, but it was not till the early part of the next century that the Library received any considerable accessions to its treasures.

From that time, however, the Minster Library began to be enriched by bequests from various sources and gifts from donors connected with the city and diocese.

In 1628 a valuable collection of 3,000 books, classical, theological and historical, belonging to Archbishop Tobias Mathew, was given by his widow Frances Mathew. And about twenty years later a considerable addition was made through the benefaction of Sir Ferdinando Fairfax, which comprised a number of valuable books formerly in the possession of Sir John Hotham and Archbishop Neile. It is said to have been owing to the patriotic zeal of Ferdinando Fairfax that the Library was preserved during the time of the Civil War.

In 1686, Dr. Comber, Precentor of the Church, re-arranged and catalogued the Library in conformity with the injunction of Archbishop Dolben, many of whose books came into the possession of the Library.

In 1715 the valuable MSS. of James Torr, the antiquary, were presented to the Library by Archbishop Sharp.

In 1737 some 1,500 volumes were added from the library of Marmaduke Fothergill (see p. 231), some time Vicar of Skipwith—one of the best Liturgical scholars of his time. The Library is specially rich in Liturgical works, and possesses an invaluable series of Liturgical MSS. and books of pre-Reformation days.

In recent times the Library has received many valuable additions. In 1863, the Emperor Alexander of Russia presented a copy of the newly issued edition of the *Codex Sinaiticus*.

In 1874 a large number of books came from the library of Archdeacon Churton, and in 1884 a valuable addition was made to its store of Liturgical works from that of Canon Simmons.

In addition to some rare and valuable books, including a copy of the Salisbury Processional, printed at Rouen in 1546, a large number of Yorkshire books, belonging to Robert Davies, F.S.A., found their way to the Library in 1875. A still more valuable collection, however, of books, prints and engravings relating to Yorkshire was bequeathed by Edward Hailstone in 1891, and now forms the Hailstone Yorkshire Library. In this collection is a valuable series of Tracts dealing with the events of the Great Rebellion.

In 1890, Pope Leo XIII. presented to the Library, through Dr. A. P. Purey-Cust, Dean, a fac-simile of the *Codex Vaticanus*.

Among the interesting printed books are copies of the *Horæ B.V.M.* according to the uses of Sarum and York; *The Pica* after the York use, printed by Hugo Goez in 1509; the *New Testament in Greek and Latin*, by Erasmus; *Higden's Polycronicon*, printed by Peter Treveris in 1527; the *Boke of the fayt of Armes and of Chyvalrye*, printed by Caxton; and some rare and beautiful specimens of old printing by Richard Pynson, Wynkyn de Worde, and other printers.

Mention should also be made of a MS. vellum volume of medical treatises not all of the same date. The volume contains the name William de Killingsholm, and the date 1405.

The Library is a mine of literary wealth, and is specially rich in the stores of the literature of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. It owes much, including the compilation of the present catalogue, to the enthusiastic labours of the late Canon Raine, who was for many years the librarian, and was one of the greatest authorities of our time on the antiquities and history of the North of England.

NOTES OF THE MORE IMPORTANT  
HISTORICAL MANUSCRIPTS IN PUBLIC CUSTODY  
IN THE CITY OF YORK.

A.—In the custody of the Dean and Chapter.

Mr. T. B. Whytehead, Dean and Chapter Clerk.

JAMES TORRE'S COLLECTIONS, made between 1670 and 1687, derived chiefly from the Archbishops' registers; containing lists of incumbents, impropriations of churches, institutions of vicarages, and testamentary burials.

DOMESDAY BOOK OF YORK, relating to the possessions of the Cathedral down to about 1472. The earlier part is probably of the writing of the time of Edward II. or Edward III.

REGISTRUM ALBUM, dealing strictly with the endowments of the Cathedral and their early history. There are some old English deeds, copied by an ignorant scribe, fifteenth century.

VOLUME OF WILLS, 1321-1493.

CHAPTER ACT BOOKS, 1290-1456.

MEDIÆVAL INDEX OF THE CHARTERS AND MUNIMENTS of the Dean and Chapter, many of the originals of which are no longer to be found.

VISITATIONS by the Dean and Chapter of their Churches, beginning in 1472.

B.—In the Library of the Dean and Chapter.

Rev. Canon Watson, Librarian.

THE TEXT OF THE GOSPELS, in Latin, written prior to the Conquest,\* on which the Canons of the Cathedral made oath from early times. Various old English documents at the end. Part, pre-Conquest hand.

---

\* Stefannsen dates the volume about 950. It was upon this volume that the Dean and Chapter formerly took the oath. Bound at the end is a list of names—mostly Scandinavian—of “fester men” (sureties) for the Archbishop, of date 1023.—ED.

CHARTULARY OF ST. MARY'S ABBEY, two volumes, a good deal spoiled by damp; fifteenth century.

ORDINANCES OF THE WORSHIPFUL COMPANY OF SADLERS, 1606. (Hailstone Collection.)\*

ORDINANCES OF THE LABOURERS WITHIN THE CITY OF YORK. "Twentieth year of Queen Elizabeth." (Hailstone Collection.)\*

C.—Probate Registry. Mr. A. H. Hudson, Registrar.

WILLS PROVED IN THE EXCHEQUER AND PREROGATIVE COURTS, from 1389 to the present time. A selection of these has been printed by the Surtees Society in the *Testamenta Eboracensia*. An index to these Wills, down to 1660, has been printed by the Yorkshire Archaeological Society in their *Record Series*. At the end of Vol. I. of this index is a catalogue of the known Probate Courts in Yorkshire and Nottinghamshire, with the date of the earliest record in each, and the name of the Registry in which the Wills are now to be found. The majority of these Wills have been deposited at York.

D.—In the Registry of the Archbishop of York.

Mr. A. H. Hudson, Registrar.

THE REGISTERS OF THE ARCHBISHOPS OF YORK, from 1225, in pretty regular succession down to the present time, except that none are now extant of Archbishops Bovill and Ludham (1256-1266). The two first Registers, those of Archbishops Gray and Giffard, have been printed by the Surtees Society.

TRANSCRIPTS FROM PARISH REGISTERS from 1600.

PROCEEDINGS IN THE ECCLESIASTICAL COURTS from the beginning of the fourteenth century.

E.—In the charge of the Corporation.

See *First Report of the Royal Commission on Historical Manuscripts*, 1870, pp. 108-110.

\* *The Ordinary of the Barber-Surgeons of York* (1486-1784) is now in the British Museum. Egerton MS. 2,572.—ED.

## PLATE AND INSIGNIA IN THE CITY.

VERY REV. A. PUREY-CUST, D.D., F.S.A.

NOT the least amongst the many objects of interest in York are the specimens of silver plate dating from the seventeenth century to the present time. No doubt the exigencies of the great Civil War constrained the citizens in their loyalty for the King to surrender most of their many personal and family treasures for his service, for there is frequent mention of them in the old wills published by the Surtees Society. But the goldsmith's art seems to have flourished in York as early as 1360. In 1374, Alan de Alnewyk, goldsmith, had his shop in "Stayngate." The names of two York goldsmiths, Wormod and Jonyn, occur in the will of an Archdeacon of Richmond (1400), and in 1401 the will of another, viz., Wermbolt Harlam, leaves a gold-knopped ring to the wife of John Angowe, a craftsman of the same mystery. John Luneburgh, in 1458, leaves some of his working tools to his fellow goldsmiths, Robert Spicer and John Pudsay. And John Colam, in 1490, has left behind him a full inventory of working tools and appliances for carrying on a goldsmith's business. Thomas Skelton is found selling Mazers in the middle of the fifteenth century. In the fourteenth year of Henry IV. an important decision was given concerning a dispute which arose in the craft, which was again reviewed in the fifth of Queen Elizabeth, 1561. The old ordinance of Henry IV. was confirmed, and it was also ordained that all work should be "towched with the pounce of the Citie called the half leopard head, and half

flowre de luyce as the Statute purporteth." Many of the leading goldsmiths of York have attained to the dignity of Lord Mayor. Henry Wyman in 1403, Thomas Gray in 1497, William Willson 1513, George Gaile 1534, Ralph Pullein 1537, John Thompson 1685, Mark Gill 1697. In 1701 the assay office was re-established in York, and the distinguishing mark since then has been a shield of the arms of the city, viz., *five lions passant on a cross*.

### CIVIC INSIGNIA.

The origin of the civic insignia of York seems to be due to the exceptional favour shewn to this ancient city by Richard II. In 1392 a severe outbreak of the plague having broken out in London, the Courts of King's Bench and Chancery were removed from thence to York at the instigation of Thomas Arundel, then Archbishop of York and Lord Chancellor of England. The stay was but for a few months, and the panic having then subsided they returned to their old quarters in the metropolis. But it was only natural that such a rare occurrence should be commemorated by some special honour bestowed upon the city. The King therefore conferred on the Chief Magistrate the dignity of Lordship in addition to that of Mayor, with the custom, not uncommon in those days, of the gift of a Sword of State and a Cap of Maintenance, and in the following year presented the city with a Mace. The present insignia of the city are the successors of the royal gifts. The original sword disappeared in the year 1795. The present swords consist of: (a) The sword of the Emperor Sigismund, father-in-law of King Richard II., hung up over his Stall in St. George's Chapel, Windsor, in 1416, on his installation as Knight of the Garter. On his death in 1437 it became the perquisite of the Dean and Chapter, and was eventually presented to York in 1439 by Henry Hanslap, one of the Canons, and also Canon of Howden and Rector of Middleton, near

Pickering, and a native of the City of York. The length of the sword is four feet four inches, the upper half of the blade being damascened with the Royal Arms on one side and those of the city on the other. (b) The second sword, measuring four feet and a quarter of an inch, with a hilt of silver gilt, was given by Sir Martin Bowes, a native of York, and Lord Mayor of London (1545), in words engraved on the blade, "for a remembrance" "to the Mayor and Communaltie of this said honorable Citié." The sheath was originally covered with crimson velvet garnished with stones and pearls. But on the visit of James I. to this city (1603), on his way to be crowned in London, it was carried off by some officer of his Court, probably as part of the regalia, and only recovered after much delay and difficulty, bereft of its jewels.

The original cap of maintenance, or the token of the possession of a dignity conferred by the Sovereign, was, I assume, little more than a skull cap, similar to the caps of maintenance within the coronets of the nobility and the crown itself. However, in 1445 this had disappeared or been worn out, and a successor was provided at the cost of forty-two shillings. In 1580 "a new hatt of maintenaunce" was provided by Peter Wilkinson, hatter, for forty shillings, and this in a somewhat dilapidated condition is worn by the sword bearer at the present day.

What became of the original mace we cannot say, but in 1462 and again in 1477 there are entries in the Chamberlain's accounts for the re-gilding of the mace. Drake in his history mentions a second mace, "the biggest carried on Sundays, the lesser at all other times." But in 1646 it was ordered that a new mace be made, and "to make sale of the little old mace toward the charge thereof." So it is probable that the large mace was melted up at the same time. The present mace, then constructed by Claudius Tirrell, whose initials are under one of the panels, is of silver

gilt, and measures three feet five inches in length, and bears the arms embossed of the city, the portcullis crowned, the ostrich feathers, the Cross of St. George, the Lion of England, and a crowned rose. Figures of Faith, Justice, Charity and Fortitude appear in the circular panels round the head. The Royal Crown by which it is surmounted and the Royal Arms with the initials of Charles II. were evidently added after his Restoration.

The Lord Mayor's gold chain of office, weighing nineteen ounces, was bequeathed to the city by Sir Robert Watter, Kt. and Alderman, Lord Mayor (1603). It consists of three rows of beautifully twisted links of two patterns, without any pendant or badge, and was presented by his executors, June 26th, 1612. The Lady Mayoress's gold chain, weighing twelve ounces, was given by Marmaduke Rawdon, a merchant of London, who built the market cross on the site of the chancel of All Saints' Church, pulled down for that purpose, and who was the son of Laurence Rawdon, and Alderman of this city. The Lady Mayoress has also a "Staff of Honour," of dark wood tipped with silver, said to have been taken in battle from some Indian potentate, and presented by Alderman Towne (1726), in lieu of "the old staff of honour being much decayed through antiquity." The Sheriff's chain and badge of gold were given by Alderman Thomas Walker, on his retirement from office (1893). The sword bearer, mace bearer, and staff bearer have each a silver livery collar, consisting of a chain composed of a double row of recumbent lions with pendant shields. Two of these collars are probably survivors of those mentioned in 1565 in the Chamberlain's book, the other is of later date, but in each of them there is much interesting mediæval work, and they well deserve attention. The porter's staff of ebony, capped with silver, was presented by Richard Morrison, Lord Mayor in 1707 and 1721.

## CIVIC PLATE.

The collection of civic plate, though not large, is exceedingly interesting, and contains several specimens of the best taste and date. The oldest pieces are a silver rose-water basin and ewer, with curved spout and handle, the gift of James Hutchinson (Lord Mayor 1634), bearing the London hall-mark (1648), and weighing one hundred and two ounces. Two large tankards, fine specimens of the drum type, with flat lids, each standing on three lions couchant, bearing the York hall-mark, 1674, and made by John Plummer and Marmaduke Best, eminent silversmiths of York, during the seventeenth century. The tankards were presented by Thomas Bawtry (Lord Mayor 1673). The gold loving cup, weighing twenty-five ounces, the gift of Marmaduke Rawdon, 1672, is also the work of Marmaduke Best. The large silver gilt cup, twenty-three inches high, including the cover, one of the gems of the collection, was presented in 1679 by John Turner, Recorder of York, 1661-1682 : it is most dignified in design, and elaborately ornamented in detail, the foliage of acanthus leaves with which it is adorned is most gracefully wrought. On the marriage of the present Prince and Princess of Wales, then Duke and Duchess of York, a replica of the cup was presented by the citizens, the Lion of England being substituted on the cover for the lion couchant, which is the crest of the Turner family, and the shields of all the successive Dukes of York emblazoned on the bowl. Two punch bowls with movable rims, usually called "Monteiths," though identical in size and detail, are of different dates. One given 1699 by George Prickett, Recorder of York, 1683-1700, made by Seth Lofthouse, of London, the other presented by William Pickering, Alderman of York, 1722. Anthony Wood, 1683, mentions the origin of this particular form of bowl. "This year in the summer-time came up a vessel or basin notched at the brim to let drinking glasses hang there by the

foot so that the body or drinking place might hang in the water to cool them. Such a bason was called a Monteith from a fantastical Scot called Monsieur Monteith who at that time wore the bottom of his cloak or coat so notched." Cripps, in his *Old English Plate*, thinks that the bowl so garnished was brought in empty. The glasses were then taken out, the bowl placed on the table, the rim removed, and the process of punch making, for which each gentleman fancied that he had an especial talent, commenced. Two other pieces of plate deserving special attention were given by Alderman John Carr in 1796, viz., a singularly gracefully shaped tea urn, ornamented with embossed acanthus leaves, and a handsome domed centre-piece with a figure of Justice therein, both beautiful specimens of the peculiar taste and fashion of the eighteenth century. Four salvers of various sizes are good specimens of the late eighteenth century plate. Their chief interest, however, is that, at the backs of three of them, several articles of old plate are mentioned for which they were exchanged, and it is impossible to quell a regret that they had not been retained, and a misgiving that the municipal collection has suffered accordingly. An oval silver box, with the City Arms and an inscription boldly cut on the lid, deserves attention. It is called "a tobacco box," most probably a snuff box, and, if so, specially interesting, for in the year 1664, when it was given by Richard Etherington, snuff was first introduced into England as a prophylactic against the plague; and in 1716, when the box was "renewed," snuff had been adopted as an indispensable requisite for the after-dinner-table in all refined and cultured life, and remained so until my boyish days.

#### MINSTER PLATE.

The old plate at the Minster consists of :—

The Mazer Bowl, said to have been presented to the Gild of Corpus Christi in York, in 1407, by

Henry Wyman, Lord Mayor and goldsmith. The rim bears this inscription, which fixes the date thereof to the Archiepiscopate of Archbishop Scrope, viz., 1398-1405 : “ Recharde arche beschope Scrope grantis on to alle tho that drinkis of this cope XLti dayis to pardune, Robart Gubsune Beschope musm grantis in same forme afore said XLti dayis to pardune Robart Strensalle.” In 1546 the Gild of Corpus Christi was dissolved, and the cup passed into the possession of the Gild of the Cordwainers. The silver plates and angels’ heads beneath the bowl bear the maker’s mark of Peter Pearson, 1622. Drake states that “ in 1669 the bowl had an additional lining of silver and the company’s arms put upon it.” This is the only piece of plate extant which bears the old York mark of the rose and fleur-de-lys.\*

One paten marked with a hand in benediction.

One chalice marked with a crucifix on the front. Mentioned by Drake as taken out of the coffin of Archbishop Greenfield (1304-1315).

Two patens and two chalices, also taken from coffins of Archbishops ; date and name unknown.

Silver pastoral staff given by Catherine of Braganza to her chaplain, Bishop Smith ; probably Portuguese workmanship.

A pair of altar candlesticks in the Choir, bearing the arms of Archbishop Sancroft, previously Dean of York ; plate marks illegible.

A pair of altar candlesticks in the Ladye Chapel, with the inscription : “ Presented by Lady Mary Beaumont, eldest daughter of George Burdett, Esq., of Denby, Yorks., Feb. 6th, 1673.”

Three Archiepiscopal rings, taken from the coffins of Archbishops Sewal de Bovill (1256-59), William de Greenfield (1304-15) and Henry Bowet (1407-23).

---

\* For further account see Davies, *Rep. Archæol. Institute, York Meeting, 1846*.—ED.





## PART II.

“We only take upon ourselves the character of a guide, which requires a moderate share of authority and good fortune, rather than talents or excellence.”

BACON (*Novum Organum*).



## GEOLOGY.

REV. W. JOHNSON, B.Sc. (Lond.).

THE Geology of York is, in one sense, of the simplest kind. No original native rock is visible, or indeed hardly accessible. The real bedrock of the country is a Triassic plain, now buried some fifty feet or more beneath morainic or glacial deposits. The numerous well-sinkings which have been made for drinking-water give us an idea of the depth of boulder clay which has accumulated here. Stone for building must all be brought from a distance, but the deposits of clay afford an unlimited supply of material for making the bricks of which most of the houses of York are constructed.

Opportunities for examining the crust of the earth are limited almost entirely to the numerous clay pits which are to be found on all sides of York. Yet, as it is no interest of the brickmaker to go lower than the clay, it usually happens that he ceases his work just as geological interest begins. For it is below the clay that we find the morainic deposits, which alone help us to determine the origin of the low hills which stretch east and west around the county two or three miles south of York. Visitors to York will find the best sections of the clay and exposures of morainic debris at the Dringhouses pit on the south of York, and at the pits of Messrs. Wray on the Huntington Road, on the north side of York. The deepest section through the morainic matter is one on the North Eastern Railway to Hull, at Holtby. Here, however, care must be taken in drawing inferences from the derived fossils, as the sides of the embankments were

strengthened by large tippings from the cretaceous beds of the Flamborough district. A pit opened on the property of Captain Key, at Lingcroft, yielded a large variety of derived fossils, a specimen of rhomb porphyry, one of Cheviot porphyrite, and much blue limestone. Comparatively few specimens of igneous rocks have been found, though the collecting has been maintained very closely. Some, which will be shown during the meetings of the Association, are probably northern, possibly Scandinavian. A comparison of the different pits and their contents almost forces the writer to the conclusion that the streams of ice, invading the Plain of York from west, north and north-east, found their meeting-place in York. Though most of the deposits are such as would be derived from west and north-west, the writer sees many specimens of rocks which belong more nearly to the estuarian and oolitic rocks of north-east Yorkshire, and in rare cases pieces of lias shale.

Recent excavations prove the justice of Professor Phillips's observation, that in the Vale of York these deposits were of three kinds :—"One argillaceous, and holding a large proportion of pebbles and slightly worn fragments of rocks brought from very distant sources ; another, a sandy, gravelly deposit, in which masses of sandstone and limestone from the western regions predominate ; the third, a mass of rounded chalk and angular flint."

Considerable discussion has taken place about the nature and origin of the laminated clay which is found in deposits on all sides of York. No organic remains, no stones, are found in it, but the clay peels off in thin sheets without any difficulty. It is possible that after the ice-age the whole site of York was a large swamp, divided into parts by the morainic mounds, along the tops of which the roads still run. The channel (now the Ouse) by which the flood waters escaped was then only in process of formation, and every flood-tide brought with it a fresh deposit of



# WELL BORINGS.

*Scale:*  
Ten Feet to One Inch.

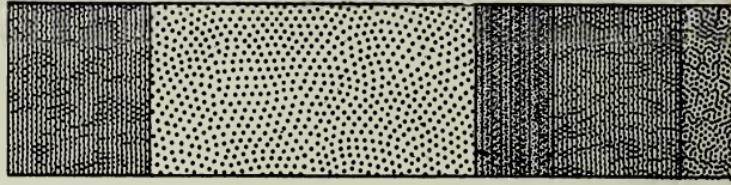
YORK.  
MESSRS. ROWNTREE & CO.  
(JOHN VILLIERS, BEVERLEY.)

GRIMSTON.

J. J. HUNT, ESQ.

(J. T. HYMAS, LEEDS.)

Description.	Thickness of Stratum.	Feet. Ins.	Depth from Surface.	
BOTTOM OF WELL (BOULDER CLAY) .....	3 9		31 3	BOULDER CLAY.
GRAVEL AND CLAY.....	6 0		35 0	
BLUE CLAY.....	2 9		41 0	
RED STONY CLAY .....	3 3		43 9	
WARPY SAND .....	2 9		47 0	HARD SAND AND LITTLE WATER.
GRAVEL .....	4 0		49 9	
RED SANDY MARL .....	3 0		53 9	LOAMY SAND AND WATER.
WARP CLAY.....	9 6		56 9	
			66 3	



finely divided matter, which produced one lamina of the whole.

The process of producing these laminations may still be observed on various beaches along the riverside, and indeed these modern deposits along the banks turned the writer's attention to this possible explanation of the laminated clay. It is, at any rate, quite distinct from either red or blue boulder clay.

One feature of the overlying clay of the York area is the variation in its composition within very short distances. In digging foundations for new buildings, the trenches will cut through firm, nearly dry clay, yet in a few yards will pass through wet soil and quick-sands, requiring much deeper trenching and thick beds of concrete to prepare adequate foundations for large erections. This was very evident in the excavations required for the new drainage works at Dringhouses, and also those more recently dug for the foundations of Archbishop Holgate's School. The site of the new asylum at Naburn was closely watched for any helpful geological contents, but the trenches passed almost uniformly through false-bedded sands, and the only thing found of interest was the core, well-ribbed, of a *Calamites*. As the Water Company derives its water from the Ouse, we do not get much help from shafts sunk into the earth for drinking-water. Yet two deep sinkings have been carried out by Messrs. J. J. Hunt and Messrs. Rowntree, Limited, the results of which are appended.

In some parts of the city, peat beds are discovered by excavators, these being well marked under Parliament Street; from these beds many bones of animals have been taken. One peat deposit, which will probably receive more notice in other sections of the Association, is that of Askham Bog. This lies three miles south-west of York on the right of the Tadcaster Road. It covers an area of one and a half miles by a quarter or half-mile. The peat is eight feet deep, and in wet weather the bog is impassable

from the depth of water. Other peat deposits are found near the Bishopthorpe Road, in St. Paul's Square and in Messrs. Backhouse's Nurseries.

Glacial gravels of considerable economic value have been laid down on either side of the Ouse, and have been worked for sale for some time. Those on the left bank are still worked, and bones have been found among them at various times.\*

Since the last visit of the British Association to York, the North Eastern Railway Company has doubled the line between York and Church Fenton ; in the course of this many thousand tons of glacial matter were removed. Nothing, however, of any permanent interest was exposed, but only a dead uniformity of deposition, though many of the limestone boulders were both beautifully polished and deeply striated. One remarkable boulder was of limestone, left by itself in the form of three steps, almost as perfect as if laid by a mason. It may be seen on the left of the line between Copmanthorpe and Bolton Percy, 300 yards beyond the first-named station.

The writer of these notes suggests that the key to the explanation of the morainic deposits is to be found in collecting specimens of igneous rocks and establishing their affinities with known igneous rocks, for these rocks are harder and bear better the pounding and crushing due to ice-movements. Many huge *blocks* of millstone-grit, mountain limestone and Shap granite have been collected at various times. The local custom is, when a huge block is discovered, to dig round and under it, and thus bury it below the reach of spade or ploughshare. Some blocks,

---

\* The deposits at Overton, three miles north of York, yielded remains of mammoth, hippopotamus and rhinoceros ; those at Middlethorpe, rhinoceros (also at Deighton), cave-bear, bison, rein-deer, red-deer and *Bos longifrons*. The three last-named were also found in the peat under Parliament Street. See Clark, *Yorks. Geol. and Polytechn. Journ.*, VII., p. 428.—ED.

however, have been rescued, and are to be seen along the chief walks in the Museum Gardens.

Smaller pieces, many of them quite angular, include a typical granite, Dalbeattie granite, basalt, a green schistose rock of uncertain origin, sandstone cherts and flints much weathered. The chalk and sandstone rocks are not likely to endure much crushing from ice, yet both chalky marl and red sandstone may be seen among the clays.

The drainage of the area round York is confined to the River Ouse and some of its smallest feeders, the Derwent and the Wharfe, on the east and west respectively, being eight or nine miles distant. The Foss (its latin name probably implying construction by the Romans) is a combination of natural and artificial drainage. It is now no longer used for trade purposes above York.

No fact known to the writer shows so clearly the almost dead level of the Plain of York as the course of two small feeders of the Ouse. The one, commencing on the left of Stockton Lane, two fields from Tang Hall Beck, follows a most sinuous course mostly to the north, and discharges into the Foss near Huntington. The other, draining Hob Moor, flows past the foot of Severus Hill through the Railway Works, and enters the Ouse a little below the Waterworks. Both these streams flow in the opposite direction to the fall of the Ouse. It is possible the latter may be the original course of the River Ouse. It is a direct line over flat land from the Waterworks to Bishopthorpe, avoiding the detour by Clifton and Bootham.

The Museum of the Yorkshire Philosophical Society contains a unique collection of fossils, many of which were found, described and named by Smith, Phillips, and other authorities. Visitors will be interested in the collection of bones and shells from the ossiferous marl deposit of Bielbecks, near Market Weighton. Phillips described them in the *Philosophical Magazine* for September, 1829, the

collection, enriched by later discoveries, being at a later date given to the Yorkshire Museum, by Wm. Worsley, Esq., of Hovingham. The excavations were commenced by the tenant of the farm, who desired to improve the poor sand land by spreading over it the argillaceous marl. Phillips gives the following section for the excavation :—

	ft. in.
1. Black sand at the surface .. .. ..	0 9
2. Yellow sand .. .. .. ..	1 6
3. White gravel, consisting of small pebbles of chalk and angular fragments of flint, with a few pieces of <i>Gryphaea Incurva</i> and fewer pebbles of sandstone, varying in thickness, average .. .. ..	2 6
4. Blue marl, irregularly penetrated by gravel (No. 3) and partially chequered by it..	5 0
5. Commencement of a blacker marl, which had been excavated to a depth of ten feet, and contained most of the bones and shells.	

From a second pit were obtained bones of the following animals :—*Elephas primigenius*, horse, rhinoceros, bison, wolf, deer, duck, with many shells of *Planorbis complanatus*, and *Limnaea palustris* and vegetable remains, including jointed stems. A curious feature of the deposit is its limited extent, for it appears to be only fifty or sixty yards across it. Evidently it is the site of a marshy pool or lake, fed by a small stream. On the banks of the stream, or in the stream itself, lived most of the creatures, whose remains were swept into the lake, to be covered over to a considerable depth by marl and gravel, brought there by a stronger current of water. This movement, Phillips deems anterior to the movement which brought Shap granite and other Cumbrian rocks over the pass of Stainmoor, and spread them over the Plain of York.

Some drainage works recently carried out by Messrs. Fairbank, C.E., Lendal, York, have given instructive details of the variation, both vertical and horizontal, in the composition of the long moraine upon which Dringhouses stands. By their kind consent the chief vertical section is appended.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY.

*Memoirs of the Geological Survey*, descriptive of the district.

CLARK AND PLATNAUER, in *North Yorkshire* (J. G. BAKER).

DAVIS AND LEES. — *West Yorkshire* (contains a bibliography).

FOX-STRANGWAYS.—*Jurassic Rocks of Britain*. See also *Memoirs Geol. Survey*.

KENDALL.—*Glaciation of Yorkshire* (Proc. Yorks. Geol. & Polytechn. Soc., 1893).

*Glacier Lakes in the Cleveland Hills* (Quart. Journ. Geol. Soc., Ixviii., 1902).

*Geol. Conditions of Underground Water Supply*. Trans. Hull Geol. Soc. (1900).

*Underground Waters of N.W. Yorks.* (Proc. Yorks. Geol. & Polytechn. Soc., 1900).

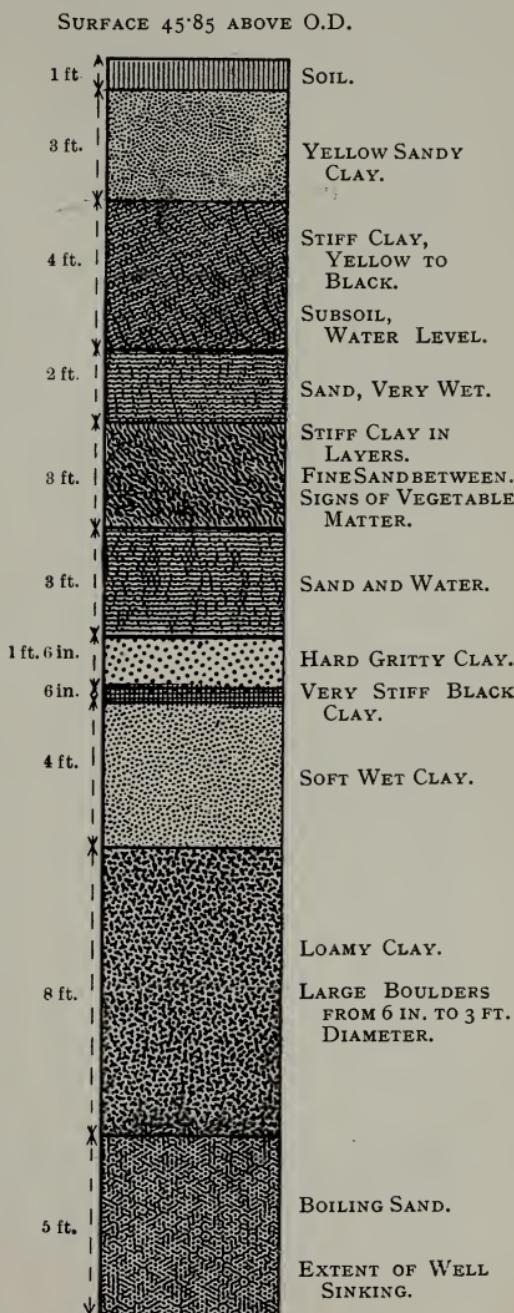
PHILLIPS.—*Geology of Yorkshire* (2nd ed., 1876).

*Rivers, Mountains and Sea Coast of Yorkshire* (1855)

REED.—*Rivers of East Yorkshire* (1901).

SHEPPARD.—*Geological Rambles in East Yorkshire*.

See also bibliography published from time to time in *The Naturalist*.



## BOTANY.

### GENERAL SURVEY.

WILLIAM G. SMITH, B.Sc., PH.D.

**A**N inspection of an orographical map will show that the City of York is situated near the junction of the upper limbs of a great Y-shaped valley, the lower limb of which extends south to the Humber and beyond. The immediate neighbourhood for at least fifteen miles in each direction is a plain of cultivation, and the original natural vegetation is represented only in some small areas more or less primitive in character. The York district selected for this account is an arbitrary area with York in the centre, and includes all places within twenty to twenty-five miles from the city. The chief places of botanical interest in the district have been arranged as a series of short excursions to selected places, in Mr. H. J. Wilkinson's account of the Phanerogams and Vascular Cryptogams, and in Mr. W. Ingham's account of the Non-vascular Cryptogams. This brief general description of a wider area is intended to indicate the character of the vegetation on the surrounding uplands and thence downwards to the Vale of York.

The natural limits of the vegetation of York district are the watersheds of the main streams, the Ouse, the Derwent, and other rivers. The Ouse as it flows through York brings the waters of the Nidd, Ure and Swale, which drain the Pennines as far off as 100 miles to the north-west. Soon after passing York, the Ouse receives the Wharfe and Aire from that part of the Pennines almost due west of York. Two other streams—the Foss, which passes

through York, and the Derwent, which is eight miles east of York—drain another hill mass, the North York moors which extend to within a few miles of the North Sea, near Scarborough. The Derwent also drains the north-western part of the upland chalk wolds lying east of York. This large area, bounded by the Pennines, the Tees-Swale and the Derwent-Esk watersheds, and the wolds, is limited on the south by the estuary of the Humber. The area has been examined by many botanists, and an extensive literature on its flora and vegetation is available. The method of Mr. J. G. Baker, in his *Introduction to North Yorkshire* (1885),\* has influenced all the more recent literature on the botany of Yorkshire, and it has been followed up in the *Flora of West Yorkshire* (1888), and in the *Flora of the East Riding of Yorkshire* (1902), as well as in other works dealing with smaller districts. Mr. Baker's Introduction lends itself to the purposes of this Handbook, and it may be regarded as the basis of this account. The preparation of maps showing the larger plant formations is now in progress, and two maps have been published which include the area from the west side of York to the Pennines (Smith, Moss and Rankin, 1903). A certain amount of unpublished work on the same lines for districts within or adjacent to the York district has also been utilised.

#### THE UPLANDS.

The vegetation of the western and northern watershed areas already referred to is almost primitive, and has been little influenced by man; the eastern watershed on the chalk wolds scarcely attains an altitude of 800 feet, and is almost

---

\* The numbers in brackets after an author's name indicate the year in which a book or paper was published. The titles of the works referred to will be found in the List of References at the end of Mr. H. J. Wilkinson's paper (p. 293).

entirely under cultivation. The watershed plateaux with a natural vegetation form a convenient starting point from which to review the main features of the vegetation.

### THE NORTH YORK MOORS.

These lie on the Derwent-Esk watershed, and rise to about 1,400 feet altitude. The underlying rocks are sandstones and shales of the lower oolite, and the dominant vegetation is heather moor of a very uniform type. On the upper moors the heather or ling (*Calluna Erica*) extends for miles almost unbroken, occasionally interrupted by intrusion of the pink bell heath (*Erica Tetralix*) and cotton grass (*Eriophorum*) associations, where moister conditions and deeper peat are found. The glaciation of these hills referred to in the account of the geology of this district (see p. 260) has an influence on the vegetation of the present time. The overflow valleys referred to by Professor P. F. Kendall (1902) can be distinguished from the surrounding heather moor by the abundance of cotton grass, rushes, sedges, etc., consequent on the greater moisture and increased depth of peat in these depressions. There is also a very conspicuous development of bracken (*Pteris aquilina*) amongst the heather on the moorland slopes of the valleys downwards from about 800 feet; this bracken zone is especially conspicuous in the areas formerly occupied by glacial lakes. The lower margin of the moorland is distinguished by a zone of plantations of Scots pine, larch and other coniferae. There is as yet no good evidence that Scots pine ever formed natural forest on these moors, but at the present time seedlings from the plantations can be traced for considerable distances over the heather moors. The change from moorland to the zone of woods and farmland on the north side of the Vale of Pickering is roughly coincident with the change from the sandstones of the lower oolite to the more calcareous strata of the middle oolite. The undulating moorland

plateau is replaced by deep valleys which are well wooded. The dominant trees are oak and ash, with a variety of other timber trees in the case of plantations. The ground vegetation of these woods is luxuriant and includes numerous species of plants. The higher ground between the valleys is farmland with some woods, and as the descent is made towards the Vales of Pickering or York, cultivation monopolises more and more of the surface.

### THE PENNINES.

This, the main watershed of the North of England, is cut by a distinct gap at Skipton. South of that gap the range is rather narrow, and is made up of the millstone grit series of rocks. It varies little in character until the sandstones and limestones of the hill mass of the Derbyshire Peak district are reached. The vegetation of this part of the Pennine watershed is very uniform, consisting chiefly of cotton grass moor on deep peat (10-25 feet), which occupies a high undulating plateau varying from 1,250 to 1,900 feet in altitude. As cotton grass is almost the only plant, this part of the watershed has little to tempt the floristic botanist ; but the formation is of interest because the deep peat contains a record of successive phases of vegetation, which has not yet been read. The descent from the cotton grass plateau to the valleys is abrupt. The waters from the moor, gathered into narrow but well-marked streams, descend abruptly over a precipitous edge, excavating it backwards and downwards to form a gorge with a steep head, and steep rocky slopes littered with weathering sandstones and shales. These gorges, locally known as "cloughs," are a characteristic feature of the upper waters of the Calder. Extensive oak forests occurred in earlier times in all the valleys, but now, little is left of these in a district with more manufacturing centres than any other part of Britain. The forest was at one time carried on to the higher

moors as a scrub of birch and other small trees, the remains of which are found in the peat.

The comparatively simple vegetation of the South Pennine moors of Yorkshire contrasts strongly with that of the broad and complex hill mass of Craven and the north-west of the county. The geological formations represented are the silurian, the carboniferous mountain limestone, and the millstone grit. The vegetation presents types which agree generally with the main rocks. The steep grassy slopes of the silurian hills and the V-shaped valleys are striking features of the landscape in the extreme north-west of the county, and in parts of Westmoreland lying beyond the limits of our present area. The contrast between the vegetation of the millstone grit and that of the mountain limestone is the most striking feature of north-west Yorkshire. The vegetation of Upper Wharfedale and Nidderdale is included in the botanical surveys already mentioned (Smith, 1903), which may be referred to for more details. The general features are determined chiefly by the distribution of the mountain limestone, which forms the slopes of most of the great valleys up to a height of about 1,500 feet. The slopes are grass-covered, and provide grazing for sheep, the walls of white limestone enclosing the pastures being a ready means of locating the limestone vegetation. The limestone is capped by the millstone grit which follows all the main hill ridges, and forms the summits of the chief peaks—Penyghent, Great Whernside, Pen Hill, etc. Peat occurs on the millstone grit, and on it cotton grass, heather, and *Vaccinium* make up the mass of the vegetation; there is, however, much greater variation within short distances than is found on the South Pennine moors. Some of the ridges do not attain sufficient height to have the millstone grit cap, and consist entirely of mountain limestone, but it may be noted that on the flatter summits deposits of peat

have formed, and on these are tracts of heather and other peat plants not generally regarded as occurring on limestone. Descending from the summits to the valleys over the pasturage of the mountain limestone slopes, a characteristic vegetation is met with, which, although it consists mainly of grasses, is rich in early-flowering plants with conspicuous flowers, and, as a whole, recalls the "Alpen-wiesen" of Switzerland and the Tyrol. These slopes have been used for a long period as pasturage for sheep, and it is a problem to what extent the present vegetation is natural to the limestone, and how far it is due to long-continued grazing. The absence of trees is a noteworthy feature of the limestone dales. Any forest which may have existed, is now represented only by scrubs or thickets of hazel and hawthorn, with occasional ash trees. The absence of oak in these valleys is very marked, and it has been confirmed by careful recent observations.

### THE WOLDS.

Although the Wolds rank amongst the watersheds of the York area, they attain 800 feet in one place only, and are almost entirely under cultivation. They have, however, a characteristic vegetation, the main features of which may be indicated by a few selections from the *Flora of the East Riding* (1902) : "The Wolds, a range of hills of no great altitude, stretch in a curve from Flamborough Head towards the Humber at Hessle." "The surface weathering of the chalk has resulted in a series of rather monotonous undulating uplands (locally called wold or field), cut into by numerous dales, steep-sided and V-shaped in vertical section." "Many of these are dry and without the appearance of any running water in them, and are not infrequently partially filled in with chalk and flint gravel." "It is on these gravels, and also on the slopes of the dales, that the botanist will do his best work

amongst the xerophiles." "The soil covering the wolds and the slopes of their dales, except where derived from the boulder clay sometimes superincumbent on them, is of extreme thinness, being rarely more than a few inches in depth, and does not admit of, or require, deep ploughing." Although a dry region with a low rainfall, "yet these low hills are well-adapted to the growth of beech trees, barley and oats." "The pastures of the higher wolds do not strike one as being luxuriant." An old account, written in 1641, says : "Most of the grass that groweth on the landes of the wolds is a small sparrie and dry grass, and sheep do not like it till such time as it bee well nipped with frostes." So recently as 1894, the evidence before a Royal Commission stated "that there was very little land laid down to grass on the wolds, and that if it be laid down, it will scarcely keep a sheep an acre: after the third year it is worthless." The wolds, therefore, have many features in common with the pastures of the mountain limestone, where, however, a high rainfall (up to 60 inches) does much to compensate for the underground drainage. Forest has probably never established itself on the wold plateau, but there is a well-defined zone of woods on the escarpments at the present time, and beech may be regarded as the dominant tree.

#### THE VALLEYS OR DALES.

The uplands of the area were probably never occupied by any forest, except thickets of birch, hazel, or hawthorn. The dales, on the other hand, have been typical forest within historical times. There are few remains of the primitive forest, but in some parts the woods have been little interfered with, and still retain a natural appearance; in most cases, however, plantations have replaced original woods. Several types of tree vegetation can be recognised and correlated with the moorland types

of vegetation. Oak is the dominant tree of the millstone grit part of the Pennines. In the limestone valleys in north-west Yorkshire the oak is rare, except on the alluvial plains of the rivers. Ash is the characteristic tree of the mountain limestone, and there it produces good timber. Where the soil consists of sandstones and limestones, oak and ash are both very abundant. This is the case on the Permian tract in the neighbourhood of Ripon, Knaresborough, Wetherby and Pontefract; on mixed soils of glacial origin, in the lower parts of Wensleydale; and again, in the oolitic valleys, on the north side of the Vale of Pickering. In these sandstone-limestone soils, ash is regarded as a weed in the plantations, since it grows wherever there is a break due to wind or to other causes, but it does not in all places produce good timber. Beech is a common tree in the neighbourhood of York, extending from the Permian tract in the west to the Wold valleys in the east. If the beech is native in Yorkshire, it is within this area, and, although common enough in plantations on the lower slopes of the Pennines, it is there regarded as introduced. The sycamore is another doubtful native tree which is found in every plantation, and readily springs up from seed. The Scots pine is planted with other conifers throughout the area. The largest plantations form a zone on the lower margin of the heather moors; there are also numerous woods on the poorer sandy soils of the Vales of York and Pickering. There is as yet no direct evidence that Scots pine formed natural woods on the upland moors of the York area, but remains of the tree have been reported from peat deposits in the Vale of York. Yew is found native on the escarpments of the mountain limestone in the dales. Juniper is a rare plant of the dales, but is common in Swaledale.

The valleys of this area are under cultivation almost to their heads. On the north-eastern moors

arable land is found, as a rule, at higher altitudes than in the Pennine valleys, which are chiefly under grass. The glaciation of the lowlands has resulted in deposits of all kinds, from poor sands and gravels to compact boulder clays. These extremes are well marked in the immediate vicinity of York, and a study of them is being carried out by Mr. Hugh Richardson, of Bootham School. Although the district is closely cultivated, there are parts which have never been brought under cultivation because the soil is too poor or swampy, and from these much information regarding the natural vegetation has been obtained. The first enclosure of farmland in the Vales of York and Pickering was from the forest. The clearing of the Royal Forest of Galtres took place from 1670 onwards (see p. 278). The more recent enclosures for farmland were those made from the heath and the river swamps or "carrs." Hutton Moor, near Ripon, is given as an example of heathland enclosure (*Baker's North Yorkshire*, 1885). A similar operation is evidently indicated by the following extract : Wednesday, 19th August, 1795. "Arrive at Knaresborough Forest, some time ago begun to be cultivated and enclosed by the direction of the Earl of Bute. The grounds here are hilly, heathy and poor." (*Diary of a Tour Through Great Britain in 1795*, by Rev. W. MacRitchie.) The enclosure of the "carrs" or riverside flood-plains is also recent : "The Vale of Pickering was mainly covered with marshes and meres, which gave their names to numerous places ; many of these are mentioned in Domesday." "The drainage of this district was commenced under the powers of the Muston and Yedingham Drainage Act, which was passed in 1800." "By this means great improvement was effected over the eastern portion of the valley ; but the drainage of the western end still requires to be undertaken." (*Mem. of Geol. Survey, Yorkshire*, Vol. I.) These and similar places in the Vale of York

still contain many interesting plants ; Askham Bog—one of the best—is described later (see p. 279).

This general and somewhat superficial account of the vegetation of the drainage basin of York may serve to give some idea of the exceedingly varied and interesting features of the botany of the area which lies within and beyond the more restricted district of York, dealt with in the following articles.

---

## PHANEROGAMIC FLORA AND VASCULAR CRYPTOGAMS.

HENRY J. WILKINSON,

Hon. Curator (Botany), Yorkshire Philosophical Society.

Of the Phanerogams and Vascular Cryptogams enumerated in the London Catalogue of British plants, ninth edition, 1895, about seventy-five per cent. have been recorded for Yorkshire.

The following types of distribution are represented in Yorkshire :—

**British Type**—species generally distributed through Britain.

**English Type**—species having their headquarters in the southern districts, and running out northwards.

**Scottish Type**—species having their headquarters in Scotland, and running out southwards.

**Germanic Type**—species chiefly located in East England.

**Atlantic Type**—species chiefly confined to West England.

**Highland Type**—species confined to the mountains.

The Flora of York and district is composed chiefly of the British and English types, although representatives of the Scottish and Germanic types occur.

York is the central point where the North, East and West Ridings touch one another. These Ridings (or divisions) are represented in Watson's *Top. Bot.* by Vice-Counties 61, 62, 64. The City of York is intersected by the River Ouse, and this natural division must be observed in recording plants found on the banks of the Ouse above or below York.

The following places, within easy reach of the city, will be found of interest to those who desire to investigate the Flora of York and district, either in regard to the distribution of species or plant associations.

Starting from Lendal Bridge, York, and following the River Ouse by the Museum Gardens and Esplanade, we come to Clifton Scope, where a colony of *Ægopodium Podagraria* has been established for many years. Higher up the bank may be seen *Potentilla reptans*, *Sisymbrium officinale*, *Ballota nigra*, *Potentilla Anserina*, *Pimpinella major*, and if we continue our walk we reach

Clifton Ings (about a mile above the city), V.C. 62, N.E. Yorks. These "Ings" may be regarded as a fair type of "grassland" to be met with in the flat cultivated central Vale of York.

Along the banks of the River Ouse from Clifton Ings to Poppleton Railway Bridge the following plants occur :—

<i>Petasites officinalis</i> ,	<i>Stellaria aquatica</i> ,
<i>Artemisia vulgaris</i> ,	<i>Stellaria graminea</i> ,
<i>Tanacetum vulgare</i> ,	<i>Geranium pratense</i> ,
<i>Tussilago Farfara</i> ,	<i>Geranium molle</i> ,
<i>Saponaria officinalis</i> ,	<i>Geranium columbinum</i> ,
<i>Linaria vulgaris</i> ,	<i>Hieracium Pilosella</i> ,
<i>Salix alba</i> ,	<i>Cnicus palustris</i> ,
<i>Salix fragilis</i> ,	<i>Conium maculatum</i> ,
<i>Rumex crispus</i> ,	<i>Reseda Luteola</i> ,
<i>Rumex domesticus</i> ,	<i>Pimpinella major</i> ,
<i>Stellaria media</i> ,	<i>Cerastium arvense</i> ,

whilst in the river may be seen

*Potamogeton pectinatus*, etc.

On the Ings, and in the ditches, the following plants have been recorded :—

*Silaus flavescens,*  
*Anthriscus sylvestris,*  
*Heracleum Sphondylium,*  
*Campanula glomerata,*  
*Campanula latifolia,*  
*Valeriana officinalis,*  
*Tragopogon pratense,*  
*Menyanthes trifoliata,*  
*Polygonum Bistorta,*  
*Chenopodium urbicum,*  
*Allium vineale,*  
*Colchicum autumnale,*  
*Habenaria conopsea,*  
*Orchis ustulata,*  
*Orchis Morio,*  
*Orchis maculata,*  
*Habenaria viridis,*  
*Poterium Sanguisorba,*  
*Poterium officinale,*  
*Thalictrum flavum,*  
*Barbarea stricta,*  
*Anemone nemorosa,*  
*Caltha palustris,*  
*Ranunculus hederaceus,*  
*Ranunculus peltatus,*  
*Ranunculus Flammula,*  
*Spiraea Ulmaria,*  
*Cardamine pratensis,*  
*Cardamine amara,*  
*Nasturtium officinale,*  
*Nasturtium palustre,*  
*Nasturtium amphibium,*  
*Lychnis Flos-cuculi,*  
*Myosotis palustris,*  
*Plantago major,*  
*Plantago media,*  
*Plantago lanceolata,*

*Lemna minor,*  
*Lemna trisulca,*  
*Alisma*  
*Plantago-aquatica,*  
*Sparganium simplex,*  
*Scirpus sylvaticus,*  
*Scirpus fluitans,*  
*Juncus Gerardi,*  
*Carex disticha,*  
*Carex vulpina,*  
*Carex ovalis,*  
*Phalaris arundinacea,*  
*Anthoxanthum odoratum,*  
*Alopecurus geniculatus,*  
*Alopecurus bulbosus,*  
*Alopecurus pratensis,*  
*Phleum pratense,*  
*Agrostis vulgaris,*  
*Deschampsia cæspitosa,*  
*Holcus mollis,*  
*Holcus lanatus,*  
*Avena pratensis,*  
*Avena pubescens,*  
*Arrhenatherum*  
*avenaceum,*  
*Cynosurus cristatus,*  
*Dactylis glomerata,*  
*Briza media,*  
*Poa annua,*  
*Poa pratensis,*  
*Poa trivialis,*  
*Glyceria fluitans,*  
*Festuca elatior,*  
*Bromus commutatus,*  
*Bromus mollis,*  
*Lolium perenne,*  
*Hordeum secalinum,*

In considering the above list of plants, it may be remarked that Clifton formed a part of the large Forest of Galtres, which extended from York to the River Tees. In the fifteenth century, persons travelling northwards were usually accompanied through the Forest by armed guides, who were stationed at Bootham Bar, York. After sunset a beacon fire in the beautiful lantern tower of All Saints' Church, Pavement, York, cast its light over the surrounding country to guide the traveller. After 1670, a great portion of the Forest was cleared. The land was brought under cultivation, and the level tract of "Clifton Ings" was used as a racecourse; also for pasturage, etc.

The influence of the River Ouse on the flora of Clifton Ings must also be considered. Two hundred years ago the tide rose two feet at Clifton Ings. Since the making of Naburn Lock, about five miles below York (in 1727), and its improvement (1888), the tidal influence has decreased, although when the Lock is open the tide reaches Clifton Ings. The central portion of the Ings is not infrequently flooded in winter.

Crossing the River Ouse by the ferry beyond Poppleton railway bridge, we come to Lower and Upper Poppleton (V.C. 64, M.W.). The soil is of a light and sandy nature, and a great trade was formerly done in this district by the cultivation of *Mentha piperita* (for oil and essence of peppermint) and *Papaver somniferum* (for opium, etc.).

At the next village, Acomb (or as it was formerly named, Akeham), we have evidence at the present time of sandpits, and the name indicates the presence of oak trees, and associations of the forest. Between Poppleton and Acomb (about three miles from York) the light sandy soil produces a type of plants somewhat different from that of Clifton Ings, such as:—

*Veronica triphyllus,*  
*Vicia lathyroides,*  
*Ornithopus perpusillus,*  
*Trifolium filiforme,*  
*Sisymbrium Thalianum,*  
*Chelidonium majus,*  
*Myosurus minimus,*  
*Cerastium*  
     *semidecandrum,*  
*Geranium pusillum,*  
*Ulex europaeus,*  
*Volvulus sepium,*  
*Allium vineale,*

*Carex verna,*  
*Rosa arvensis,*  
*Rosa canina,*  
*Rosa mollis,*  
*Rosa tomentosa,*  
*Scilla festalis,*  
*Luzula vernalis,*  
*Quercus Robur,*  
*Corylus Avellana,*  
*Ulmus campestris,*  
*Fraxinus excelsior,*  
*Acer campestre,*  
*Pteris aquilina,*

**Askham Bogs** (about two miles from York, V.C. 64, M.W.). This well-known and interesting haunt of the botanist may be regarded as a type of conditions which formerly prevailed over the Vale of York. In the first portion of the Bogs (Chandler's Whin) and adjoining brickponds, the following plants have been found :—

<i>Typha latifolia,</i>	<i>Ulex europaeus,</i>
<i>Typha angustifolia,</i>	<i>Betula verrucosa,</i>
<i>Iris Pseudacorus,</i>	<i>Corylus Avellana,</i>
<i>Sparganium ramosum,</i>	<i>Quercus Robur,</i>
<i>Sparganium simplex,</i>	<i>Fraxinus excelsior,</i>
<i>Sparganium minimum,</i>	<i>Salix Caprea,</i>
<i>Limnanthemum peltatum,</i>	<i>Salix aurita,</i>
<i>Potamogeton natans,</i>	<i>Salix fragilis,</i>
<i>Potamogeton</i> <i>polygonifolius,</i>	<i>Salix pentandra,</i>
<i>Potamogeton</i> <i>obtusifolius,</i>	<i>Pyrus Aucuparia,</i>
<i>Butomus umbellatus,</i>	<i>Lysimachia</i>
<i>Hottonia palustris,</i>	<i>Nummularia,</i>
<i>Samolus Valerandi,</i>	<i>Lycopsis arvensis,</i>
<i>Rumex Hydrolapathum,</i>	<i>Rosa arvensis,</i>
<i>Utricularia vulgaris,</i>	<i>Rosa canina,</i>
<i>Carex Hudsonii,</i>	<i>Rosa mollis,</i>
	<i>Rosa tomentosa,</i>
	<i>Rubus rhamnifolius,</i>

*Carex acuta,*  
*Carex remota,*  
*Carex axillaris,*  
*Carex vulpina,*  
*Equisetum palustre,*  
*Equisetum limosum,*

*Rubus Lindleianus,*  
*Rubus villicaulis,*  
*Pteris aquilina,*  
*Ophioglossum vulgatum.*

Beyond Chandler's Whin and in the "Far Wood," we meet with marshy and peaty land resting on clay. The dense undergrowth and bushes and trees consist of :—

*Myrica Gale,*  
*Alnus glutinosa,*  
*Rhamnus Frangula,*  
*Rubus cæsius,*

*Cladium jamaicense,*  
*Carex paradoxa,*  
*Juncus obtusifolius,*

also

*Lastræa Thelypteris,*  
*Lastræa Filix-mas,*  
*Lastræa dilatata,*

*Lastrea spinulosa,*  
*Osmunda regalis,*  
*Athyrium Filix-fæmina,*

and the following grasses :—

*Calamagrostis lanceolata,*  
*Phragmites communis,*

*Deschampsia cæspitosa,*  
*Molinia varia.*

In the ditches and the adjoining land :—

*Ranunculus Lingua,*  
*Ranunculus Flammula,*  
*Ranunculus circinatus,*  
*Ranunculus peltatus,*  
*Caltha palustris,*  
*Nasturtium officinale,*  
*Stellaria graminea,*  
*Stellaria Holostea,*  
*Stellaria palustris,*  
*Viola palustris,*  
*Hydrocharis Morsus-ranæ,*  
*Triglochin palustre,*  
*Lathyrus palustris,*  
*Lemna trisulca,*

*Parnassia palustris,*  
*Cnicus pratensis,*  
*Potentilla palustris,*  
*Lysimachia vulgaris,*  
*Scutellaria galericulata,*  
*Ajuga reptans,*  
*Hieracium umbellatum,*  
*Serratula tinctoria,*  
*Orchis Morio,*  
*Orchis incarnata,*  
*Carex pulicaris,*  
*Carex echinata,*  
*Carex ovalis,*  
*Carex Goodenowii,*  
*Carex flacca,*

<i>Lemna minor,</i>	<i>Carex limosa,</i>
<i>Lemna gibba,</i>	<i>Carex panicea,</i>
<i>Lemna polyrrhiza,</i>	<i>Carex fulva,</i>
<i>Callitricha stagnalis,</i>	<i>Carex flava,</i>
<i>Veronica scutellata,</i>	<i>Carex filiformis,</i>
<i>Narthecium Ossifragum,</i>	<i>Carex Pseudo-cyperus,</i>
<i>Pedicularis palustris,</i>	<i>Carex riparia,</i>
<i>Lythrum Salicaria,</i>	<i>Carex rostrata,</i>
<i>Myriophyllum alterniflorum,</i>	<i>Carex vesicaria,</i>
<i>Œnanthe fistulosa,</i>	<i>Lastrea cristata,</i>
<i>Œnanthe Phellandrium,</i>	<i>Lycopodium inundatum,</i>
<i>Lotus uliginosus,</i>	<i>Chara fragilis,</i>
<i>Spiraea Ulmaria,</i>	<i>Chara vulgaris.</i>

Knaresborough (V.C. 64, M.W., about seventeen miles from York). The flora of the picturesque valley of the River Nidd may be investigated either above or below Knaresborough. The well-wooded banks of the Nidd consist of :—

<i>Quercus Robur,</i>	<i>Ulmus surculosa,</i>
<i>Fagus sylvatica,</i>	<i>Corylus Avellana,</i>
<i>Alnus glutinosa,</i>	<i>Cratægus oxyacantha,</i>
<i>Betula verrucosa,</i>	<i>Taxus baccata,</i>
<i>Populus tremula,</i>	<i>Fraxinus excelsior,</i>
<i>Ulmus montana,</i>	

along with

<i>Pinus sylvestris,</i>	<i>Tilia parvifolia,</i>
<i>Larix europæa,</i>	<i>Tilia platyphyllos,</i>
<i>Salix viminalis,</i>	<i>Carpinus Betulus,</i>
<i>Salix triandra,</i>	<i>Tilia vulgaris,</i>
<i>Salix aurita,</i>	<i>Acer Pseudo-platanus,</i>
<i>Salix Caprea,</i>	<i>Populus nigra.</i>

On the exposed sections of magnesian limestone the following plants have been found :—

<i>Aquilegia vulgaris,</i>	<i>Atropa Belladonna,</i>
<i>Cheiranthus Cheiri,</i>	<i>Lamium Galeobdolon,</i>
<i>Silene nutans,</i>	<i>Parietaria officinalis,</i>
<i>Hypericum montanum,</i>	<i>Anthriscus vulgaris,</i>

*Helianthemum*  
*Chamæcistus,*  
*Linum catharticum,*  
*Geranium sanguineum,*  
*Asperula cynanchica,*  
*Carduus nutans,*  
*Arenaria tenuifolia,*

*Silaus flavescens,*  
*Asplenium Trichomanes,*  
*Asplenium Ruta-*  
*muraria,*  
*Orchis pyramidalis,*  
*Ophrys apifera,*  
*Spiranthes autumnalis.*

In the hedges may be found :—

*Berberis vulgaris,*  
*Ilex Aquifolium,*  
*Euonymus europæus,*

*Acer campestris,*  
*Rhamnus catharticus,*  
*Prunus spinosa.*

By the river, and in shady places in the woods, may be found :—

*Crepis paludosa,*  
*Cochlearia officinalis,*  
*Stellaria nemorum,*  
*Paris quadrifolia,*  
*Mercurialis perennis,*  
*Luzula maxima,*  
*Luzula vernalis,*  
*Ophrys muscifera,*  
*Allium ursinum,*  
*Allium vineale,*  
*Sanicula europæa,*  
*Helleborus viridis,*  
*Equisetum maximum,*  
*Scilla festalis,*  
*Equisetum sylvaticum,*  
*Scirpus sylvaticus,*  
*Cnicus heterophyllum,*

*Campanula latifolia,*  
*Carex pendula,*  
*Carex sylvatica,*  
*Carex pallescens,*  
*Chrysosplenium*  
*oppositifolium,*  
*Chrysosplenium*  
*alternifolium,*  
*Mimulus luteus,*  
*Lysimachia nemorum,*  
*Geranium sylvaticum,*  
*Geranium pratense,*  
*Polypodium vulgare,*  
*Cystopteris fragilis,*  
*Polystichum lobatum,*  
*Lomaria Spicant,*  
*Lastæa Filix-mas.*

In the "mires" and swampy places :—

*Epipactis palustris,*  
*Primula farinosa,*  
*Trollius europæus,*  
*Myriophyllum*  
*alterniflorum,*

*Anagallis tenella,*  
*Lythrum Salicaria,*  
*Menyanthes trifoliata,*  
*Chara hispida,*  
*Scirpus Caricis,*

and in the meadows and pastures :—

*Orchis ustulata,*

*Colchicum autumnale.*

**Foss District.**—The vegetation in the River Foss, on its banks and adjoining land, can be investigated by starting from Yearsley Bridge and following the River Foss to Huntington (three miles from York, V.C. 62, N.E.). On the banks and ditches may be found :—

*Ranunculus Flammula,*  
*Ranunculus sceleratus,*  
*Ranunculus peltatus,*  
*Ranunculus hederaceus,*  
*Caltha palustris,*  
*Barbarea stricta,*  
*Barbarea vulgaris,*  
*Nasturtium officinale,*  
*Nasturtium amphibium,*  
*Lychnis Flos-cuculi,*  
*Stellaria aquatica,*

*Mentha hirsuta,*  
*Lathyrus pratensis,*  
*Bidens cernua,*  
*Iris Pseudacorus,*  
*Epilobium palustre,*  
*Angelica sylvestris,*  
*Pimpinella major,*  
*Glyceria aquatica,*  
*Hottonia palustris,*  
*Myosotis palustris.*

In the river :—

*Nymphaea lutea,*  
*Castalia speciosa,*  
*Potamogeton lucens,*  
*Potamogeton pusillus,*  
*Potamogeton densus,*  
*Potamogeton Friesii,*  
*Oenanthe fistulosa,*  
*Oenanthe Phellandrium,*  
*Myriophyllum alterniflorum,*  
*Sium latifolium,*  
*Sium erectum,*

*Elodea canadensis,*  
*Alisma Plantago-aquatica,*  
*Sagittaria sagittifolia,*  
*Butomus umbellatus,*  
*Glyceria fluitans,*  
*Glyceria aquatica,*  
*Scirpus lacustris,*  
*Carex acuta,*  
*Equisetum limosum,*  
*Equisetum palustre.*

**Strensall** (V.C. 62, N.E., about six miles from York). The sandy heath known as Strensall Common has undergone a great change since it was acquired by the Government in 1881 for military purposes.

Numerous “ pools and splashes ” have been drained and filled up, thus destroying the habitat of some very interesting plants. Leaving the Railway Station

and proceeding along the fields by the side of the line to the Common, the following may be observed :—

*Daphne Laureola,*  
*Silene anglica,*  
*Silene noctiflora,*

*Quercus Robur,*  
*Phragmites communis.*

On the dry soil of the Common and adjoining woods may be found :—

*Centunculus minimus,*  
*Radiola linoides,*  
*Polygala vulgaris,*  
*Polygala serpyllacea,*  
*Anthyllis Vulneraria,*  
*Genista anglica,*  
*Ulex europaeus,*  
*Cytisus scoparius,*  
*Linum catharticum,*  
*Ornithopus perpusillus,*  
*Hypericum perforatum,*  
*Hypericum humifusum,*  
*Hypericum pulchrum,*  
*Potentilla silvestris,*  
*Galium saxatile,*  
*Hieracium Pilosella,*  
*Hieracium boreale,*  
*Hieracium umbellatum,*  
*Campanula rotundifolia,*  
*Calluna Erica,*

*Erica Tetralix,*  
*Gentiana campestris,*  
*Erythræa centaurium,*  
*Salix repens,*  
*Habenaria bifolia,*  
*Juncus squarrosus,*  
*Luzula vernalis,*  
*Luzula campestris,*  
*Luzula erecta,*  
*Scirpus cæspitosus,*  
*Scirpus setaceus,*  
*Agrostis canina,*  
*Agrostis vulgaris,*  
*Aira caryophyllea,*  
*Aira præcox,*  
*Nardus stricta,*  
*Deschampsia cæspitosa,*  
*Sieblingia decumbens,*  
*Molinia varia,*  
*Pteris aquilina.*

In the peaty ditches and wet spongy places on the Common and adjoining district, the following plants have been recorded :—

*Ranunculus circinatus,*  
*Ranunculus Flammula,*  
*Hypericum elodes,*  
*Potentilla palustris,*  
*Drosera rotundifolia,*  
*Drosera intermedia,*  
*Hydrocotyle vulgaris,*

*Eleocharis palustris,*  
*Scirpus fluitans,*  
*Scirpus lacustris,*  
*Scirpus Tabernæmontani,*  
*Eriophorum vaginatum,*  
*Eriophorum angustifolium,*

*Peplis portula,*  
*Galium palustre,*  
*Valeriana dioica,*  
*Carduus palustris,*  
*Andromeda polifolia,*  
*Hottonia palustris,*  
*Anagallis tenella,*  
*Samolus Valerandi,*  
*Gentiana Pneumonanthe,*  
*Pedicularis palustris,*  
*Pinguicula vulgaris,*  
*Scutellaria minor,*  
*Littorella junccea,*  
*Narthecium Ossifragum,*  
*Juncus glaucus,*  
*Juncus conglomeratus,*  
*Menyanthes trifoliata,*  
*Sparganium simplex,*  
*Alisma ranunculoides,*  
*Potamogeton natans,*  
*Potamogeton polygonifolius,*  
*Eleocharis acicularis,*  
*Rhynchospora alba,*  
*Carex dioica,*  
*Carex pulicaris,*  
*Carex echinata,*  
*Carex ovalis,*  
*Carex flacca,*  
*Carex fulva,*  
*Carex limosa,*  
*Salix Caprea,*  
*Salix aurita,*  
*Glyceria fluitans,*  
*Lastræa Filix-mas,*  
*Lastræa spinulosa,*  
*Lastræa Oreopteris,*  
*Botrychium Lunaria,*  
*Equisetum palustre,*  
*Equisetum limosum,*  
*Equisetum hyemale,*  
*Lycopodium clavatum,*  
*Lycopodium Selago,*  
*Lycopodium inundatum,*  
*Pilularia globulifera.*

**Derwent Drainage.**—The River Derwent drains a great portion of East and North-east Yorkshire, and cuts through the Oolite Hills at Castle Howard (V.C. 62, N.E. Yorks.) and Kirkham (V.C. 61, S.E. Yorks.). This well-wooded and picturesque gorge (about eighteen miles from York) forms a convenient point for investigating the flora of the Derwent and its tributaries.

In the woods at Castle Howard may be seen very fine specimens of beech, oak, ash, elm, sycamore, larch, spruce and Scots fir.

The following plants have been recorded :—

<i>Actaea spicata,</i>	<i>Listera ovata,</i>
<i>Helleborus viridis,</i>	<i>Gagea fascicularis,</i>
<i>Viola odorata,</i>	<i>Tamus communis,</i>

*Viola hirta,*  
*Euonymus europaeus,*  
*Vicia sylvatica,*  
*Inula Helenium,*  
*Sanicula europaea,*  
*Circæa lutetiana,*  
*Anemone nemorosa,*  
*Allium ursinum,*  
*Scilla festalis,*  
*Primula acaulis,*  
*Lysimachia nemorum,*  
*Asperula odorata,*  
*Lonicera Periclymenum,*  
*Lathræa Squamaria,*  
*Orchis mascula,*  
*Orchis latifolia,*

*Arctium majus,*  
*Luzula maxima,*  
*Luzula vernalis,*  
*Bromus giganteus,*  
*Hordeum sylvaticum,*  
*Melica uniflora,*  
*Lomaria Spicant,*  
*Athyrium Felix-fæmina,*  
*Scolopendrium vulgare,*  
*Polystichum lobatum,*  
*Lastræa dilatata,*  
*Polypodium vulgare,*  
*Phegopteris Dryopteris,*  
*Equisetum sylvaticum,*  
*Equisetum maximum.*

By the side of the Derwent, and in marshy places :—

*Thalictrum flavum,*  
*Ranunculus Lingua,*  
*Potamogeton perfoliatus,*  
*Hippuris vulgaris,*  
*Lythrum salicaria,*  
*Eupatorium cannabinum,*  
*Valeriana dioica,*  
*Valeriana sambucifolia,*

*Catabrosa aquatica,*  
*Calamagrostis epigeios,*  
*Glyceria aquatica,*  
*Carex pulicaris,*  
*Carex acuta,*  
*Carex Goodenowii,*  
*Carex ovalis,*  
*Carex curta.*

In the Carrs (such as at Terrington)

*Drosera anglica,*  
*Drosera rotundifolia,*  
*Utricularia vulgaris,*  
*Scutellaria galericulata,*

*Hottonia palustris,*  
*Narthecium Ossifragum,*  
*Lysimachia vulgaris*

have been found.

In the gravel pits, quarries and dry pastures occur :—

*Dianthus deltoides,*  
*Hypericum montanum,*  
*Genista tinctoria,*  
*Galium erectum,*

*Scabiosa Columbaria,*  
*Solidago Virgaurea,*  
*Spiræa Filipendula,*  
*Specularia hybrida;*

whilst in the woods, in damp and shady places :—

<i>Stellaria nemorum,</i>	<i>Epipactis palustris,</i>
<i>Geum rivale,</i>	<i>Iris Pseudacorus,</i>
<i>Chrysosplenium</i> <i>oppositifolium,</i>	<i>Carex paniculata,</i>
<i>Crepis paludosa,</i>	<i>Carex teretiuscula,</i>
<i>Myrrhis odorata,</i>	<i>Carex remota,</i>
<i>Lactuca muralis,</i>	<i>Carex pallescens,</i>
<i>Calamintha</i> <i>Clinopodium,</i>	<i>Carex sylvatica,</i>
<i>Mercurialis perennis,</i>	<i>Milium effusum,</i>
	<i>Calamagrostis lanceolata</i>

**Helmsley.**—The flora of Ryedale is full of interest, and one of the most convenient centres is Helmsley (V.C. 62, N.E. Yorks.), about twenty miles distant from York.

Leaving the Railway Station, and following the stream through Helmsley into Beckdale, some very fine specimens of oak, ash, elm, beech and hawthorn may be observed.

By the side of the stream may be found :—

<i>Myrrhis odorata,</i>	<i>Petasites officinalis;</i>
<i>Viburnum Opulus,</i>	

and passing through a pleasant glade, we enter a lovely well-wooded ravine.

About the springs which feed the stream, and in the swampy thickets, may be found :—

<i>Chrysosplenium</i> <i>oppositifolium,</i>	<i>Primula farinosa,</i>
<i>Chrysosplenium</i> <i>alternifolium,</i>	<i>Lysimachia</i> <i>Nummularia,</i>
<i>Parnassia palustris,</i>	<i>Menyanthes trifoliata,</i>
<i>Drosera rotundifolia,</i>	<i>Trollius europaeus,</i>
<i>Pinguicula vulgaris,</i>	<i>Epipactis palustris,</i>
<i>Anagallis tenella,</i>	<i>Mentha hirsuta,</i>
<i>Viola palustris,</i>	<i>Ranunculus Flammula,</i>
<i>Narthecium Ossifragum,</i>	<i>Carex paniculata,</i>
	<i>Schænus nigricans.</i>

As we ascend the valley we find on the banks :—

<i>Corylus Avellana,</i>	<i>Melica uniflora,</i>
<i>Lathraea Squamaria,</i>	<i>Carex sylvatica,</i>
<i>Primula acaulis,</i>	<i>Brachypodium gracile,</i>
<i>Paris quadrifolia,</i>	<i>Aquilegia vulgaris,</i>
<i>Sambucus nigra,</i>	<i>Hypericum montanum,</i>
<i>Actaea spicata,</i>	<i>Vaccinium Myrtillus,</i>
<i>Helleborus viridis,</i>	<i>Scolopendrium vulgare,</i>
<i>Rubus saxatilis,</i>	<i>Lomaria Spicant,</i>
<i>Allium ursinum,</i>	<i>Pteris aquilina,</i>
<i>Myosotis sylvatica,</i>	<i>Cystopteris fragilis,</i>
<i>Luzula maxima,</i>	<i>Polystichum lobatum,</i>
<i>Sanicula europaea,</i>	<i>Polystichum angulare,</i>
<i>Lonicera Periclymenum,</i>	<i>Lastraea Filix-mas,</i>
<i>Orchis latifolia,</i>	<i>Athyrium Filix-femina,</i>
<i>Teucrium Scorodonia,</i>	<i>Polypodium vulgare,</i>
<i>Origanum vulgare,</i>	<i>Phegopteris Dryopteris,</i>
<i>Poa nemoralis,</i>	<i>Phegopteris polypodioides</i>
<i>Melica nutans,</i>	

In addition to the above the following interesting plants have been recorded :—

<i>Carex digitata,</i>	<i>Ophrys muscifera.</i>
<i>Cypripedium Calceolus,</i>	

Emerging from the valley we find ourselves on a plateau about 600 feet above sea level, with beds of limestone supporting a few xerophilous plants, such as :—

<i>Helianthemum</i>	<i>Cnicus acaulis,</i>
<i>Chamæcistus,</i>	<i>Ophrys apifera,</i>
<i>Hieracium Pilosella,</i>	<i>Deschampsia flexuosa,</i>
<i>Campanula rotundifolia,</i>	<i>Cynosurus cristatus,</i>
<i>Poterium Sanguisorba,</i>	<i>Festuca ovina,</i>
<i>Thymus Serpyllum,</i>	<i>Koeleria cristata,</i>
<i>Carlina vulgaris,</i>	<i>Briza media.</i>

**Sherburn and District** (twenty miles from York, V.C. 64, M.W.).—The quarries at Huddlestone and Tadcaster, which provided stone (magnesian limestone)

for the builders of York Cathedral, etc., have yielded some very interesting plants :—

<i>Actaea spicata,</i>	<i>Pyrola minor,</i>
<i>Anemone Pulsatilla,</i>	<i>Blackstonia perfoliata,</i>
<i>Aquilegia vulgaris,</i>	<i>Gentiana Amarella,</i>
<i>Thalictrum collinum,</i>	<i>Atropa Belladonna,</i>
<i>Reseda lutea,</i>	<i>Verbascum Thapsus,</i>
<i>Helianthemum</i>	<i>Orobanche major,</i>
	<i>Hyoscyamus niger,</i>
<i>Chamaecistus,</i>	<i>Calamintha Clinopodium,</i>
<i>Viola odorata,</i>	<i>Calamintha arvensis,</i>
<i>Hypericum montanum,</i>	<i>Nepeta Cataria,</i>
<i>Linum catharticum,</i>	<i>Calamintha officinalis,</i>
<i>Euonymus europaeus,</i>	<i>Lamium amplexicaule;</i>
<i>Acer campestre,</i>	<i>Origanum vulgare,</i>
<i>Dipsacus sylvestris,</i>	<i>Thymus Serpyllum,</i>
<i>Geranium pyrenaicum,</i>	<i>Echium vulgare,</i>
<i>Astragalus danicus,</i>	<i>Myosotis sylvatica,</i>
<i>Astragalus glycyphyllos,</i>	<i>Quercus Robur,</i>
<i>Pimpinella Saxifraga,</i>	<i>Fagus sylvatica,</i>
<i>Silaus flavescens,</i>	<i>Orchis pyramidalis,</i>
<i>Galium verum,</i>	<i>Orchis ustulata,</i>
<i>Galium Mollugo,</i>	<i>Ophrys apifera,</i>
<i>Asperula cynanchica,</i>	<i>Ophrys muscifera,</i>
<i>Sherardia arvensis,</i>	<i>Habenaria conopsea,</i>
<i>Scabiosa Columbaria,</i>	<i>Spiranthes autumnalis,</i>
<i>Scabiosa arvensis,</i>	<i>Carex digitata,</i>
<i>Antennaria dioica,</i>	<i>Deschampsia flexuosa,</i>
<i>Inula Conyza,</i>	<i>Koeleria cristata,</i>
<i>Pulicaria dysenterica,</i>	<i>Poa compressa,</i>
<i>Carlina vulgaris,</i>	<i>Bromus erectus,</i>
<i>Cnicus acaulis,</i>	<i>Brachypodium pinnatum,</i>
<i>Carduus nutans,</i>	<i>Hordeum murinum,</i>
<i>Centauria Scabiosa,</i>	<i>Asplenium Trichomanes,</i>
<i>Erigeron acre,</i>	<i>Ophioglossum vulgatum.</i>
<i>Picris hieracioides,</i>	

**Swale Drainage.**—Leckby Carr (about twenty miles from York, V.C. 62, N.E. Yorks.) is worth visiting. The “Carr” is a swampy hollow near the River Swale, and is shut off from the river by a series of gravelly

mounds, probably of glacial origin. The Rev. James Dalton (whose Herbarium is in the York Museum) frequently visited this Carr between the years 1787-1820, and at this place he found many interesting plants, including :—

*Scheuchzeria palustris,*  
*Carex filiformis,*  
*Carex limosa,*

*Lysimachia thyrsiflora,*  
*Drosera anglica,*  
*Schollera Occycoccus.*

**Skipwith** (Ouse and Derwent Drainage).—The heathy land at Riccall and Skipwith is situated in the centre of the Vale of York, about ten miles from York (V.C. 61, S.E.), and is full of interest to the botanist.

The sandy soil is of a variable depth, resting on clay, and near the surface is rich in vegetable matter. Riccall Church (dating from Norman times) shows that its builders had to place trees, etc., in the quick-sand to secure a firm foundation. Before the battle of Stamford Bridge (1066), the Danish Fleet came up the River Ouse and anchored at Riccall. They also secured the River Derwent at Stamford Bridge, and there is evidence that this district possessed stretches of meadow and pasture land in addition to the old forest between the two rivers, which contained magnificent examples of oak trees, etc. Since 1876, acres of Common land have been enclosed for agricultural purposes, and some of the flowering plants (plentiful fifty years ago) are now decreasing in numbers, struggling for existence, or in some instances have become extinct. On the other hand, by the cultivation of oats, potatoes, etc., plants have been introduced which are now invading the Common land, and the student of plant associations can see the struggle going on.

Leaving the Railway Station at Riccall, and proceeding to the Common, we may find by the roadside :—

*Ranunculus acris,*  
*Ranunculus repens,*

*Linaria vulgaris,*  
*Buda rubra,*

*Papaver Rhæas,*  
*Bursa Bursa-pastoris,*  
*Geranium molle,*  
*Ulex europæus,*  
*Trifolium arvense,*  
*Potentilla Anserina,*  
*Sedum Telephium,*  
*Anthriscus sylvestris,*  
*Centaurea nigra,*  
*Crepis virens,*

*Gnaphalium sylvaticum,*  
*Digitalis purpurea,*  
*Prunus spinosa,*  
*Rosa canina,*  
*Rosa tomentosa,*  
*Lonicera Periclymenum,*  
*Cytisus scoparius,*  
*Rubus rusticanus,*  
*Humulus Lupulus,*  
*Corylus Avellana.*

In the cultivated fields :—

*Ranunculus arvensis,*  
*Fumaria officinalis,*  
*Viola arvensis,*  
*Silene anglica,*  
*Geranium columbinum,*  
*Erodium cicutarium,*  
*Medicago lupulina,*  
*Vicia cracca,*  
*Vicia hirsuta,*  
*Alchemilla arvensis,*

*Anthemis arvensis,*  
*Matricaria inodora,*  
*Spergula arvensis,*  
*Senecio vulgaris,*  
*Scleranthus annuus,*  
*Galeopsis versicolor,*  
*Galeopsis Tetrahit,*  
*Lycopsis arvensis,*  
*Apera Spica-venti.*

On the Common and adjoining land, in dry situations, may be found :—

*Radiola linoides,*  
*Ornithopus perpusillus,*  
*Neckeria claviculata,*  
*Galium saxatile,*  
*Hypericum perforatum,*  
*Hieracium Pilosella,*  
*Calluna Erica,*  
*Erica Tetralix,*  
*Erica cinerea,*  
*Teucrium Scorodonia,*  
*Rumex Acetosa,*  
*Rumex Acetosella,*  
*Erythræa Centaurium,*  
*Gentiana Pneumonanthe,*  
*Juncus squarrosus,*

*Scirpus cæspitosus,*  
*Juncus acutiflorus,*  
*Agrostis canina,*  
*Agrostis vulgaris,*  
*Aira caryophyllea,*  
*Aira præcox,*  
*Sieblingia decumbens,*  
*Molinia varia,*  
*Senecio sylvaticus,*  
*Chrysanthemum segetum,*  
*Senecio erucifolius,*  
*Campanula rotundifolia,*  
*Campanula latifolia,*  
*Festuca ovina,*  
*Nardus stricta.*

The following Rubi have been recorded for Skipwith and district :—

*Rubus Lindleianus,*  
*Rubus rhamnifolius,*  
*Rubus leucostachys,*  
*Rubus carpiniifolius,*  
*Rubus macrophyllus,*  
*Rubus Sprengelii,*  
*Rubus pyramidalis,*

*Rubus pulcherrimus,*  
*Rubus villicaulis,*  
*Rubus mucronatus,*  
*Rubus cæsius,*  
*Rubus Koehleri,*  
*Rubus opacus,*

and among the Filices recorded for Skipwith and district are :—

*Lomaria Spicant,*  
*Asplenium Ruta-muraria,*  
*Athyrium Filix-fæmina,*  
*Lastræa Thelypteris,*  
*Lastræa Oreopteris,*  
*Lastræa Filix-mas,*

*Lastræa spinulosa,*  
*Lastræa dilatata,*  
*Polypodium vulgare,*  
*Osmunda regalis,*  
*Pteris aquilina.*

In the ponds, ditches and damp places :—

*Ranunculus peltatus,*  
*Ranunculus Flammula,*  
*Ranunculus sardous,*  
*Nasturtium officinale,*  
*Viola palustris,*  
*Lychnis Flos-cuculi,*  
*Stellaria palustris,*  
*Hypericum elodes,*  
*Potentilla palustris,*  
*Drosera rotundifolia,*  
*Drosera intermedia,*  
*Ephedrum angustifolium,*  
*Hydrocotyle vulgaris,*  
*Apium nodiflorum,*  
*Apium inundatum,*  
*Œnanthe fistulosa,*  
*Galium palustre,*  
*Valeriana dioica,*  
*Bidens cernua,*  
*Bidens tripartita,*  
*Hottonia palustris,*

*Polygonum minus,*  
*Polygonum mite,*  
*Polygonum lapathifolium,*  
*Rumex maritimus,*  
*Rumex limosus,*  
*Salix Caprea,*  
*Salix repens,*  
*Alnus glutinosa,*  
*Betula verrucosa,*  
*Habenaria bifolia,*  
*Juncus bufonius,*  
*Juncus conglomeratus,*  
*Typha latifolia.*  
*Alisma Plantago-*  
*aquatica,*  
*Alisma ranunculoides,*  
*Potamogeton*  
*polygonifolius,*  
*Potamogeton natans,*  
*Scirpus fluitans,*

*Lysimachia vulgaris,*  
*Anagallis tenella,*  
*Samolus Valerandi,*  
*Menyanthes trifoliata.*  
*Limosella aquatica,*  
*Veronica scutellata,*  
*Utricularia vulgaris,*  
*Pinguicula vulgaris,*  
*Mentha hirsuta,*  
*Narthecium Ossifragum,*  
*Mentha Pulegium,*  
*Littorella juncea,*  
*Chenopodium rubrum,*  
*Polygonum Hydrophiper,*

*Scirpus lacustris,*  
*Eriophorum vaginatum,*  
*Eriophorum*  
*augustifolium,*  
*Carex pulicaris,*  
*Carex ovalis,*  
*Carex Goodenowii,*  
*Carex panicea,*  
*Carex dioica,*  
*Phragmites communis,*  
*Glyceria fluitans,*  
*Equisetum palustre,*  
*Equisetum limosum,*  
*Pilularia globulifera.*

Botanists are referred to the following works for details regarding the physical and botanical features of Yorkshire :—

Baines, Henry.—*Flora of Yorkshire* (1840) and Supplement (1854), J. G. Baker.

Baker, John Gilbert.—(1885.) *North Yorkshire : Studies of its Botany, Geology, Climate, and Physical Geography.* 2nd edit. *Trans. of Yorks. Nat. Union*, 1885-1891. This work has just been completed after revision. Apply, Hon. Sec. Y.N.U., Museum, Hull.

Kendall, P. F.—(1902.) *Glacier-Lakes in the Cleveland Hills.* —*Quart. Journ. Geol. Soc.*, Iviii., 1902, pp. 471-571.

*The London Catalogue of British Plants*, ninth edition. George Bell and Son, London (1895).

Ibbotson, Henry ; Le Tall, B. B. ; Waller, A. R.—*The Ferns of York, Nidderdale, etc.* York, 1884.

Le Tall, B. B.—*Flora of York.* MSS. at Bootham School, York.

Lees, F. Arnold.—(1888.) *The Flora of West Yorkshire.* London, 1888.

Robinson, J. Fraser.—(1902.) *The Flora of the East Riding of Yorkshire.* London and Hull (Brown), 1902.

Smith, William G. ; Moss, C. E. ; and Rankin, W. M.—(1903.) *Geographical Distribution of Vegetation in Yorkshire.* Part I., Leeds and Halifax District, with Map. Part II., Harrogate and Skipton District, with Map. *Geographical Journal*, vols. xxi. and xxii., 1903. J. Bartholomew & Co., Edinburgh.

Teesdale, Robert.—*Plantæ Eboracenses* (1792), *Trans. Linn. Soc.*, vol. ii., p. 103 ; and Supplement (1798), *Trans. Linn. Soc.*, vol. v., pp. 36-95.

Watson, H. C.—*Topographical Botany*, 2nd edition, 1883.

## CRYPTOGAMIC FLORA.

(NON-VASCULAR.)

WILLIAM INGHAM, B.A. (Lond.)

## I. FRESH-WATER ALGÆ.

The diversified topographical character of Yorkshire renders the neighbourhood fairly rich in these plants.

In 1901, *The Alga-flora of Yorkshire*, by W. West, F.L.S., and G. S. West, B.A., A.R.C.S., was published by the Yorkshire Naturalists' Union, as Vol. 5 of their *Botanical Transactions*. In this Flora, 1,044 species are recorded, belonging to 189 genera, to 39 families, to 11 orders, and to 5 classes.

The most productive grounds for *Desmids* are those of the Central Plain, the commons at Pilmoor, Strensall and Riccall, being parts of the primæval bog-land, and both in their topography and alga-flora are very similar to the commons of south-west Surrey. Pilmoor, near Thirsk, is probably the richest locality in Yorkshire for *Desmids*, for more than 130 species have been found there, many very rare species being among the number. The best gatherings from Pilmoor were obtained from *Utricularia minor* (West).

The following Algæ from the pools close to Pilmoor Station were unrecorded for the British Isles before the year 1901 :—

*Edogonium tapeinosporum* Wittr.

*Glæotila protogenita* Kütz.

*Ophiocytium cochleare* (Eich.) A. Br.

—var. *bicuspidatum* Borge.

*Leptosira mediciana* Borzi. Only previously recorded from Italy.

*Debarya calospora* (Palla) Nob.

*Cosmarium minimum* West & G. S. West.

*Scenedesmus costatus* Schmidle.

*Tetraëdron decussatum* (Reinsch.) Nob.

*Characium tenue* Herm.

*Characium ensiforme* Herm.

*Dictyosphaerium oviforme* Lagerh.

*Nephrocytium allantoideum* Bohlin.

The following are of interest :—

*Geminella interrupta* Turp. Known elsewhere only from Glen Tilt, Perthshire.

*Roya Pseudoclosterium* (Roy) West & G. S. West. The first record for England.

*Cosmarium Klebsii* Gutw. Only previously recorded from the New Forest.

*Staurastrum paxilliferum* G. S. West. Known elsewhere only from Wicken Fen, Cambridgeshire.

**Strensall Common** has now been drained for military purposes, and nearly all its former treasures are gone. The few pools still remaining should produce the following Algæ, recorded in 1901 as new to the British Isles :—

*Cosmarium pseudoexiguum* Racib.; and

*Cosmarium subreniforme* Nordst.

**Skipwith Common**, about thirty minutes' walk from Riccall Station, has several good pools for Algæ, and produced the following as new to the British Isles in 1901 :—

*Scenedesmus Hystrix* Lagerh.; and

*Lyngbya Lagerheimii* (Möbius) Gomont.

## II. FUNGI.

The district immediately surrounding York still awaits a careful and persistent investigation of its mycological flora. The sparsity of its woodlands has hitherto deterred the Mycological Committee of the Yorkshire Naturalists' Union from holding one of its annual Fungus forays with York as a centre. The nearest points touched by this organisation are

Escrick, about six miles south; and a few miles further south, within easy reach of Riccall, Selby, Skipwith, Osgodby, Bishop Wood, Blackwood, etc.

Some of the less-known British Fungi that have been met with at these places are:—

#### AGARICACEÆ.

*Lepiota felina* (Pers.). Escrick, among grass.

*Lepiota metulæspora* (B. & Br.). Blackwood, on the ground.

*Tricholoma onychinum* Fr. Escrick, on the ground.

*Tricholoma inamœnum* Fr. Blackwood, on the ground.

*Tricholoma cinerascens* (Bull.). Escrick, on the ground.

*Clitocybe tumulosa* (Kalchbr.). Bishop Wood, on the ground.

*Volvaria gloiocephala* (D.C.). Escrick, on the ground.

*Leptonia placida* Fr. Blackwood, on rotting beech trunk.

*Pholiota comosa* Fr. Selby, in timber yard, on beech log.

*Hebeloma elatum* (Batsch.). Blackwood, among pine leaves.

*Flammula gummosa* (Lasch.). Blackwood, on stump.

*Flammula picrea* Fr. Blackwood, on pine stump.

*Gomphidius roseus* Fr. Skipwith, on the ground in a wood.

*Paxillus orcelloides* Cke. and Mass. Escrick, among grass.

*Hygrophorus hypothejus* Fr. Blackwood, among pine leaves.

*Lactarius cilicioides* Fr. Skipwith, on the ground, in a wood.

*L. chrysorrheus* Fr. Blackwood, on the ground.

*L. circellatus* Fr. Blackwood, on the ground.

*Russula sardonia* Fr. Escrick, on the ground in a wood.

*R. purpurea* (Gillet). Escrick, on the ground in a wood.

*Nyctalis parasitica* (Bull.). Escrick, on *Russula nigricans*.

*Panus conchatus* Fr. Skipwith, on tree trunks.  
*Schizophyllum commune* Fr. Riccall, on timber, in  
 a woodyard.

## POLYPORACEÆ.

*Boletus spadiceus* Schaeff. Escrick, in a mixed wood.  
*B. variegatus* Swartz. Blackwood, on the ground.  
*B. bovinus* L. Blackwood, on the ground under firs.  
*Polyporus intybaceus* Fr. Escrick, on stump.  
*Polystictus radiatus* (Sow.). Bishop Wood, on stump.  
*Merulius corium* Fr. Blackwood, on dead trunk.

## PYRENOMYCETES.

*Cordyceps ophioglossoides* (Ehr.). Blackwood, para-  
 sitic upon *Elaphomyces granulatus*.

*Hypomyces rosellus* (A. & S.). Stainer Wood, Selby ;  
 parasitic upon *Poria medulla-panis*.

## ELAPHOMYCETACEÆ.

*Elaphomyces granulatus* Fr. Blackwood ; a sub-  
 terranean species found in heathy soil in woods.

*The Flora of West Yorkshire*, by F. A. Lees,  
 contains numerous records for the vicinity of Church  
 Fenton, thirteen to fourteen miles S.S.W. ; and a  
 few from Wetherby, fourteen miles west. Among  
 others are :—

## AGARICACEÆ.

*Omphalia pyxidata* (Bull.). Church Fenton.  
*O. campanella* (Batsch). Church Fenton.  
*Entyloma clypeatum* (L.). Wetherby.  
*Galera lateritia* Fr. Church Fenton.  
*Agaricus cretaceus* Fr. Wetherby.

## HYDNACEÆ.

*Hydnnum alutaceum* Fr. Church Fenton.  
*Grandinia granulosa* Fr. Church Fenton.

## UREDINACEÆ.

*Uromyces fabæ* (Pers.). Church Fenton, on bean  
 leaves.

*U. junci* (Desm.). Church Fenton, on rushes.  
*Puccinia magnusiana* (Körn.). Church Fenton, on  
 reeds.

## PYRENOMYCETES.

*Daldinia concentrica* (Bolt.). Wetherby.

*Rhytisma salicinum* (Pers.). Church Fenton.

## MYXOMYCETES.

*Spumaria alba* D.C. Church Fenton.

*Didymium nigripes* Fr. Church Fenton.

*Arcyria incarnata* Pers. Church Fenton.

Castle Howard, thirteen to fourteen miles N.N.E., was visited by the Y.N.U. Myc. Com. in 1892, and the following are a few of the uncommon species then noted :—

## AGARICACEÆ.

*Tricholoma sculpturatum* Fr. In woods.

*T. arcuatum* (Bull.). In woods.

*Collybia distorta* Fr. On rotten pine trunks.

*Omphalia rustica* Fr. On the ground among grass.

*Inocybe fastigiata* (Schaeff.). Among grass in mixed wood.

*Agaricus elvensis* B. & Br. In woods.

*Russula semicrema* Fr. On the ground in mixed wood.

*R. Barlae* Quel. On the ground in a mixed wood.

## POLYPORACEÆ.

*Polyporus spongiosus* Fr. (*P. Herbergii* B. & Br.) on trunks.

*P. quercinus* Pers. On dead oak stumps.

## CLAVARIACEÆ.

*Clavaria purpurea* Müll. On the ground among grass.

## USTILAGINEÆ.

*Tilletia Rawenhoffii* Waldh. On *Holcus mollis*.

Pocklington, about twelve miles east, was visited by the Union in 1893. Among the few uncommon fungi then seen are :—

## AGARICACEÆ.

*Lepiota felina* (Pers.). Among grass.  
*Tricholoma columbetta* Fr. On the ground in a wood.  
*Collybia nitellina* Fr. On the ground in a wood.  
*Pluteus hispidulus* Fr. On beech stump.  
*Inocybe plumosa* (Bolton). In a fir plantation.  
*Agaricus comptulus* Fr. Among grass.  
*Hypholoma epixanthum* Fr. On tree stump.  
*Lactarius fuliginosus* Fr. On the ground in a wood.  
*Russula Queletii* Fr. Allerthorpe, on the ground.

## POLYPORACEÆ.

*Boletus alutarius* Fr. On the ground in a wood.  
*B. porphyrosporus* Fr. On the ground in a mixed wood.

Bramham, about fourteen miles S.W., and Harewood, nineteen to twenty miles W.S.W., were visited in 1888. A few of the less common species recorded for these places are :—

## AGARICACEÆ.

*Lepiota clypeolaria* (Bull). Bramham.  
*Tricholoma imbricatum* Fr. Bramham and Harewood.

*Collybia esculenta* (Wulf.). Bramham.  
*Pleurotus limpidus* Fr. Bramham.  
*Pluteus nanus* (Pers.). Bramham.  
*Entoloma fertile* (Berk.). Bramham.  
*Lactarius aspideus* Fr. Harewood.  
*L. aurantiacus* Fl. Dan. Bramham.  
*Russula cœrulea* Pers. Bramham.  
*Marasmius terginus* Fr. Bramham, among leaves.  
*Urocystis colchici* (Schlecht.). On Clifton Ings, near the city, growing on *Colchicum autumnale*, 1880 (J. A. Wheldon, Liverpool), *Fungus Flora*, 1905, p. 209. This is the only Yorkshire record for this species.

The whole of the above fungi are included in *The Yorkshire Fungus Flora*, by G. Massee and C. Crossland, published (1905) by the Yorkshire

Naturalists' Union. This work contains the records of all known Yorkshire fungi, upwards of 2,600, to June, 1905.

### III. HEPATICÆ or LIVERWORTS.

These interesting plants avoid the dwellings of man and a smoke-tainted atmosphere even more than the mosses, and, therefore, although the neighbourhood of York is rich in them, we must visit the valleys and rills in the N.E. and N.W. of the county, and the sand-flats of Coatham marshes, to find those of the greatest interest to Hepaticologists.

At Coatham grows *Petalophyllum Ralfsii*, probably the rarest British Hepatic, intermixed with another very rare species, *Pallavicinia Flotowiana*.

By the streams of the N.W. grow *Scapania subalpina* in abundance, and the minute *Scapania rosacea*.

The beautiful *Jubula Hutchinsiae* grows in two different places, at Hebden Bridge and Pateley Bridge.

The following is a list of Hepatics growing around York within a circle of twenty miles radius :—

*Riccia glauca* L. In stubble field, Strensall Common.

*Riccia sorocarpa* Bisch. In stubble field, Langwith, four miles from York.

*Riccia fluitans* L. Askham Bog, Buttercrambe, Grimston.

*Ricciocarpus natans* (L.) Corda. Askham Bog and Selby.

*Reboulia hemisphærica* (L.) Raddi. Rolston Scar, Kilburn.

*Conocephalum conicum* (L.) Dum. Kirk Hammerton, Buttercrambe.

*Lunularia cruciata* (L.) Dum. Barkstone and Malton.

*Preissia quadrata* (Scop.) Nees. Jackdaw Crag Quarry, and quarry near Aberford; a characteristic

hepatic on damp, shady parts of quarries on the magnesian limestone.

*Marchantia polymorpha* L. Barkstone; common in shady places on burnt earth and charred wood.

*Aneura pinguis* (L.) Dum. Castle Howard and Kirkham.

*Aneura multifida* (L.) Dum. Kelfield, and near York.

*Aneura sinuata* (Dicks.) Limpr. Strensall Common, Kirkham and Castle Howard.

*Aneura latifrons* Lindb. Quarries, Aberford and Knottingley.

*Metzgeria furcata* (L.) Lindb. Kilburn, North Grimston.

*Metzgeria pubescens* (Schrank) Raddi. Kilburn.

*Pellia endiviaefolia* (Dicks.) Dum. Strensall Common, and quarries at Aberford and Knottingley.

*Pellia epiphylla* (L.) Dum. Strensall, Castle Howard.

*Blasia pusilla* L. Askham Bog and Clifton Ings.

*Fossombronia Dumortieri* (Hüb. et Genth.) Lindb. Skipwith Common, Terrington Carr, Strensall Common.

*Fossombronia Wondraczekii* (Corda) Dum. In stubble field, Langwith.

*Fossombronia pusilla* (L.) Dum. Pool by River Foss, Strensall, Pilmoor, Holgate, near York (Spruce).

*Haplomitrium Hookeri* (Sm.) Nees. Barmby Moor, in fruit, 5th November, 1842 (Spruce); not since found there.

*Marsupella ustulata* Spruce. On estuarine sandstones under dead bracken, Castle Howard.

*Marsupella emarginata* (Ehrh.) Dum. Castle Howard.

*Nardia scalaris* (Schrad.) Gray. Skipwith Common, Strensall Common, Castle Howard; abundant on sides of sandy cuttings.

*Nardia minor* (Nees) Arnell. Strensall Common.

*Aplozia crenulata* (Sm.) Dum. Skipwith Common, Strensall Common, Bramham.

*Aplozia crenulata* var. *gracillima* (Sm.). Castle Howard.

*Aplozia riparia* (Tayl.) Dum. Boston Spa, quarries at Aberford and Ferrybridge, and Market Weighton.

*Aplozia pumila* (With.) Dum. Castle Howard.

*Lophozia inflata* (Huds.) Howe. Skipwith Common, Strensall Common and Langwith Moor.

*Lophozia turbinata* (Raddi) Steph. Jackdaw Crag Quarry, Castle Howard, Aberford, Wentbridge, Byram Quarry, Knottingley. A characteristic hepatic of magnesian limestone quarries.

*Lophozia ventricosa* (Dicks.) Dum. Barmby Moor, Barkstone, Castle Howard, Kilburn, Leckby Carr, Langwith.

*Lophozia ventricosa* var. *porphyroleuca* (Nees). Kirkham, Castle Howard, Terrington Carr.

*Lophozia bicrenata* (Schmid.) Dum. Strensall and Castle Howard.

*Lophozia excisa* (Dicks.) Dum. Strensall and Castle Howard.

*Lophozia barbata* (Schmid.) Dum. Kilburn.

*Lophozia gracilis* (Schleich.) Steph. Barkstone, Skipwith Common.

*Sphenolobus minutus* (Crantz) Steph. In wood near Strensall Common, five miles from York.

*Sphenolobus exsectæformis* (Breidl.) Steph. Castle Howard, Stockton Forest, Strensall Common.

*Plagiochila asplenoides* (L.) Dum. In woods by the Ouse, and Derwent, Kilburn.

*Plagiochila asplenoides* var. *Dillenii* (Tayl.). Kilburn.

*Mylia Taylori* (Hook.) Gray. Leckby Carr, Langwith, Barmby Moor, Stockton Forest.

*Mylia anomala* (Hook.) Gray. Skipwith Common, Strensall Common and Terrington Carr.

*Lophocolea bidentata* (L.) Dum. Jackdaw Crag Quarry, Skipwith Common, Stockton Forest, Kirkham.

*Lophocolea bidentata* forma *latifolia*. Naburn, Strensall Common.

*Lophocolea cuspidata* Limpr. Barmby Moor, Castle Howard.

*Lophocolea heterophylla* (Schrad.) Dum. Strensall Common, Kirkham, Sherburn, Askham Bog, Healaugh, Leckby Carr, North Grimston, Birdsall.

*Chiloscyphus polyanthos* (L.) Corda. Skipwith Common, Huddlestone Quarry, Sherburn and Knaresborough.

*Cephalozia bicuspidata* (L.) Dum. Strensall, Castle Howard, Stockton Forest.

*Cephalozia connivens* (Dicks.) Spruce. Strensall Common, Leckby Carr and Skipwith Common.

*Cephalozia lunulæfolia* Dum. Castle Howard, Langwith.

*Cephalozia pallida* Spruce. Strensall Common.

*Cephalozia Francisci* (Hook.) Dum. Langwith, Barmby Moor, Strensall Common and Stockton Forest.

*Cephalozia fluitans* (Nees) Spruce. Leckby Carr.

*Cephaloziella byssacea* (Roth) Heeg. Stockton Forest, Castle Howard, Market Weighton.

*Cephaloziella Curnowii* (Slater MS.) Macv. Barmby Moor.

*Odontoschisma Sphagni* (Dicks.) Dum. Strensall Common, Barmby Moor.

*Odontoschisma denudatum* (Nees) Dum. Barmby Moor.

*Kantia Trichomanis* (L.) Gray. Strensall, Barmby Moor, Langwith, Buttercrambe, Skipwith Common.

*Kantia Sprengelii* (Mart.) Pears. Skipwith Common, Castle Howard.

*Kantia arguta* (Nees et Mont.) Lindb. Castle Howard.

*Lepidozia reptans* (L.) Dum. Strensall Common and heathy woods by the Derwent.

*Lepidozia trichoclados* C. Mull. Frib. Strensall Common, in wood, five miles from York.

*Lepidozia setacea* (Web.) Mitt. Langwith and Barmby Moor.

*Ptilidium ciliare* (L.) Hampe. Barmby Moor, Skipwith Common, Langwith, Strensall (in large masses).

*Ptilidium pulcherrimum* (Web.) Hampe. Castle Howard.

*Trichocolea tomentella* (Ehrh.) Dum. Castle Howard.

*Diplophyllum albicans* (L.) Dum. Langwith, etc.; common.

*Diplophyllum obtusifolium* (Hook.) Dum. Langwith Moor.

*Scapania aspera* Bernet. Jackdaw Crag Quarry.

*Scapania gracilis* (Lindb.) Kaal. Woods near the Derwent.

*Scapania purpurascens* (Hook.) Tayl. Castle Howard.

*Scapania intermedia* Husnot. Castle Howard.

*Scapania uliginosa* (Swartz) Dum. Terrington Carr.

*Scapania irrigua* (Nees) Dum. Skipwith Common, Strensall Common, Castle Howard.

*Scapania umbrosa* (Schrad.) Dum. Castle Howard.

*Radula complanata* (L.) Dum. Common on trees.

*Madotheca platyphylla* (L.) Dum. Helmsley, Boston Spa, Kilburn.

*Frullania Tamarisci* (L.) Dum. Jackdaw Crag Quarry.

*Frullania dilatata* (L.) Dum. Buttercrambe, N. Grimston, Castle Howard.

*Anthoceros punctatus* L. Terrington Carr and near York.

*Anthoceros laevis* L. Near York.

#### IV. SPHAGNACEÆ, PEAT MOSSES or BOG MOSSES.

The richest ground for these plants is Upper Teesdale, on the Yorkshire side of the Tees, along the base of Cronkley Fell, and on the Durham side on the great mass of Widdy Bank Fell. Here, in 1901, were found twenty-eight species and eighty-one varieties out of a total of fifty species and 149 varieties recorded for Europe by Dr. Warnstorf.

Another district particularly rich in these plants is the low land by the side of the N.E. Railway from two to four miles south of Goathland, embracing the famous Fen Bog. I propose to particularise only

those plants growing in the immediate neighbourhood of York.

Skipwith Common is the best ground. About thirty minutes' walk from Riccall Station, and on the Common to the right of the path, is a shallow pool filled with *Sphagnum rufescens* Warnst. Along the edge of the pool is the rare *S. fimbriatum* var. *robustum* Braithw., of yellow colour, and fruiting abundantly. *S. subnitens* var. *flavescens* Warnst. also grows here. In the wide ditch, about ten minutes farther forward, are large dark masses of *S. crassicladum* Warnst. On the borders of the largest pool, about twenty minutes farther, are the following interesting sphagna :—*S. cymbifolium* var. *fusco-flavescens* Russ., and var. *pallescens* Warnst. The vars. *glaucescens* Warnst. (the common var. of *cymbifolium* in Yorkshire) and *glaucopallens* Warnst., grow in drier places on the Common.

The beautiful *S. papillosum* var. *sublæve* Limpr., forma *glaucescens*, is also near this pool. *S. inundatum* Warnst. grows submerged. On the drier parts of the Common are the rare *S. contortum* (Schultz) Limpr., and *S. compactum* DC., with its two varieties, *subsquarrosum* Warnst. and *imbricatum* Warnst. The rare *S. subsecundum* Limpr., and *S. molluscum* forma *compacta* Warnst., grow in wet places among grass and heather. Large masses of *S. cuspidatum* var. *submersum* Schimp. of a rich yellow colour form the beds of two shallow pools near the large pool. These shallow pools dry up after a hot summer, and this fine bog-moss then forms a springy carpet on crossing them. In wet places away from the water is the other var. of *S. cuspidatum*, viz., var. *falcatum* Russ. The type of this *Sphagnum*, all dark green, may be seen under water in the largest pool. Among the heather, in various places, grow three more varieties of *S. subnitens*, viz., var. *flavo-rubellum* Warnst., fruiting abundantly; var. *griseum* Warnst.; and var. *virescens* Warnst.

**Strensall Common** is also very good ground for these plants, but, on account of the scanty supply of water, compared with that of former days, they are mostly of stunted growth. The following now grow on the Common to the left of the railway line from York :—

*Sphagnum fimbriatum* Wils.

*Sphagnum acutifolium* Russ. & Warnst.

*Sphagnum acutifolium* var. *versicolor* Warnst.

*Sphagnum acutifolium* var. *viride* Warnst.

*S. subnitens* Russ. & Warnst.,

—var. *flavescens* Warnst. ; and

—var. *versicolor* Warnst.

*S. cuspidatum* Russ. & Warnst.

—var. *submersum* Schimp.

*S. recurvum* var. *mucronatum* Warnst. ; *S. molluscum* Bruch ; *S. compactum* var. *imbricatum* Warnst.; and var. *squarrosum* Russ. ; *S. subsecundum* Limpr.; *S. inundatum* Warnst. ; *S. rufescens* Warnst. ; *S. cymbifolium* forma *squarrosula* (Bry. Germ.) and var. *glauco-pallens* Warnst. ; *S. subbicolor* Hampe ; *S. papillosum* Lindb. var. *normale* Warnst. ; with its form *conferta* (Lindb.) Warnst. ; and var. *sublæve* Limpr.

By the pools at Pilmoor, near the Station, are *S. acutifolium* var. *griseum* Warnst. ; *S. subnitens* var. *pallescens* Warnst. ; *S. inundatum* Warnst., submerged, and of greyish-green colour ; *S. cymbifolium* var. *glaucescens* Warnst., and var. *glauco-pallens* Warnst.

On Askham Bog, near the city, and in the far wood are *S. fimbriatum* var. *tenue* Grav. ; *S. squarrosum* var. *subsquarrosum* Russ. ; and *S. cymbifolium* var. *glaucescens* Warnst.

On Barmby Moor, near Pocklington, and growing among tall grass are *S. cuspidatum* var. *falcatum* Russ. ; *S. subsecundum* Limpr. ; and *S. compactum* var. *subsquarrosum* Warnst.

On the Moor, fifteen minutes' walk beyond the White Horse at Kilburn, is a very fine growth of

*S. cuspidatum* var. *submersum* Schimp., chocolate coloured, and with very long floating stems, the plant being much like *S. Torreyanum* in habit. Near this is *S. papillosum* var. *normale* Warnst.

On Leckby Carr, near Topcliffe, are *S. rubellum* var. *pallescens* Warnst.; *S. recurvum* v. *mucronatum* Warnst.; *S. cymbifolium* var. *glaucescens* Warnst.; and *S. medium* Limpr. var. *roseo-pallescens* Warnst.

On Sandburn Common, five miles from York, *S. inundatum* Warnst. fills the shallow pools.

## V. MUSCI VERI OR THE TRUE MOSSES.

The best places for these plants are the large silicious bog-lands, known as Skipwith Common or Riccall Common, for the moorland and marsh forms, and Jackdaw Crag Quarry, near Tadcaster, for the xerophilous or dry-land species.

Skipwith Common is remarkable for its extensive growth of the *Harpidioid Hypna*.

In the largest pool float large intricate masses of *Hypnum fluitans* var. *gracile* Boul., with stems more than a foot in length, and seta four and seven-eighths inches long. At the side of the pool are large tufts of the pale green *H. fluitans* var. *atlanticum* Ren.; and of var. *Jeanbernatii* Ren., forma *Hollerii* (San.) Ren.

In the narrow drainage channels from the pools are large golden-coloured masses of *H. fluitans* var. *Arnelli* Sanio.

Two smaller pools near have their beds formed by intricate carpets of *H. fluitans* var. *Jeanbernatii* Ren., forma *elata ad* var. *elatum* Ren. et Arn. *transiens*. This moss, together with the *Sphagnum cuspidatum* var. *submersum*, forms a mossy carpet over the pools after a dry summer.

*H. fluitans* var. *gracile* forma *laxifolia* Ren. is among the wet grass and heather; as also the

var. *falcatum* Schimp. ; and *Hypnum exannulatum* var. *pinnatum* Boul., forma *gracilescens* Ren., and forma *polyclada* Ren. ; also two forms of var. *brachydictyon* Ren.

In another pool are golden-coloured tufts of var. *jalcifolium* Ren., of the sub. group *Rotæ* of *Hypnum fluitans*.

A striking feature of the Common is the extensive mass, many square yards in extent, of the large and rare golden-coloured moss, *Hypnum lycopodioides* Schwgr. Near it are the handsome *H. Wilsoni* Schimp. ; *H. Sendtneri* Schimp. ; *H. revolvens* Sw. ; *H. falcatum* Brid. ; *H. intermedium* Lindb. ; *H. giganteum* Schimp. ; *H. cordifolium* Hedw., fruiting abundantly ; *H. stramineum* Dicks., in extensive patches ; *H. elodes* Spruce ; *H. stellatum* Schreb. ; and *H. polygamum* Schimp. var. *stagnatum* Wils.

The genus *Camptolophus* here is interesting. *C. flexuosus* has a form intermediate with *C. pyriformis*, and the latter species has an interesting form intermediate with *C. flexuosus*. *C. flexuosus* var. *paradoxus* Husn., grows on the bare turf, as also *C. fragilis* B. & S., and the interesting black and green var. *muticus* of *C. atrovirens*. Among the heather are compact tufts of *C. brevipilus*.

*Dicranum spurium* Hedw. ; *D. Bonjeani* var. *rugifolium* Bosw., and *Hypnum imponens* Hedw., are rare mosses growing amongst the heather.

Jackdaw Crag Quarry, on the magnesian limestone, is fifteen minutes' walk from Stutton Station, or thirty minutes' walk from Tadcaster. It is an old quarry with vertical sides of bare limestone, and with high grass-covered mounds of debris in the middle. Having made a special study of the flora in this small area, we have found it particularly rich in both classes of plants, but especially rich in cryptogams. No less than ninety-six species of mosses and six

varieties grow in this single quarry, and these belong to twenty-nine different genera. As the whole list is too long to give *in extenso*, only those of special interest or rarity are here mentioned.

On the sides of the mounds grow *Ditrichum flexicaule* var. *densum* Braithw.; *Dicranum scoparium* var. *orthophyllum* Brid.; *Fissidens decipiens* De Not, fruiting abundantly; *Bryum pendulum* Schp., and *B. inclinatum* Bland; *B. intermedium* Brid.; and *Cylindrothecium concinnum* Schp.

On the top of the mound nearest to the gate is the interesting *Pottia minutula* Fürnr., with the teeth of *P. Starkeana*, but the spores of *P. minutula*.

On the rock sides, chiefly in the crevices, are *Weisia crispata* C.M.; the very rare *W. calcarea* var. *mutica* Boul.; *Trichostomum mutabile* Bruch; a large flat carpet of *Trichostomum crispulum* Bruch; *Eurhynchium tenellum* Milde, adhering closely to the rocks where in shade; and *E. pumilum* Schp., at the foot of the rocks. On the loose stones scattered about the quarry are *Weisia tortilis* C.M.; *Bryum murale* Wils.; *Tortula muralis* var. *aestiva* Brid.; *Barbula rigidula* Mitt.; very fine var. *protensum* of *Hypnum stellatum* Schreb.; a small form of *Amblystegium Kochii* B. & S., on small stones in shade; *Amblystegium Juratzkanum* Schimp.; and *Barbula sinuosa* Braithw. On the low banks are *Pottia recta* Mitt.; *Phascum curvicolle* Ehrh.; *Thuidium abietinum* B. & S.; and *T. recognitum* Ldb.

A striking feature of three common mosses, *Brachythecium rutabulum* B. & S.; *Eurhynchium praelongum* B. & S.; and *E. Swartzii* Hobk., is that each species becomes unusually robust, and the first and last develop beautiful glossy forms.

As a full list of these plants growing within twenty miles of York is too lengthy for insertion, the following list includes only some of the less-

common mosses which may be met with in addition to those mentioned above under Skipwith Common and Jackdaw Crag Quarry :—

*Tetraphis Browniana* Grev. Castle Howard.

*Polytrichum nanum* Neck. Skipwith, Langwith, Market Weighton.

*Polytrichum urnigerum* L. Strensall Common.

*Polytrichum strictum* Banks. Pilmoor.

*Polytrichum commune* var. *perigoniale* B. & S. Strensall.

*Polytrichum commune* var. *fastigiatum* (Lyle) Wils. Skipwith.

*Archidium alternifolium* Schp. Langwith Moor.

*Pleuridium axillare* var. *strictum* Braithw. Terrington Carr.

*Pleuridium alternifolium* Rab. Langwith, Market Weighton.

*Ditrichum tenuifolium* Ldb. Castle Howard.

*Ditrichum tortile* Hpe. Castle Howard.

*Seligeria Doniana* C.M. Castle Howard.

*Seligeria pusilla* B. & S. Castle Howard, Kilburn.

*Seligeria paucifolia* Carr. Goodmanham.

*Seligeria calcarea* B. & S. Market Weighton.

*Seligeria recurvata* B. & S. Kilburn, Castle Howard, Wass.

*Brachydodis trichodes* Fürnr. Castle Howard Quarry.

*Ceratodon conicus* Ldb. Kilburn.

*Dicranella crispa* Schp. Castle Howard.

*Dicranella Schreberi* var. *elata* Schp. Terrington.

*Dicranum undulatum* Ehrh. Holme Wood, Market Weighton.

*Dicranum spurium* Hedw. Strensall, Skipwith, Barmby Moor.

*Dicranum Bonjeani* var. *rugifolium* Bosw. Strensall Common.

*Dicranum Scottianum* Turn. Castle Howard.

*Fissidens exilis* Hedw. Kirkham.

*Fissidens viridulus* Wahl. Appleton Roebuck.

*Fissidens viridulus* var. *Lylei* Wils. Knaresborough.

*Fissidens pusillus* Wils. Near Jackdaw Crag Quarry, Castle Howard.

*Fissidens pusillus* var. *mavidus* Spruce. Castle Howard.

*Fissidens bryoides* var. *inconstans* Schp. Kirkham.

*Fissidens crassipes* Wils. River Foss, York; Knaresborough; Kirk Hammerton; Clifton Scope, York.

*Rhacomitrium lanuginosum* Brid. Skipwith Common, Strensall Common (interesting as a survival of the past).

*Ptychomitrium polyphyllum* Fürnr. Kirkham.

*Phascum Flærkeanum* W. & M. Bulmer, Castle Howard.

*Phascum curvicolle* Ehrh. Burton Salmon, Ferrybridge, Aberford.

*Pottia recta* Mitt. Sherburn-in-Elmet.

*Pottia bryoides* Mitt. Sherburn-in-Elmet.

*Pottia bryoides* var. *pilifera* Schp. Roadside, Barmby Moor.

*Pottia Heimii* Fürnr. Barkstone, Thorparch.

*Pottia intermedia* Fürnr. Naburn.

*Pottia minutula* Fürnr. Naburn, Sherburn, Hessay.

*Pottia Starkeana* C.M. Kirkham.

*Tortula lamellata* Ldb. Sherburn, Ferrybridge.

*Tortula brevirostris* H. & Grev. Sherburn-in-Elmet.

*Tortula rigida* Schrad. Jackdaw Crag Quarry, Castle Howard.

*Tortula ambigua* Ångstr. Sherburn, Barkstone, Ferrybridge, Westow, Kirkham.

*Tortula aloides* De Not. Westow, Jackdaw Crag Quarry.

*Tortula cernua* Lindb. Aberford, the only British habitat.

*Tortula marginata* Spruce. Sherburn, Castle Howard, Knaresborough.

*Tortula papillosa* Wils. Market Weighton.

*Barbula recurvifolia* Schp. Clifton Ings, York.

*Barbula spadicea* Mitt. Castle Howard.

*Barbula sinuosa* Braithw. Jackdaw Crag Quarry.

*Barbula Hornschuchiana* Schultz. Knottingley, Castle Howard.

*Barbula convoluta* var. *Sardoa* B. & S. Naburn, Barkstone.

*Weisia crispa* Mitt. Market Weighton.

*Weisia squarrosa* C.M. Sherburn-in-Elmet.

*Weisia calcarea* C.M. Knaresborough.

*Weisia calcarea* var. *viridula* C.M. Castle Howard.

*Weisia tenuis* C.M. Boston Spa, Birdsall.

*Weisia verticillata* Brid. Knaresborough, in fruit ; Jackdaw Crag Quarry.

*Ulota phyllantha* Brid. Market Weighton.

*Orthotrichum cupulatum* var. *nudum* Braithw. Boston Spa.

*Orthotrichum Sprucei* Mont. Clifton Scope, York.

*Orthotrichum stramineum* Hornsch. Kilburn, Helmsley.

*Orthotrichum pulchellum* Sm. Birdsall.

*Ephemerum serratum* Hampe. Market Weighton.

*Physcomitrella patens* B. & S. Near Norton, Heworth (York) and Skipwith Common.

*Funaria fascicularis* Schp. Langwith.

*Orthodontium gracile* Schwgr. Birk Crag, Harrogate.

*Bryum obconicum* Hornsch. Wall near Terrington Carr.

*Bryum roseum* Schreb. Castle Howard.

*Fontinalis antipyretica* var. *gigantea* Sull. Saxton, in Cock Beck.

*Cryphæa heteromalla* Mohr. Roadside, west of Ribston.

*Neckera crispa* var. *falcata* Boul. Kilburn.

*Myrinia pulvinata* Schp. East bank of Ouse, near York.

*Thuidium abietinum* B. & S. Aberford, Kirk Deighton.

*Thuidium hystricosum* Mitt. Quarry near Wetherby.

*Thuidium recognitum* Ldb. Castle Howard, Market Weighton.

*Cylindrothecium concinnum* Schp. Castle Howard, Aberford, Market Weighton.

*Pylaisia polyantha* B. & S. Market Weighton.

*Brachythecium glareosum* B. & S. Sherburn.

*Brachythecium salebrosum* B. & S. Kirkham.

*Brachythecium cæspitosum* Dixon. Naburn, Cock Beck, Tadcaster, Linton Lock (on River Ouse).

*Eurhynchium crassinervium* B. & S. North Grimston.

*Eurhynchium speciosum* Schp. River Foss, York ; Clifton Ings ; Ulleskelf.

*Eurhynchium abbreviatum* Schp. Near Healaugh.

*Eurhynchium pumilum* Schp. Naburn, Healaugh.

*Plagiothecium depresso* Dixon. Kirkdale Cave, Castle Howard.

*Plagiothecium latebricola* B. & S. Kilburn.

*Amblystegium varium* Ldb. River Foss, York ; Clifton Ings ; Ulleskelf.

*Amblystegium Juratzkanum* Schp. Barkstone, Appleton Roebuck, Naburn, Healaugh, Huntingdon, Burton Salmon, Sherburn, Askham Bog.

*Amblystegium Kochii* B. & S. Clifton Ings, York.

*Amblystegium irriguum* B. & S. Birdsall, Kirk Hammerton, Kirkham.

*Amblystegium fluviatile* B. & S. Kirk Hammerton.

*Hypnum elodes* Spruce. Strensall Common.

*Hypnum polygamum* var. *stagnatum* Wils. Naburn.

*Hypnum Sommerfeltii* Myr. Castle Howard, Thorp Arch.

*Hypnum Sendtneri* Schp. Naburn, Sandburn Common, near York.

*Hypnum lycopodioides* Schwgr. Strensall Common.

*Hypnum aduncum* var. *diversifolium* Ren. Selby, Strensall Common.

*Hypnum aduncum* var. *polycarpon* Bland. Naburn.

*Hypnum aduncum* var. *tenuis* Ren. Barlby, near Selby.

*Hypnum aduncum* var. *gracilescens* Ren. Clifton Ings.

*Hypnum aduncum* var. *paternum* forma *gracilis* Ren. Strensall, Naburn, Askham Bog.

*Hypnum exannulatum* Gümb. var. *stenophyllum* Hobk. (var. *falcifolium* Ren.). Very fine on Strensall Common, Sandburn Common, Pilmoor.

*Hypnum imponens* Hedw. Strensall Common.

*Hypnum Patientiæ* Ldb. Strensall Common.

*Hypnum molluscum* var. *fastigiatum* Bosw. Kilburn.

*Hypnum palustre* vars. *subsphaericarpon* B. & S.  
*julaceum* Schp. and *laxum* B. & S.; Kirk Hammerton;  
the last var. also at Buttercrambe.

*Hypnum cordifolium* Hedw. Askham Bog, Strensall.

*Hypnum giganteum* Schp. Strensall (very fine),  
Pilmoor, Sandburn Common, Warthill, Askham Bog.

## VERTEBRATA.

### MAMMALIA.

OXLEY GRABHAM, M.A., M.B.O.U.,  
Curator of the York Museum.

The Mammals occurring within a twenty-mile radius of York are numerous, both as regards species and individuals, as the following list will show :—

#### CHEIROPTERA.

*Plecotus auritus*, the Long-eared Bat, is somewhat local, but where it does occur is fairly numerous.

*Pterygistes noctula*, the Noctule or Great Bat, is generally distributed, and may often be seen hawking about for flies—the largest of our bats. I have taken quite young specimens of this species only a week or two old.

*Vesperugo pipistrellus*, the Pipistrelle, to be seen everywhere. A gleam of sunshine in mid-winter is sufficient to draw this little bat from its cosy retreat.

*Myotis Nattereri*. Natterer's Bat. Scarce, but I have taken two or three specimens.

*Myotis Daubentonii*. Daubenton's Bat. I have seen very few specimens, but I believe it only needs looking for.

*Myotis mystacinus*. Whiskered Bat. Very local, but not rare. Locally, bats are known as "Black-beer-aways."

#### INSECTIVORA.

*Erinaceus europaeus*. Hedgehog. Very common, and much esteemed as an article of food by our Yorkshire gipsies. An immature albino, taken at Goathland in 1904, is in the Museum.

*Talpa europaea*. Mole. Ubiquitous. We have a splendid series of varieties in the Museum, which

has taken me some years to get together, but very few have been obtained close to York.

*Sorex araneus.* Common Shrew, generally known as the "Blind Mouse." Very common. We have a beautiful albino which was picked up dead in the West Riding some years ago.

*Sorex minutus.* Pigmy Shrew. Very local.

*Neomys fodiens.* Water Shrew. This pretty little animal is common in most of our streams and ditches.

#### CARNIVORA.

*Felis catus.* Wild Cat. Now extinct, its last resort having been the Hambleton Hills.

*Canis lupus.* Wolf. Long ago extinct, but there are many records that it was formerly abundant all over the county, and in the Forest of Galtres, which extended up to the city on the north.

*Vulpes vulgaris.* Fox. Common and generally distributed. Several packs of hounds are maintained in the county for the pursuit of the same.

*Martes abietum.* Pine Marten. Extremely scarce. A few specimens still linger in the wildest parts of the county.

*Mustela putorius.* Pole Cat. Fast becoming exterminated. A genuine specimen has not been caught in the county for many years.

*Mustela erminea.* Stoat. Locally known as "Clubster" or "Foumart." Common. Some beautiful specimens are obtained in winter, when it is in process of change from its summer to its winter pelt.

*Mustela vulgaris.* Weasel. Common nearly everywhere. Pure white specimens have been obtained.

*Lutra lutra.* Otter. By no means uncommon in the district. Has bred in the Foss, right in the city.

*Meles meles.* Badger. Somewhat local, but by no means uncommon.

*Phoca Vitulina.* Common Seal. In the summer of 1892, two seals appeared in the weir pool at Naburn,

seventy-six miles from the sea, one of which was eventually shot.

#### RODENTIA.

*Sciurus vulgaris*. Common in woods and plantations.

*Muscardinus avellanarius*. Dormouse. Extremely local.

*Mus decumanus*. Common Rat. Only too common. In company with the Rev. Charles Hutton Coates, at Claxton Hall, on November 17th, 1896, we killed the largest rat that has ever been recorded; it weighed two and three-quarter pounds, and measured twenty inches from the tip of its nose to the tip of its tail.

*Mus rattus*. Black Rat. The old English Black Rat is practically extinct, but the breed still appears in our seaport towns, coming off foreign vessels. At times specimens are carried on barges far inland.

*Mus musculus*. Numerous everywhere.

*Mus minutus*. I have never yet seen a specimen of this beautiful little mouse in the county. I have often had so-called specimens sent to me, but they have always turned out to be of the next species.

*Mus sylvaticus*, Long-tailed Field Mouse, which is very abundant, and at times does much damage in gardens.

*Microtus amphibius*. Water Vole. Common in all suitable localities. A black variety at times occurs.

*Microtus agrestis*. Short-tailed Field Vole. Very numerous and destructive.

*Evotomys glareolus*. Red Bank Vole. Very common round York.

#### LEPORIDÆ.

*Lepus europaeus*. Common Hare. Of late years its numbers have increased again, but for some time after the passing of the Ground Game Act it became exceedingly scarce in many places.

*Lepus cuniculus*. Very abundant almost everywhere, in some districts black varieties are quite common.

**CERVIDÆ.**

Both the Red and the Fallow Deer, *Cervus elephas* and *Cervus dama*, are now only to be found semi-domesticated in private parks.

**CETACEA.**

*Delphinapterus leucas*. White Whale or Beluga. A female, eleven feet long and weighing ten cwt., was shot on April 1st, 1905, in the Ouse at Naburn, where it had got into the salmon nets. It was picked up dead near Cawood the next day and taken into Selby, where I examined it on April 3rd, 1905. Thanks to the generosity of Dr. Tempest Anderson, its skeleton is now in the York Museum.

*Phocæna communis*. Porpoise. These animals frequently ascend the rivers in pursuit of salmon as far as they can get—they are known as Porpoise Pigs.

*Delphinus tursio*. Bottle-nosed Dolphin. The skeleton of one killed in the Ouse at Cawood, near Selby, in 1826, is in the York Museum.

**AVES.**

OXLEY GRABHAM, M.A., M.B.O.U.,  
Curator of the York Museum.

In the limited space at my disposal, my treatment of the avi-fauna to be found within a twenty-mile radius of the city must of necessity be of the briefest. In the number of birds that frequent it, or which have at various times been recorded within its borders, Yorkshire stands pre-eminent. It has every formation suitable to this end—splendid cliffs on the coast, and long, low stretches of sand—whilst inland, moor, marsh, wood and meadow combine to form an ornithological paradise; often, too, strangers from the coast are driven far inland by the winter gales.

Most of the Thrush family are abundant, and about twenty years ago a specimen of the rare White's Thrush (*Turdus varius*) was obtained close to the city. The Ring Ouzel and the Dipper are occasionally seen. The Wheatear (*Saxicola œnanthe*) is numerous on migration, and a few pairs are to be found breeding on waste land in the neighbourhood. The Stone-chat is a very scarce visitor, but the Whinchat (*Pratincola rubetra*) is common enough, as is the Redstart (*Ruticilla phœnicurus*). Of the Warblers, the Robin, Greater and Lesser Whitethroat, Blackcap and Garden Warbler, are all more or less numerous. The Nightingale is an exceedingly scarce visitor, but of late years seems to have been extending its range. The beautiful Golden-crested Wren is numerous, and I have found many of its nests. The Chiff-chaff and Willow-wren are very common, and the earliest arrivals amongst our summer migrants; whilst the Wood-wren (*Phylloscopus sibilatrix*) is not so rare as is generally supposed. The Reed Warbler (*Acrocephalus streperus*) and the Grasshopper Warbler (*Locustella nævia*) are decidedly local—but I know of two or three localities where they nest regularly. The Sedge Warbler (*Acrocephalus phragmitis*) is ubiquitous—as is the Hedge Sparrow (*Accentor modularis*).

Of the Titmice, the Long-tailed Tit (*Acredula caudata*) is somewhat local, as are the Coal and the Marsh Titmice—though I know where they all three occur regularly. The Blue Titmouse (*Parus cœruleus*) and the Great Titmouse (*Parus major*) are both very common. The Nuthatch (*Sitta cæsia*) is only very local, being chiefly confined to some of the large private parks, and its numbers have been considerably lessened by some of the recent severe winters. The little Tree Creeper (*Certhia familiaris*) is common, and the Wren (*Troglodytes parvulus*) is to be seen everywhere. It is always known in the district as the Tom Tit.

Of the Wagtails, the White (*Motacilla alba*) is only very rarely seen on migration, whilst the Pied (*Motacilla lugubris*) is everywhere distributed in suitable localities. The Grey (*Motacilla melanope*) is confined to the streams and higher grounds, and the Yellow (*Motacilla Raii*) is local, but not uncommon in places.

Of the Pipits, both the Tree (*Anthus trivialis*) and the Meadow (*Anthus pratensis*) are common, and known as Titlarks. The Cuckoo is especially fond of placing its egg in the nest of the Meadow Pipit, numbers of which stay the winter with us.

Of the Shrikes or Butcher Birds, both the Great Grey (*Lanius excubitor*) and the Red-backed (*Lanius collurio*) are very scarce visitors. The beautiful Waxwing (*Ampelis garrulus*) in some winters comes over in considerable flocks. This species was first recorded as British, from a specimen obtained at York in January, 1681, by Dr. Martin Lister (*cp. p. 235*).

Of the Flycatchers, the Spotted (*Muscicapa grisola*) is a common summer migrant, appearing very late, but the Pied (*Muscicapa atricapilla*) is exceedingly rare in the neighbourhood.

Of the *Hirundinidæ*—the Swallow, the Martin and the Sand Martin are all well-known summer visitors, though in some seasons the House Martin (*Chelidon urbica*) is more numerous than in others—numbers of them are turned out of their nests by the House Sparrows.

Of the Finches, the Goldfinch (*Carduelis elegans*) still breeds in the neighbourhood, but its numbers are greatly thinned by the bird-catchers in the autumn and winter months, who often take up the hen birds as well, which are useless for singing purposes. The Greenfinch (*Ligurinus chloris*) is very abundant, and most destructive in gardens; the Hawfinch (*Coccothraustes vulgaris*) is decidedly increasing in numbers, in spite of its fondness for green peas, and the consequent enmity of the gardeners. The Siskin

(*Chrysomitris spinus*) is only an uncertain winter visitor, but the House Sparrow (*Passer domesticus*) is only too common, and the damage that he does is almost incalculable—in some of the villages sparrow clubs exist. The Tree Sparrow (*Passer montanus*) is local, but by no means uncommon. The Chaffinch (*Fringilla cælebs*) is very numerous. The Brambling (*Fringilla montifringilla*) at times comes over in enormous flocks in the winter, and feeds greedily upon the beech mast. The Grey Linnet (*Linota cannabina*) breeds yearly in suitable localities. Great singing contests between picked birds of this species are regularly held at many of the York inns. The Mealy Redpoll (*Linota linaria*) has occasionally occurred in severe winters, but the Lesser Redpoll (*Linota rufescens*) is a well-known resident. The Bullfinch (*Pyrrhula europaea*), though somewhat local, breeds regularly but sparingly in the district. The Crossbill (*Loxia curvirostra*) is to be seen in small flocks almost every winter, and has been known to breed several times in other parts of the county.

Of the Buntings, the largest of the family, the Corn Bunting, locally known as the "Owd Bulkin," occurs regularly in the district, but for some reason or other is extremely local. The Yellow Bunting or Yellow Hammer (*Emberiza citrinella*) is numerous, but the Cirl Bunting (*Emberiza cirlus*) is extremely rare. The Reed Bunting, often wrongly called the Black-headed Bunting, is by no means numerous in the immediate neighbourhood of York, though a few pairs breed each year. The Snow Bunting (*Plectrophenax nivalis*), though far more common on the coast, occasionally, and especially under stress of hard weather, comes far inland.

Of the Larks, the common Sky Lark (*Alauda arvensis*) is very common, great flocks coming over in the winter. The Woodlark (*Alauda arborea*) has nested, but only on very rare occasions.

The Starling (*Sturnus vulgaris*) has increased enormously of late years—vast flocks assembling

in certain coverts at roosting time, and rendering them uninhabitable by game or foxes. The Rose-coloured Pastor (*Pastor roseus*), an extremely scarce visitor, has been obtained in the neighbourhood.

Of the *Corvidæ* Crow family, the Jay (*Garrulus glandarius*) and the Magpie (*Pica rustica*), in spite of continual persecution at the hands of gamekeepers, are fairly numerous, especially the latter. Two or three white varieties of the Jay have been obtained at different times. The Jackdaw (*Corvus monedula*) is very numerous, and a great enemy to the eggs and young not only of game birds, but also of ducks and poultry. The Carrion Crow (*Corvus corone*) still keeps up its numbers in spite of the bitterest persecution. The Hooded or Grey-backed Crow (*Corvus cornix*) is a common winter visitor, and to be seen regularly at offal heaps just outside the city. The Rook (*Corvus frugilegus*) is very abundant, and has become almost as great a robber of eggs as the Carrion Crow. On the top of the spire of Heworth Church, just below the weathercock, is a kind of iron cage, and here, for a considerable number of years, a pair of the birds from the adjoining rookery have been in the habit of making their nest, and in several seasons have brought off their young in safety.

The Swift (*Cypselus apus*) is a very common summer visitor, and is often to be seen about the topmost pinnacles of the Minster. The Nightjar (*Caprimulgus europaeus*) breeds sparingly on most of the commons and other suitable localities in the neighbourhood.

Of the Woodpeckers, the Green and the Great Spotted are fairly well distributed, but the Lesser Spotted is extremely scarce.

The Kingfisher (*Alcedo ispida*) is at times seen right in the heart of the city, and would be numerous were it not for the persecution that it undergoes at the hands of certain shooters. I have known a nest situated within two miles of the Minster, in which the young were eventually brought off in safety.

The Cuckoo (*Cuculus canorus*) is common all over the district, and its well-known note is one of the most familiar of our country sounds. There is a ditty known in many parts of the county about the bird, which runs as follows :—

“The Cuckoo is a bonnie bird, she sings as she flies,  
She brings us good news, and tells us no lies;  
She sucks little birds' eggs, to keep her voice clear,  
And then she sings 'Cuckoo' in springtime o't year.”

Of the Owls, the Barn or White Owl (*Strix flammea*), though now decidedly scarce, has nested in buildings in the centre of York on several occasions. The Long-eared Owl (*Asio otus*) is by no means uncommon ; in one small plantation not many miles away, there are yearly to be found two or three nests of this species. The Short-eared Owl (*Asio accipitrinus*) is a regular winter visitor, coming over at the same time as the Woodcock—it is often known as the Woodcock Owl. The Tawny Owl (*Syrnium aluco*) is to be found in most localities suitable to it. I had one alive in my possession for twenty-one years. The way in which Owls are destroyed is a great shame—they do little or no harm, and much good by keeping down the hordes of mice and rats. A specimen of the extremely rare Snowy Owl (*Nyctea scandiaca*) was shot many years ago near Selby. Rare instances of the occurrence of Scops Owl (*Scops guin*) and of the Little Owl (*Athene noctua*) have been recorded, but in the case of the latter, at any rate, most of them are probably descendants of the birds turned out by Mr. St. Quintin, of Scampston.

Of the Hawks, the Harriers, Marsh, Montagu's and Hen Harrier very rarely occur now-a-days. The common Buzzard (*Buteo vulgaris*) appears almost yearly at the times of migration. The Rough-legged Buzzard (*Buteo lagopus*) is much scarcer. The Golden and White-tailed Eagles are recorded for the district, but it is many years since. The Sparrow-hawk

(*Accipiter nisus*) is fairly common in spite of game-keepers and other enemies. The Honey Buzzard (*Pernis apivorus*) has been shot on one or two occasions—and under such conditions that, if left alone, I believe the birds would have bred in the neighbourhood. The Peregrine Falcon (*Falco peregrinus*) passes on migration, and those who try to shoot this grand bird would do far better if they captured him, and trained him up to the good old sport of Falconry. The Hobby (*Falco subbuteo*) is very scarce, but is said to have nested near Selby many years ago. The pretty little Merlin (*Falco æsalon*) breeds regularly on the Yorkshire moors—and has occurred close to the city on migration. It does little or no harm, but is persecuted in common with all other birds of prey—and frequently falls a victim to that most iniquitous abomination, the pole-trap, which is set on so many of our moors and waste ground. A specimen of the Red-legged Falcon (*Falco vespertinus*) is said to have been obtained near Selby in 1844. The Kestrel (*Falco tinnunculus*), a most useful bird in destroying mice and rats, is the commonest of our birds of prey—and to be seen in most localities. Though much persecuted, it still seems to keep up its numbers. The very rare Lesser Kestrel (*Falco cenchris*) was obtained at Wilstrop, near York, by Mr. John Harrison, in November, 1867. This bird is now in the York Museum.

The beautiful Osprey (*Pandion haliaetus*) very rarely occurs—and when it does, generally makes some well-stocked private lake its chief headquarters.

The Cormorant (*Phalacrocorax carbo*) and the Shag (*Phalacrocorax graculus*) have both occurred close to York. The former breeds regularly on the Yorkshire coast. The Gannet or Solan Goose (*Sula bassana*) has also been taken close to the city—one was taken a few years ago at Copmanthorpe, chasing some chickens round a stack in a farm-yard.

The Common Heron (*Ardea cinerea*) breeds regularly in the neighbourhood, and is strictly preserved by the owner of the estate where this Herony exists. The Bittern (*Botaurus stellaris*) occurs in almost every severe winter, sometimes coming over in considerable numbers—one in the collection of Mr. S. H. Smith was shot on Wheldrake Ings, on January 18th, 1905.

A specimen of the Black Stork, now in the York Museum, was obtained in October, 1852, near Market Weighton.

The Spoonbill (*Platalea leucorodia*) has been shot at East Cottingwith.

Of the Grey Geese, the Grey-lag (*Anser cinereus*), the White-fronted (*Anser albifrons*), the Bean (*Anser segetum*), and the pink-footed (*Anser brachyrhynchus*) have all been shot at East Cottingwith and at other places in the neighbourhood. Strensall Common, before it was drained, used to be a famous place for wild fowl of all kinds ; and the Rev. Frank Simpson, of Foston, a famous sportsman in his day, used to say that he had shot many wild geese there, once securing a considerable number at one shot. The Brent and the Bernacle Geese (*Bernicla brenta* and *Bernicla leucopsis*) have both been got at East Cottingwith. The Canada Goose is kept in a state of semi-domestication on several private waters —so that the assumption is that most, if not all, of the birds of this species which have been shot, belong to this category.

The Whooper Swan (*Cygnus musicus*) has been shot on Strensall Common. I had an immature bird of this species brought to me for identification on December 8th, 1898. The Mute Swan (*Cygnus olor*) is kept on the River Ouse in some numbers by the York Corporation. Bewick's Swan (*Cygnus Bewicki*) has been got at East Cottingwith. The specimen in the York Museum was shot on Strensall Common, in February, 1879.

Of the Ducks, the Mallard (*Anas boscas*) is resident throughout the year, its numbers being greatly increased by immigrants in winter. At East Cottingwith, about ten miles from York, great quantities of wild fowl of different species resort to the flooded meadows. Here lives the last of the old style of Yorkshire wild-fowlers—Mr. Snowden Slights, a keen sportsman still, in spite of his being well over the allotted three score years and ten, who works regularly, with his grandson, after the duck—sending them to the game dealers' shops in York.

There were formerly several duck decoys in Yorkshire—two of them being within a few miles of York. At the present time there are only two working decoys, one at Thirkleby Park, near Thirsk, belonging to Sir Ralph Payne-Gallwey, and another very elaborate one at Hornby Castle, near Bedale, owned by the Duke of Leeds, which in a good season accounts for a considerable number of duck. The Gadwall (*Anas strepera*) is very rarely seen, but the Shoveller (*Spatula clypeata*) breeds regularly in the district, and I have had two of the beautiful drakes of this species within a few yards of me, when I have been concealed laid up in cover watching their movements. The Pintail (*Dafila acuta*) has been shot several times at East Cottingwith, but the birds are almost always females or immature males. The Teal (*Nettion crecca*) nests regularly in the district, and is not unfrequently shot in winter. The Wigeon (*Mareca penelope*) comes over in considerable numbers in the autumn, as does the Pochard (*Fuligula ferina*). The Tufted Duck (*Fuligula cristata*), the Scaup (*Fuligula marila*) and the Golden Eye (*Clangula glaucion*) have all been shot at various times at East Cottingwith—and even such a sea-loving duck as the Common Scoter (*Edemia nigra*) has been obtained there.

The three Sawbills, as they are called—the Goosander (*Mergus merganser*), the Red-breasted Merganser

(*Mergus serrator*) and the Smew (*Mergus albellus*), though rare, have all been obtained locally—the first named the most frequently, and the latter the least often.

Of the Pigeons, the Ring Dove, locally known as the Stoggie (*Columba palumbus*), swarms everywhere. The Stock Dove (*Columba œnas*) is much more numerous than formerly; a pair have nested for years in the gardens of the Philosophical Society, and in other places in the town. The pretty little Turtle Dove (*Turtur communis*) of late years has increased its range considerably, and is now by no means uncommon.

Pallas Sand Grouse (*Syrrhaptes paradoxus*) occurred all over the county in the two great irruptions of 1863 and 1888. A Blackcock (*Tetrao tetrix*) was shot on Strensall Common a few years ago. The Red Grouse (*Lagopus scoticus*) is well known on all the Yorkshire moors, some of which are famous for the record bags made upon them. The Pheasant (*Phasianus colchicus*) is abundant; the true *Colchicus* is practically extinct, and so many different crosses have at times been introduced to improve the breed, that it is often difficult to put a name to the pheasant now found in our woods. The Partridge (*Perdix cinerea*) is one of our best-known game birds, though on some soils it does better than on others—the Red-legged Partridge (*Caccabis rufa*) is resident, but in limited numbers. I have known the nest placed on the top of a haystack near York. The Quail (*Coturnix communis*) by no means infrequently breeds in the neighbourhood, and odd birds are shot during partridge shooting.

Of the Rails, the Landrail or Corncrake (*Crex pratensis*) is generally distributed, but in some seasons it is decidedly more numerous than in others. The Spotted Crake (*Porzana maruetta*) is extremely local, and, like the Water Rail, owing to its skulking habits is seldom seen. A specimen of the rare Little Crake (*Porzana parva*) is said to have flown

into a coal barge at Aldwark Bridge, fifteen miles from York. An example of the very scarce Baillon's Crake (*Porzana bailloni*) has also been taken in the district. The Waterhen (*Gallinula chloropus*) and the Coot (*Fulica atra*) are both plentiful.

Of the Bustards, in the early days of the last century, the Great Bustard (*Otis tarda*) was common on the Yorkshire Wolds, but its occurrences since the date of its final extinction as a resident, about the year 1830, have been very few and far between. The Little Bustard (*Otis tetrax*) has also occurred many years ago.

The Stone Curlew (*Ædicnemus scolopax*) still breeds but in very limited numbers.

Of the Plovers, the Cream-coloured Courser (*Cursorius gallicus*) has been known to occur. The Golden Plover (*Charadrius pluvialis*) is resident. The Grey Plover (*Squatarola helvetica*) very seldom comes so far inland, and the same may be said of the Ringed Plover (*Ægialitis hiaticula*). Small trips of Dotterel (*Eudromias morinellus*) are occasionally observed at the times of migration—chiefly in the spring—but in ever-decreasing numbers. The Lapwing or Green Plover (*Vanellus vulgaris*), locally known as the Teafit, still keeps up its numbers, in spite of egging, netting and shooting.

Of the Waders, the Woodcock (*Scolopax rusticula*) breeds regularly in the district, and some years ago a pure white specimen was picked up dead near York, having been killed against the telegraph wires. The Great Snipe (*Gallinago major*) is occasionally shot in the autumn. The Common Snipe (*Gallinago celestis*) breeds regularly, and the little Jack Snipe (*Gallinago gallinula*) is shot in varying numbers throughout the winter months. The Dunlin (*Tringa alpina*) at times during severe weather has appeared in large numbers at East Cottingwith. Mr. S. H. Smith, of York, vouches for the fact of a Little Stint (*Tringa minuta*) having been killed at Haxby

on July 28th, 1900. In hard weather a good many Knot (*Tringa canutus*) have been obtained at East Cottingwith, in company with the Dunlin.

The Common Sandpiper (*Totanus hypoleucus*) is a regular summer visitor. The Green Sandpiper (*Totanus ochropus*) I have seen several times, chiefly in the autumn, but the Wood Sandpiper (*Totanus glareola*) is exceedingly rare. The Common Redshank (*Totanus calidris*) nests in some numbers in the neighbourhood. A specimen of the rare Spotted Redshank (*Totanus fuscus*) was obtained at East Cottingwith in 1896, by the old wild-fowler, Slights, and is now in my possession. The Whimbrel (*Numenius phaeopus*) may often be heard passing overhead at the times of migration, uttering its well-known cry—and odd specimens have been shot. The Common Curlew (*Numenius arquata*) breeds on most of the high moorlands in the county.

The Terns or Sea Swallows are at times driven far inland by heavy gales. A Common Tern (*Sterna fluviatilis*) was picked up dead by the Scarborough Bridge on June 18th, 1897, and both this bird and the Arctic Tern (*Sterna macrura*) have occurred at East Cottingwith. On some of the large reservoirs both the Little Tern (*Sterna minuta*) and the Black Tern (*Hydrochelidon nigra*) occur more or less regularly on the spring migration.

Of the Gulls, the Little Gull (*Larus minutus*) I have seen picked up either dead or exhausted after a storm, on two or three occasions. The Black-headed Gull (*Larus ridibundus*) used to breed regularly on Strensall Common, but the birds have now all been driven away. There is a nice little colony, however, on the estate of Lord Wenlock; some years ago this was also in danger of extinction, the eggs being taken wholesale, and the birds molested in every possible way. These pretty and useful birds are, however, now most stringently protected, and have increased and multiplied

considerably, and are a source of great pleasure and interest to all bird lovers in the district. The Common Gull (*Larus canus*) and the Herring Gull (*Larus argentatus*) by no means infrequently stray inland in autumn and winter. The Greater and the Lesser Black-backed Gulls (*Larus marinus*, *Larus fuscus*) are more chary of their visits, but I have seen both species, and the Kittiwake (*Rissa tridactyla*) occasionally comes so far inland.

Of the Skuas, odd examples of both the Great Skua (*Stercorarius catarrhactes*) and Buffon's Skua (*Stercorarius parasiticus*) have been taken, but these are necessarily of great rarity—and the same may be said of those strictly oceanic birds the Petrels and Shearwaters, specimens of which have occasionally appeared after very heavy weather at sea, viz., the Storm Petrel (*Procellaria pelagica*), Leach's Petrel (*Procellaria leucorhoa*), and the Manx Shearwater (*Puffinus anglorum*).

Of the Alcidœ or Auks, we have in our Museum two specimens of the now extinct Great Auk (*Alca impennis*), the history of which is not definitely known.

The great feature of Yorkshire bird life, which is second to none in the British Isles, is the vast number of sea fowl that breed on the high cliffs between Filey and Flamborough Head. After severe weather odd specimens are carried inland, and the following have occurred close to York :—The Razorbill (*Alca torda*), the Common Guillemot (*Uria troile*) and the Puffin (*Fratercula arctica*). I obtained a specimen of the very rare Brünnich's Guillemot (*Uria brunnichii*) at Filey, on January 30th, 1895, which was used by the late Lord Lilford for reproduction in his beautiful work, *Birds of the British Isles*. The Little Auk (*Mergulus alle*) has also been blown as far inland.

The Great Northern Diver (*Colymbus glacialis*) has been shot at East Cottingwith, as has also the Red-throated Diver (*Colymbus septentrionalis*).

All the Grebes have been taken in the district, viz., the Great Crested (*Podiceps cristatus*), the Red-necked (*Podiceps griseigena*), the Slavonian (*Podiceps auritus*), the Black-necked or eared (*Podiceps nigricollis*), and the Common Little Grebe or Dabchick (*Podiceps fluviatilis*), which breeds regularly quite close to York. This well-known little diver is named in all three Ridings "Tom Pudding" or "Puffer."

---

## REPTILIA AND AMPHIBIA.

OXLEY GRABHAM, M.A., M.B.O.U.,  
Curator of the York Museum.

Within the twenty mile radius embraced in the scope of this handbook, all the Amphibia and Reptilia which are distributed throughout the county are to be found.

The Grass-snake, *Tropidonotus natrix*, though occurring in a few favoured localities, is not nearly so numerous as is the Viper or Adder, *Vipera verus*, locally known as the Hag-worm. On the moors and commons this latter snake is decidedly abundant, and at one time used to swarm on Strensall Common, but the soldiers have almost exterminated them, and it is rarely that one is seen there now.

The old and time-honoured belief still holds good all over the county, that when a family party of these snakes is disturbed, the little vipers crawl down their mother's throat out of the way of danger.

*Lacerta vivipara*, the common English Lizard, is very abundant on all the moors, commons, heaths and waste places throughout the county, but I have never yet heard of a really authentic occurrence of the Sand Lizard (*Lacerta agilis*).

*Anguis fragilis*, the Blind Worm, is somewhat local, but fairly numerous in some places. We have two types, one of a greyish colour without any line down

the centre of its back, and the other brownish in tint with a narrow line on the middle of the back running the whole length of the body.

#### AMPHIBIA.

All three Newts occur in the district, positively swarming in some of the stagnant pools and ditches. They all are known locally as "Askeds," and are supposed to be very "venomous"—*Triton cristatus*, the large yellow-bellied Water Newt, especially so. The male of this species, with the large fringe running down his back in the breeding season, will often take the small worms on the hook of the angler.

*Triton vulgaris*, the common Smooth Newt, is very numerous, often being found under stones and in cellars in winter.

*Triton palmatus*, the Webbed or Palmated Newt, is decidedly rare, but I have taken it in one or two places in the district.

*Bufo vulgaris* is common everywhere. The Natter-jack Toad, *Bufo calamita*, has not yet been taken near York.

*Rana temporaria*, the common Frog, is ubiquitous, and to be seen almost everywhere where there is enough water to hold it. Rats kill enormous numbers. Some years ago I turned nearly a score of the *Rana esculenta*—edible frog—into some ponds in what seemed a suitable locality for them near York, but I fear that the rats frustrated my efforts and devoured them all.

#### PISCES.

##### RILEY FORTUNE, F.Z.S.

In the immediate neighbourhood of York, the rivers and becks are for the most part sluggish in character, and contain principally what are known as "scale" or "coarse" fish. Exceptions to

this rule are not uncommon ; for instance, the Driffield Beck contains exceedingly fine trout, and in the waters of the Costa magnificent specimens of both trout and grayling are abundant.

The rivers in the Kirby Moorside and Pickering districts abound with "game" fish, and they are plentiful in the Nidd, Ure, Swale, Wharfe, and their tributaries.

Practically all the waters in the county are now preserved either by the owners or by angling clubs, and not only are they well protected, but they are annually stocked with trout. Many angling clubs possess their own hatcheries, and thousands of trout are reared every year (from eggs imported from a distance), and turned into the various streams and lakes.

Angling clubs and anglers have multiplied so rapidly, that were it not for this artificial stocking our Yorkshire rivers would soon be fished out—as it is, trout are certainly increasing. A great advantage derived from this importation of ova, fry and yearling fish, is that a change of blood is continually taking place, with benefit to both the quantity and quality of the fish.

Stocking with "scale" fish has not so far been attempted to any extent ; they, however, probably from their greater productiveness, appear to hold their own fairly well.

There are close times for all fish with the exception of pike. "Specimen" fish are probably not so frequently met with as in the past, but each year, nevertheless, brings its records of notable captures. Without doubt the greatest curse our fish fauna has to face is the constantly increasing pollution of our streams. We hope, however, that the increased attention paid to sanitary matters will soon remedy this evil.

Following is a complete list of fishes found within a radius of about twenty-five miles of York.

Sturgeon (*Acipenser sturio*).—This fish is occasionally captured in the Ouse. It has occurred in the Wharfe and Nidd; before the weirs were constructed one found its way up the Wharfe as far as Arthington, and one was caught at Boston Spa, weighing fifteen stones.

Perch (*Perca fluviatilis*).—Common in all lakes and in the deeper and slow-flowing portions of the streams. In some years there appears to be an overabundance of these fish, where before they have not been noted for being numerous; for instance, in the year 1900, anglers were capturing large quantities in the Nidd, where previously and subsequently very few were obtained. This superabundance seems to occur at irregular intervals.

Ruffe (*Acerina cernua*).—A common species, found frequenting the same localities as perch. Locally known as Tommy Rough, Tommy Parsee, and Pope.

Bullhead (*Cottus gobio*).—Common in all the becks and rivers; it is an excellent bait for large trout. Locally called Miller's Thumb.

Three-spined Stickleback (*Gasterosteus aculeatus*).—A very common fish, found in nearly all ponds and in many of the smaller streams. They flourish in the ponds in brick fields, a bottom of clay appearing to suit them. Some years ago we endeavoured to make a rearing pond for trout in an exceedingly clear and pure stream; it, however, abounded with sticklebacks, and all our efforts could not exterminate them. After we imagined we had cleared them out, they got amongst the trout fry, and cleared them out entirely.

Ten-spined Stickleback (*Gasterosteus pungitius*).—Not very abundant, but appears to be thinly distributed over the whole district. It is found chiefly in the small drains or ditches in the low-lying portions of the county.

Burbot (*Lota vulgaris*).—This curious fish is very rarely met with. It has been caught several times in the Nidd, Ure and Ouse. In the lower reaches

of the Wharfe it appears to be most frequently met with ; common about Pickering ; gets up the burrows of the water voles.

Flounder (*Pleuronectes flesus*).—Not uncommon in some of the rivers ; ascends the Wharfe in goodly numbers as far as Tadcaster ; it used formerly to ascend the Nidd, but I have not heard of any in that river for a considerable time. Very common at Naburn, sometimes running up to considerably over a pound in weight.

Carp (*Cyprinus carpio*).—Inhabits most of the lakes in the district. The largest I have seen was obtained in the low lake at Allerton Park ; it weighed eleven and a half pounds, and was caught when netting the lake, previous to drawing off the water, for cleaning it out. I carefully placed it in one of the other lakes, so that probably its weight has increased.

Barbel (*Barbus vulgaris*).—Common in the rivers. The largest of which I have any note were obtained at Boroughbridge, in successive years, by the same angler. They weighed over nine pounds each.

Gudgeon (*Gobio fluviatilis*).—Exceedingly common in all the rivers and becks. In Beaver Dyke, a reservoir belonging to the Harrogate Corporation, they grow to a very large size. This species shares with dace and roach the doubtful honour of being a favourite bait for pike.

Roach (*Leuciscus rutilus*).—Very plentiful in both lakes and rivers. Seldom obtained over two pounds in weight.

Rudd (*Leuciscus erythrogaster*).—Found in several lakes and ponds, where they are abundant. Not as a rule distinguished from the previous species. Some ponds on the banks of the Ure, known as Queen Mary's Dubs, contain large numbers, but they are very small.

Chub (*Leuciscus cephalus*).—Very common ; large shoals may often be seen in summer basking on the surface of some of the lakes and deeper portions of the rivers. The largest of which I have any record

was captured at Boroughbridge, and weighed just over six and a half pounds. Many people are unable to distinguish between a small chub and a dace.

Dace (*Leuciscus vulgaris*).—This beautiful fish is very common in the rivers and some of the becks, and very large shoals are frequently seen.

Minnow (*Leuciscus phoxinus*).—Very plentiful. In some of the deeper portions of the streams they grow to a large size. Called locally "Mennard."

Tench (*Tinca vulgaris*).—Plentiful in most lakes and ponds, occasionally caught in the rivers, having probably been washed down from one of the lakes. A beautiful variety known as the Golden Tench is found in the reservoirs in the Washburn Valley ; they were introduced into these waters by Lord Walsingham. When netting the lakes at Allerton Park, large numbers of tench were caught and transferred to the upper waters ; one haul contained about 150, nearly all of a uniform weight of two and a half pounds each.

Bream (*Abramis brama*).—Not uncommon in the Ouse ; found also in the lower reaches of the Wharfe, and occasionally in the Ure and Swale. Locally called Bellows.

Bleak (*Alburnus lucidus*).—A not uncommon species in the rivers, but less plentiful than formerly. Known locally as Willow Blades.

Loach (*Nemachilus barbatulus*).—Common in all becks and rivers. Boys find sport in spearing and capturing them with dinner forks, if they are quick enough. Known as Pottle.

Pike (*Esox lucius*).—Common. In the Nidd it is not found above Goldsborough Weir, but in the Wharfe, Ure and Swale similar barriers have not been effective in confining them to the lower waters. Specimens of from fifteen pounds to twenty pounds in weight are not uncommon. In some of the private lakes large fish are frequently obtained.

Salmon (*Salmo salar*).—The filth poured into the waters of the Humber by the rivers Aire, Calder, etc., has been most effective in yearly lessening the number of salmon which ascend our rivers. Small quantities continue to ascend the Ure as far as Masham, an excellent salmon pass at Boroughbridge giving them easy access to this river. In the Nidd they do not get beyond Goldsborough Weir, but very few get into the Nidd now. About fifteen years ago salmon parr were a perfect nuisance to the fly-fisher, but of late years it is very exceptional to meet with one. A few ascend the Wharfe as far as Tadcaster.

The history of salmon, in connection with the rivers flowing into the Ouse and Humber, is a very deplorable one, and unless the abominable pollution can be prevented, this neighbourhood will soon cease to be visited by the migratory *Salmonidæ*.

Salmon Trout (*Salmo trutta*).—The remarks upon the salmon apply equally to this species. They have, however, never been plentiful.

Trout (*Salmo fario*).—Thanks to the yearly stocking by the Yorkshire Fishery Board, who annually make grants of 500 yearling fish to selected clubs, and to the private efforts of angling clubs and riparian owners, this species is as plentiful as ever. The Loch Leven variety has been introduced into some of the lakes. The American *fontinalis*, too, has been introduced, but failed to establish itself. That beautiful variety known as the Zebra Trout was placed in several lakes, but has now become extinct. The Rainbow Trout (*S. iriedus*) was introduced into the Nidd, above and below Knaresborough, and extensive stocking took place for several successive years ; at first everything pointed to success, and apparently an exceedingly game and sporting addition had been made to our fish fauna ; but, alas ! expectations were not realised ; the fish eventually disappeared, evidently by dropping

down the stream. Probably some reached the sea, never to return ; in any case, the experiment ended in complete failure.

In one or two lakes which have no outlet, Rainbows have done well up to a certain point ; they grow rapidly until they reach a weight of three to four pounds, when they appear to deteriorate. I cannot, however, find any evidence of their breeding.

The finest specimens of Brown Trout are found in the Costa and the Driffield waters. They have been recorded up to ten pounds and sixteen pounds from the canal at Driffield.

Smelt or Spailing (*Osmerus eperlanus*).—Many of these fish are taken in the River Ouse near York, in the early spring.

Grayling (*Thymallus vulgaris*).—Found in nearly all the streams. The Costa provides the largest specimens. At one time they were practically exterminated in the Nidd by the washings from the lead mines, and any specimens captured were invariably malformed. Since the mines have ceased working, they have re-established themselves—to some extent helped by the introduction of 5,000 fry at Killinghall. In like manner, they were practically cleared out of the lower reaches of the Wharfe by the pollution poured into its waters by the paper mills at Otley.

Allis Shad. (*Clupea alosa*), or King of the Herrings. A very fine specimen of this scarce Yorkshire fish was caught in the salmon net at Sutton-on-Derwent, by Mr. Fred Smith, on May 27th, 1899. He took it to Mr. Oxley Grabham, who presented it to the York Museum, where it now is. This fish weighed six and a quarter pounds.

Eel (*Anguilla vulgaris*).—Two species of this fish are recognised ; the sharp-nosed, locally known as the Silver Eel, is the most plentiful. The broad-nosed species (*A. latirostris*), called locally Grig, is not so abundant—few anglers, however, distinguish

between them. Eels are much too plentiful, for in destructiveness they far outstrip the pike.

Lamprey (*Petromyzon marinus*).—Ascends the rivers, but nowhere abundant. I have seen some large specimens in the Wharfe at Tadcaster.

Lampern (*Petromyzon fluviatilis*).—Very plentiful in the rivers.

Pride or Small Lamprey (*Petromyzon branchialis*).—Not uncommon by any means, but still not so abundant as the previous species.

## THE COLEOPTERA OF THE NEIGHBOURHOOD OF YORK.

REV. WILLIAM C. HEY, M.A.

THIRTY years ago the neighbourhood of York afforded the coleopterist as rich opportunities for field work as any district in England. At Strensall and at Riccall, extensive undrained commons, containing numerous mossy pools, and some larger sheets of water, provided a prolific and delightful hunting ground, while Askham Bog, a genuine bit of fenland, was far removed from houses.

At that time almost every grass-field contained its pond or bit of marshy ground, and the great meadows or "ings" by the sides of the River Ouse, with their sandy banks and deep ditches, yielded many local insects.

At the present time, Strensall Common has fallen into the hands of the War Office. Riccall Common has been much reduced, and grows potatoes instead of heather; and Askham Bog, though still delightful and interesting, has been so closely approached by houses, and is so much disturbed by the noise and smoke of passing trains, that it is no longer the place it was. With the disappearance of its groves of Royal Fern, and the shrinking of its waters, some of the rarest of its beetles appear to have vanished also; and in several instances, to be extinct at Askham Bog means to be lost to Britain.

The riches of Askham Bog appear to have been first explored by Mr. A. Wright, who sent a record of his captures to Loudon's magazine in the year 1831. He took *Hydaticus seminiger*, which seems

to have become extinct soon after; *Hydaticus transversalis*, which I took last in 1885, and *Hydroporus decoratus*, which is still plentiful. He also took *Dytiscus dimidiatus*, which was not seen again till 1882, when I took one specimen, but about ten years later I captured six examples in one afternoon, so that the species may still linger.

Another early York collector was Mr. R. Cook. He took *Prasocuris Hannoverana* at Fulford, and *Blethisa multipunctata* at Askham Bog.

In 1840 the late Archdeacon Hey (the father of the writer of this paper) began to work the district, and never entirely gave up field-work till his death in 1882. His collection is now in the Museum of the Yorkshire Philosophical Society. Among his first finds at Askham Bog were *Limnebius picinus* and *Hydroporus Scalesianus*, and soon after he took *Agabus uliginosus*, *unguicularis* and *abbreviatus*, *Rhantus Grapii*, and *Hydroporus oblongus* and *rufifrons*. But the insects which he always regarded as the gems among his discoveries at Askham were *Hydrena Palustris* and *Pselaphus Dresdensis*.

So scarce, however, have these minute insects always been, that during the forty years Archdeacon Hey paid visits to the Bog, he scarcely obtained as many as half-a-dozen of each species.

He once took a specimen of *Dytiscus circumcinctus*, and I took another example myself about ten years ago.

*Bagous petro* was first recognised by Canon Fowler among some insects he had taken at Askham. I have since taken four examples from wet moss. These are the only British examples known.

Askham Bog also yields *Oödes helopiooides*, *Hydroporus melanarius*, *neglectus*, *umbrosus*, *granularis*, *geminus*, *vittula*, *Rhantus exolebus*, *Ilybius gauttiger*, and a large number of interesting *Philhydrida*.

Strensall Common used to yield *Agabus femoralis*, *Hydroporus neglectus* and *rufifrons*, *Rhantus bistrigatus*

and other good water beetles. *Hydroporus tristis* still lingers in small pools. In dry sandy places, *Sarrotrium clavicornis* and *Philonthus lucens* have been taken. *Carabus nitens* and *arvensis* both occur. In the fir trees that border the Common, *Coccinella ocellata* is fairly plentiful.

The magnificent *Chrysomela fulgida* used to be found in very extraordinary numbers feeding upon tansy on the banks of the River Ouse. It is still there, but in much less abundance. *Hypera meles* has been found on the river bank near Selby. Two fine and rare species of *Ocypterus* have been met with at York, viz., *fuscatus* and *pedator*. *O. fuscatus* occurred in the flood refuse of the Ouse ; *O. pedator* has been found in recent years at Clifton, just north of the city. This insect had hitherto been considered an exclusively southern species, and its occurrence at York is singular. It is so conspicuous that it could hardly have been overlooked had it inhabited this locality for any length of time. Probably, like another southern species, formerly unknown, but now quite frequent in Yorkshire, *Rhizotrogus Solstitialis*, it has extended its northward range in recent years.

I should be glad to furnish more definite information regarding localities to any entomologist who may desire it.

## LEPIDOPTERA.

SAMUEL WALKER.

**A**LTHOUGH the limited space allotted to this article restricts it to a small part of Yorkshire, yet the list may be described as one well representing the whole of the lepidoptera found in the county, and comprises some of the most local as well as many of the rarer species recorded in the county list.

Of even greater interest to the entomologist than the number of species to be met with here is the marked variation exhibited by many of them, some of which have become permanently melanistic, whilst several others have been observed during recent years to be developing a strong and increasing tendency towards the same form of variation.

Situated almost in the centre of the county, the area treated in this handbook—a radius of twenty miles around York—possesses many well-known collecting grounds, most of which have been thoroughly investigated.

About three miles to the south of the city is situated Askham Bog, a low-lying tract of some two hundred acres, about half of which is covered with stunted trees and bushes, with a thick undergrowth. Surrounding the wood is a wide expanse of boggy land, covered with coarse grasses. This bog, with an insect fauna in many of its features akin to that of the Cambridgeshire Fens, has had some three hundred and fifty species of the macro lepidoptera credited to it—more than a third of the entire number contained in the British list.

Bishop Wood, near to Cawood, about twelve miles to the south of York, is a very extensive and well timbered area, and is the only known Yorkshire habitat of *Boarmia roboraria*, Linn. Situated a few miles to the east of Bishop Wood is Skipwith Common, which has been carefully worked in recent years, resulting in the addition of several new and interesting records to the local list. Strensall Common, some six miles north-east of York, with the adjacent woods and moor on the Sandburn side, is another interesting district, and is famed as being the only English locality for *Epione vespertaria*, Linn. The Buttercrambe Woods, extending further to the east along the Derwent valley, reach up to the foot of the Yorkshire Wolds—the limit of the district in that direction. From York, almost due north, the twenty miles radius just encloses the first summits of the Hambleton Hills, where a few of the high moorland species are met with. The western part of the locality (excepting the neighbourhood of Wetherby) appears to have received less investigation than other areas, due to the inaccessibility of many of the woods to the entomologist, which are restricted to the preservation of game.

Most of the common and generally distributed species have been eliminated from the list.

The arrangement and nomenclature adopted in the Yorkshire list\* has been followed to facilitate easy reference, and to this list I am indebted for the records of several species.

### MACRO LEPIDOPTERA.

#### DIURNI.

Only about half of the number of butterflies in the British list have been recorded for the district, and several of these have during recent years become extinct, whilst some others are so scarce that the inference is they are maintaining their existence under much changed and difficult conditions.

---

\* *Ent. Trans. Yorks. Nat. Union*, Vol. 2.

*Gonepteryx rhamni*, Linn. Rarely seen except after hibernation. Recorded at Skipwith in autumn.

*Colias edusa*, Fab. Appears in its migratory years only. A good number were met with in 1890. Two specimens of ab. *Helice*, Hüb, were captured on the Malton Road, near to York, about 1880.

*C. hyale*, Linn. Formerly, in its seasons, in some numbers on Tilmire, near York, but has not been a visitant of late years.

*Argynnis paphia*, Linn. Bishop Wood and Oswald-kirk.

*A. aglaia*, Linn. Recently in numbers at Sandburn and Strensall : many of the specimens appear to be ab. *suffusa*, Tutt.

*A. adippe*, Fab. Bishop Wood and York.

*A. lathonia*, Linn. York claims one of the two known county captures by Edwin Birchall.

*A. euphrosyne*, Linn. Numerous at Bishop Wood ; somewhat rare at Sandburn.

*A. selene*, Fab. Common at Askham Bog and Sandburn.

*Melitaea artemis*, Fab. Formerly common at Buttercrambe and Askham Bog. It is a species that has quite disappeared.

*Vanessa c-album*, Linn. None have been recorded in recent years, but it is met with rather commonly in Beck-dale, Helmsley, just over the fringe of our area.

*V. polychloros*, Linn. York and Bishop Wood.

*V. antiopa*, Linn. This rarity occasionally finds its way to the district ; none in recent years.

*V. io*, Linn. Very scarce.

*V. cardui*, Linn. A migrant, occasionally abundant all over the district.

*Arge galathea*, Linn. Formerly plentiful at Buttercrambe. A record in the *Entomologist* for 1903 declares it to be still found "within easy distance of York."

*Satyrus egeria*, Linn. Bishop Wood and Sledmere.

*S. megæra*, Linn. Bishop Wood and Sledmere.

*S. tithonus*, Linn. Scarce now ; formerly plentiful at Sandburn.

*S. hyperanthus*, Linn. Abundant. Variety *Obsoleta*, Tutt., is found at Sandburn ; and var. *lanceolata*, Shipp., at Castle Howard.

*Thecla rubi*, Linn. Occasionally at Sandburn.

*T. quercus*, Linn. Common in the larval state at Bishop Wood.

*T. w-album*, Knoch. York (*Stainton's Manual*), Castle Howard.

*Polyommatus phlaeas*, Linn. A few ab. *Schmidii*, Ger., have been captured at Sandburn, and one was seen on the Ouse bank near to York Station a few years ago.

*Lycæna ægon*, Bork. Formerly on outskirts of Skipwith Common.

*L. agestis*, W.V. Sledmere.

*L. alsus*, Fab. Common about Wetherby.

*L. argiolus*, Linn. York (*Stainton's Manual*). Probably now extinct here.

*Syrichthus alveolus*, Hüb. Scarce in the district.

*Hesperia comma*, Linn. One record only, by Edwin Birchall.

#### NOCTURNI.

*Smerinthus ocellatus*, Linn. Generally distributed in the district.

*S. populi*, Linn. Commoner than the preceding.

*S. tiliæ*, Linn. A single capture was made many years ago by W. C. Hewitson, but it is doubtful if the range of this species extends so far north.

*Acherontia atropos*, Linn. Plentiful some years, especially in the districts where the potato is largely cultivated.

*Sphinx convolvuli*, Linn. Specimens of this migratory species are found most years, but rarely in numbers.

*S. ligustri*, Linn. Very rare in the district.

*Deilephila galii*, W.V. Bishop Wood and York. Exceedingly rare.

*Chærocampa celerio*, Linn. An example of this rarity was taken at Heworth (York) in 1868.

*C. porcellus*, Linn. Common at Skipwith, occasionally at Sandburn.

*C. elpenor*, Linn. Askham Bog, Skipwith and Sandburn.

*Macroglossa stellatarum*, Linn. Some years everywhere in the district.

*M. fuciformis*, Linn. Selby. Rare.

*M. bombyliformis*, Esp. Apparently extinct in this locality. Formerly common at Langwith, and in lesser numbers at Sandburn.

*Sesia culiciformis*, Bork. Strensall.

*S. sphegiformis*, W.V. Langwith, before the wood was cleared. In 1894 a specimen was taken at Bishop Wood.

*S. bembeciformis*, Hüb. Larvæ not uncommon in sallows at times—Skipwith.

*Zeuzera æsculi*, Linn. Rare in the district.

*Cossus ligniperda*, Fab. Generally distributed, but not a common district species.

*Hepialus sylvinus*, Linn. Askham Bog and Sandburn, scarce. Abundant at Skipwith.

*Procris statices*, Linn. Sometimes plentiful near Strensall, and also near Huntington.

*Zygæna loniceræ*, Esp. Very local and abundant. Several fine varieties have been bred from Sandburn.

*Nudaria senex*, Hüb. Askham Bog. It is comparatively scarce now compared with the numbers met with there twenty years ago.

*Lithosia mesomella*, Linn. Sandburn and Skipwith.

*L. helveola*, Och. York is the sole county locality.

*L. quadra*, Linn. One specimen in 1875 at Askham Bog, doubtless a migrant.

*Chelonia russula*, Linn. Strensall and Skipwith. Probably common on all the moors in the district.

*C. plantaginis*, Linn. Sandburn; rare.

*Arctia fuliginosa*, Linn. Strensall specimens approach the variety *borealis*, Staud.

*A. lubricipeda*, Linn. ; vars. *eboraci* and *fasciata*, Tugwell, are often reared from local larvæ.

*Liparis salicis*, Linn. Very rare. Bishop Wood in 1903.

*Orgyia gonostigma*, Linn. Sparingly at Bishop Wood and Askham Bog.

*Trichiura crataegi*, Linn. Scarce, but generally distributed throughout the district.

*Pæcilocampa populi*, Linn. Not uncommon.

*Bombyx rubi*, Linn. Abundant on Strensall and Skipwith Commons.

*Lasiocampa quercifolia*, Linn. There is a doubtful record of this species at Askham Bog.

#### GEOMETRÆ.

*Epione vespertaria*, Linn. This sexually dimorphic species is of the greatest local interest, and is confined principally to Sandburn. It has apparently extended its range of late, as specimens have been met with on the adjoining Strensall Common, and also on the "waste" land near to Warthill Station. Doubtless it exists in the Sandburn district wherever the Dwarf Sallow (*Salix repens*) grows.

*E. apicaria*, W.V. Fairly well distributed.

*Venilia maculata*, Linn. York (*Stainton's Manual*).

*Angerona prunaria*, Linn. Recorded both at York and Bishop Wood ; has not been noticed in recent years.

*Elloptia fasciaria*, Linn. Sandburn, scarce.

*Eurytmene dolabraria*, Linn. Everingham Park, fairly plentiful ; Sandburn, scarce.

*Pericallia syringaria*, Linn. Generally distributed, but not common.

*Selenia lunaria*, Linn. York, scarce.

*Ennomos fuscantaria*, Haw. Specimens reared from larvæ taken at Stamford Bridge are quite "smoky" in appearance.

*E. erosaria*, W.V. Commoner than the preceding.

*Phigalia pilosaria*, W.V. The var. *monacharia*, Staud., is a recent addition to the local list of melanic varieties. Bishop Wood is the place of record.

*Nyssia hispidaria*, W.V. Scarce; chiefly confined to Sandburn and Bishop Wood.

*Amphydasis prodromaria*, Linn. Not uncommon at Everingham, and occasionally seen at Sandburn.

*A. betularia*, Linn. The variety *doubledayaria*, Mill., has almost supplanted the type everywhere in the district.

*Hemerophila abruptaria*, Thun. York, rare.

*Cleora lichenaria*, W.V. Askham Bog.

*Boarmia roboraria*, W.V. This appears to be confined to Bishop Wood, and is the only county locality for the species.

*Tephrosia biundularia*, Esp. Dark and almost black forms now constitute the majority of the specimens found in the woods where the moth abounds.

*Pseudoterpna cytisaria*, W.V. Chiefly on Strensall Common.

*Geometra papilionaria*, Linn. Common amongst birch.

*Phorodesma bajularia*, W.V. This pretty species occurs at Sandburn, Bishop Wood, Skipwith and Everingham.

*Ephyra trilinearia*, Bork. Common, Sledmere.

*E. pendularia*, Linn. Langwith, but more plentifully at Sandburn—always local.

*Asthenes luteata*, W.V. Sandburn and Sledmere.

*A. blomeraria*, Dbl. Abundant at Sledmere and the woods around Helmsley.

*Venusia cambricaria*, Gn. Some years common at Sledmere.

*Acidalia rubricata*, W.V. Two or three records for Stockton-on-Forest were made a great many years ago.

*A. straminata*, Tr. Skipwith is one of the few county localities.

*A. immutata*, Linn. Common some seasons at Askham Bog.

*A. inornata*, Haw. Sandburn and Skipwith.

*A. emarginata*, Linn. Rather rare, Sandburn Common.

*Macaria liturata*, Linn. Found in most of the fir woods.

*Numeria pulveraria*, Linn. Rather more plentiful at Bishop Wood than elsewhere in the district.

*Scodiona belgiaria*, Hüb. Considering the extent of moorland, this species must be considered scarce—Strensall and Skipwith.

*Lythria purpuraria*, Linn. The district claim to this rare species rests on two specimens taken more than thirty years ago at Stockton-on-Forest, and recorded by Thomas Allis.

*Aspilates strigillaria*, Hüb. Strensall and Sandburn. Generally rare in Yorkshire.

*Abraxas grossulariata*, Linn. Too abundant at times in gardens, this species varies to a remarkable extent in the neighbourhood of York. The var. *varleyata*, Porritt, and var. *flavofasciata*, Huene, have recently been bred locally.

*A. ulmata*, Fab. Occurs where there is much Wych elm. Abundant till recently at Sledmere, where vars. *obscura* and *suffusa*, Tutt., were frequently met with. Since 1901 the species has become quite scarce there.

*Hybernia progemmaria*, Hüb. The var. *fuscata*, Harrison, is common on the hedges around York.

*Eupithecia subumbrata*, W.V. York.

*E. pygmæata*, Hüb. Sandburn and Skipwith.

*E. satyrata*, Hüb. Common in the Strensall district.

*E. trisignata*, H.S. Some seasons plentiful at Bishop Wood, also at Red House Wood, near Moor Monkton.

*E. albipunctata*, Haw. The var. *angelicata*, Crewe, was first named from imagines bred from larvæ found feeding on *Angelica sylvestris*, at Bishop Wood.

*E. valerianata*, Hüb. Askham Bog.

*E. indigata*, Hüb. In almost all fir plantings in the district.

*E. constrictata*, Gn. There is a record at Bramham.

*E. dodoneata*, Gn. York, rare.

*Collix sparsata*, Hüb. Askham Bog is the chief Yorkshire locality. The moths fly freely to the bloom of the buckthorn (*Rhamnus catharticus*) in June. Later in the year the larvæ may be found feeding on *Lysimachia vulgaris*.

*Lobophora sexalata*, Hüb. Askham Bog.

*L. hexapterata*, W.V. Langwith, near York.

*L. lobulata*, Hüb. Generally distributed.

*Hypsipetes ruberata*, Frey. Askham Bog and Strensall.

*H. impluviata*, W.V. More generally met with than the preceding.

*Melanippe hastata*, Linn. Scarce, Bishop Wood.

*M. tristata*, Linn. Abundant near Ampleforth.

*Camptogramma fluviata*, Hüb. Two examples of this rarity have been captured at York.

*Phibalapteryx lignata*, Hüb. Askham Bog.

*Scotosia dubitata*, Linn. Scarce, Askham Bog and Strensall.

*S. vetulata*, W.V. Common in the larval state, Askham Bog.

*S. rhamnata*, W.V. The two county localities are in our area—Askham Bog and Skipwith.

*S. undulata*, Linn. Scarce; Sandburn, Askham Bog and Bishop Wood.

*Cidaria miata*, Linn. Strensall.

*C. russata*, W.V. Common, but very variable, the black forms predominating.

*Eubolia mœniata*, W.V. Of this great rarity one specimen was taken near York in 1866.

#### PSEUDO-BOMBYCES.

*Dicranura bicuspis*, Bork. We have local records for this rarity by Robert Cook in 1859, and by T. H. Allis in 1860. No recent captures are known of.

*D. furcula*, Linn. Skipwith, and rather common at Strensall.

*D. bifida*, Hüb. Scarce about York.

*Petasia cassinea*, Fab. Askham Bog, Bishop Wood and Sledmere.

*Clostera curtula*, Linn. The only county record is founded on York captures.

*C. reclusa*, W.V. Also confined to our district—Strensall, sometimes in numbers.

*Ptilodontis palpina*, Linn. Larva may be found both at Askham and Strensall.

*Notodonta dictaea*, Linn. Generally distributed, but accounted scarce.

*N. dictæoides*, Esp. Commoner than the preceding species.

*N. dromedarius*, Linn. Occurs where there is plenty of birch and alder.

*N. trepida*, Fab. This fine species has been taken at Bishop Wood, and recently at Sandburn.

*N. chaonia*, W.V. Scarce, Sandburn and Bishop Wood.

*N. dodonæa*, W.V. Occasionally at Bishop Wood, but is rather common in the neighbourhood of Seaton Ross.

#### NOCTUÆ.

*Thyatira derasa*, Linn. Everywhere in the district, but somewhat scarce.

*T. batis*, Linn. Rather more plentiful than the preceding.

*Cymatophora duplaris*, Linn. With the type, var. *Obscura*, Tutt., occurs both at Askham Bog and Sandburn.

*C. fluctuosa*, Hüb. Exceedingly rare, York.

*C. diluta*, W.V. Abundant in oak woods.

*C. ridens*, Fab. Rare, Sandburn.

*Acronycta leporina*, Linn. Always of the var. *bradyoporina*, Tr. Askham Bog and Strensall Common.

*A. megacephala*, W.V. Scarce all through the district.

*A. alni*, Linn. This once reputed rarity is often found singly in the larval state. A specimen was taken recently in a garden quite in the centre of York.

*A. ligustri*, W.V. York specimens vary a good deal, and those bred from Everingham larvæ are almost unicolorous and very dark.

*A. rumicis*, Linn. The var. *salicis*, Curt., is often found at Askham Bog.

*A. menyanthidis*, Esp. The type of this species has almost disappeared in the district in favour of a beautiful black form, var. *suffusa*, Tutt. Sandburn, Askham Bog and Skipwith are its chief localities.

*Leucania phragmitidis*, Hüb. Askham Bog, rare.

*Xylophasia sublustris*, Esp. Askham Bog, not uncommon.

*X. polyodon*, Linn. The var. *infuscata*, White, appears everywhere with the type.

*X. scolopacina*, Esp. Believed to be extinct in the district. It was once known to be plentiful in woods near to Sutton-on-Derwent.

*Neuria saponariæ*, Esp. Askham Bog, scarce.

*Cerigo cytherea*, Fab. Generally distributed, but scarce.

*Luperina cespitis*, Hüb. Strensall and Skipwith.

*Mamestra abjecta*, Hüb. A single record is given to York, and two recent ones are from Skipwith.

*Apamea connexa*, Bork. Probably extinct now. Twenty-five years ago witnessed the last captures.

*A. unanimis*, Hüb. Chiefly Askham Bog.

*A. fibrosa*, Hüb. Often common at Askham ; also recorded at Skipwith.

*Miana literosa*, Haw. Sometimes plentiful at sugar, Skipwith.

*Celæna haworthii*, Curt. Strensall and Skipwith.

*Hydrilla palustris*, Hüb. The only county record is based on a capture of this great rarity in Compton's Wood, some four miles from York, in 1855, which was in the collection of T. H. Allis.

*Agrotis valligera*, W.V. Although associated with the coast, is often common at Sandburn and Skipwith.

*A. agathina*, Dup. Skipwith is the chief locality. Scarce at Strensall.

*A. præcox*, Linn. Once at York.

*A. raviga*, W.V. Scarce; Askham Bog, and a specimen at sugar a few years ago at Sandburn.

*A. pyrophila*, W.V. York (*Stainton's Manual*).

*Noctua rubi*, Vieweg. Varies in a remarkable manner at Askham Bog. The rosy var. *quadratum*, Hüb., occurs, as also two striking yellow forms, one being of a clear chrome yellow, var. *flava*, S. Wlkr.; the other a darker ochreous, var. *ochracea*, S. Wlkr. Both the latter have no other British habitat.

*N. neglecta*, Hüb. Scarce; Sandburn and Strensall.

*Tæniocampa leucographa*, W.V. Bishop Wood is the county headquarters of the species, where it is abundant. Very scarce elsewhere.

*T. opima*, Haw. Does not appear to be so common as formerly. Sandburn, Skipwith and Bishop Wood. It was added to the British list from specimens taken at York by T. H. Allis.

*T. populeti*, Fab. Abundant at Bishop Wood.

*T. gracilis*, W.V. Generally distributed. A form approaching var. *rosea-sparsus*, Tutt., is occasionally found at Bishop Wood.

*Orthosia suspecta*, Hüb. Abundant at Askham Bog and Sandburn. This is another species that was added to the British list by being first noticed at York by T. H. Allis.

*Xanthia aurago*, W.V. Formerly occurred at York.

*X. gilvago*, Esp. Scarce; Sandburn, Castle Howard, Skipwith and Everingham.

*Cirrædia xerampelina*, Hüb. This species is much commoner than was supposed before its larval habitats became known. The var. *unicolor*, Staud., occurs at Seaton Ross.

*Tethea subtusa*, W.V. Plentiful in the larval state at Bishop Wood in June; also on poplars in the suburbs of York.

*T. retusa*, Linn. Askham Bog, the only Yorkshire record.

*Euperia fulvago*, W.V. Has quite recently extended its range to the district. The first specimens noted were in 1903, at Sandburn, and since, it has appeared each year in larger numbers.

*Cosmia affinis*, Linn. Rare, York.

*Eremobia ochroleuca*, W.V. Also rare.

*Hecatera serena*, W.V. Never common; Seaton Ross and Sledmere.

*Dasypolia templi*, Thumb. Odd specimens at York are chiefly attracted by the electric lamps.

*Epunda lutulenta*, W.V. One record only, and that at York.

*E. viminalis*, Fab. Generally distributed, and varies from the silvery grey of the type to the dark leaden var. *obscura*, Staud.

*Aplecta occulta*, Linn. Of uncertain appearance, and accounted rare. A large number were taken in 1880 at Sandburn, but only odd specimens since. Recent records include Askham Bog, Skipwith and Seaton Ross.

*Hadena suasa*, W.V. The most interesting species of the genus, due to its variation. Common at Askham Bog and on the River Foss banks.

*H. contigua*, W.V. York, once recorded.

*H. genistæ*, Bork. York, in 1842.

*Cloantha solidaginis*, Hüb. An old record for Askham Bog was regarded as doubtful, until the capture of a specimen in 1885.

*Calocampa vetusta*, Hüb. Scarce, York and Skipwith.

*Cucullia chamomillæ*, W.V. Rare, York and Skipwith.

*Heliothis dipsacea*, Linn. York possesses two records.

*Hydrelia unca*, Linn. Askham Bog only.

*Plusia bractea*, W.V. York (*Stainton's Manual*).

*P. festucæ*, Linn. Common at Askham, scarce at Strensall and Sandburn.

*Amphipyra pyramidea*, L. Very rare, York.

*Toxocampa pastinum*, Tr. Askham Bog.

## MICRO LEPIDOPTERA.

The district does not appear to have been much worked, and very little can be stated as to its capabilities. A few interesting species have been recorded from Skipwith, such as a curious dwarf race of *Pterophorus acanthodactylus*, Hüb.

Among the Tortrices, a very interesting record is that of *Coccyx cosmophorana*, Tr., which has been regarded as almost exclusively a Scotch insect, but occurs sparingly in one locality at Skipwith. The local *Amphysa gerningana*, W.V., is plentiful in some seasons on Skipwith Common. Of the *Tineæ*, the most noteworthy are *Exæretia allisella*, Stn. (named after its discoverer, T. H. Allis, of York), amongst *Artemisia*, at Skipwith, and *Lithocolletis sorbi*, Frey., in leaves of mountain ash in one coppice.

## LAND AND FRESH-WATER MOLLUSCA.

BY THE REV. T. AINSWORTH BRODE, B.A.

ALTHOUGH nearly 120 species are recorded as occurring in Yorkshire, the subjoined list for the most part gives the names of those which are to be found in the neighbourhood of York. It is based on the lists of some few workers in the York and District Field Naturalists' Society, collated with a list published by Robert Miller Christy in *The Zoologist* for 1881. By this means the work of local naturalists has been crystallized and brought up to date. It may be useful, however, to note a few interesting species which occur beyond the immediate vicinity of the city. On the Castle Hill at Scarborough may be found *Cæcilioides acicula*, and in the district occurs *Amphipeplea glutinosa*, while *Hygromia fusca* is fairly common near the mere. *Clausilia rolphii* has recently been taken in Wensleydale ; this is apparently a new record. *Unio margaritifer* is reported as abundant in the Esk.

A glance at the list following will show that Askham Bogs and the Foss are two happy hunting-grounds for conchologists living or staying in York. The visitor may like to know further that a walk to Askham Bogs, which lie some two miles S.S.W. of York, may embrace Knavesmire Wood on the left and Hob Moor on the right. It will also take him through Dringhouses. In this district many species occur, *Acanthinula (Helix) lamellata* deserving special mention.

The walk along the Foss River should be begun at Yearsley Bridge, just past the Workhouse, and may be extended through Huntington (three miles) to Strensall (about five miles), where some ponds on the Common will repay a visit. If this walk seems too far, it is well to remember that there is a station at Strensall, and that the return journey may be made by train.

Most of the SLUGS occur in the district, excepting, of course, *Geomalacus maculosus*, and perhaps the *Testacella* genus, though *T. haliotidea* is recorded for vice-county York, S.E.

*Vitrina pellucida*.—Near Foss, and Tadcaster Road, York.

*Vitrea crystallina*.—York.

*V. cellaria*.—York.

*V. rogersi (glabra)*.—York.

*V. alliaria*.—Knavesmire Wood.

*V. nitidula*.—York.

*V. pura*.—Clifton Ings.

*V. radiatula*.—Strensall Road, and wood in Askham Bogs.

*Zonitoides nitidus*.—Near Foss, and Clifton Ings.

*Z. excavatus*.—York (Nova Scotia Wood).

*Euconulus fulvus*.—Askham Bogs.

— var. *alderi*.—Askham Bogs.

*Punctum pygmæum*.—Askham Bogs.

*Sphyradium edentulum* (*Vertigo edentula*).—Strensall Road, York ; and wood in Askham Bogs.

*Pyramidula rupestris*.—York.

*P. rotundata*.—York.

*Helicella virgata*.—York (Malton Road and Tadcaster Road).

*H. itala*.—Sherburn-in-Elmet.

*H. caperata*.—Dringhouses and Kilburn.

*H. cantiana*.—Dringhouses, Askham Bogs, Stutton.

*Hygromia granulata (sericea)*.—Knaresborough, Hawes.

*H. hispida* (and some varieties).—York.

*H. rufescens*.—Clifton, Dringhouses, Bishopthorpe.

*Acanthinula aculeata*.—Waterworks, York.

*A. lamellata*.—Askham Bogs.

*Vallonia pulchella*.—Askham Bogs.

*Helicigona lapicida*.—Kilburn.

*H. arbustorum* (with varieties).—Hob Moor, Dringhouses, Bishopthorpe, Kilburn.

*Helix aspersa* (with varieties).—Acomb and York.

*H. nemoralis* (in great variety).—Dringhouses, Stutton, Strensall.

*H. hortensis* (in great variety).—Hob Moor, Dringhouses.

— var. *roselabiata*.—Formerly found in York near Scarborough Bridge.

*Ena obscura* (*Buliminus obscurus*).—Stutton, Kilburn.

*Cochlicopa lubrica*.—York (Yearsley Bridge).

*Azeca tridens*.—York.

*Cæcilioides acicula*.—York (in Ouse drift), Boston Spa.

*Jaminia cylindracea* (*Pupa umbilicata*).—Museum Gardens, York ; and Knavesmire Wood.

— var. *albina*.—Knavesmire.

*J. muscorum*.—Knavesmire.

*Vertigo pygmæa*.—Strensall Road, York.

*Clausilia laminata*.—Askham Bogs, Stutton, Kilburn.

*C. bidentata*.—Askham Bogs, Stutton, Kilburn.

*Succinea putris*.—Foss and Poppleton Junction, York.

*S. elegans*.—Poppleton Junction, York ; Hob Moor and Askham Bogs.

*Carychium minimum*.—Askham Bogs and Clifton Ings, York.

*Segmentina nitida* (*Plan. lineatus*).—Askham Bogs (also formerly at Hob Moor).

*Planorbis fontanus* (*P. nitidus*).—Foss, Hob Moor and Askham Bogs.

*P. crista* (*P. nautilus*).—Hob Moor and Askham Bogs.

*P. albus* (and varieties).—Hob Moor, Askham Bogs and Foss.

*P. spirorbis*.—Clifton (near York), Foss (at Huntington), Askham Bogs.

— var. *ecarinata*.—Askham Bogs.

*P. vortex*.—Clifton Ings, Foss at Huntington and Strensall.

*P. carinatus*.—Foss, Hob Moor, and Askham Bogs.

*P. umbilicatus* (*P. complanatus*).—Foss, Hob Moor, and Askham Bogs.

*P. corneus*.—Foss, Hob Moor, and Askham Bogs.

*P. contortus*.—Foss (at Huntington), Hob Moor and Askham Bogs.

*Aplecta hypnorum*.—Askham Bogs and Clifton.

*Physa fontinalis*.—Hob Moor, Askham Bogs and Foss.

*Limnaea peregra* (with varieties).—Askham Bogs and Foss.

*L. auricularia*.—Foss and Ouse.

*L. stagnalis*.—Askham Bogs and Hob Moor; also Foss, and Strensall ponds.

*L. truncatula*.—Askham Bogs, Foss and Naburn.

*L. glabra*.—Askham Bogs, Strensall and Clifton Ings.

*L. palustris*.—Foss and Askham Bogs.

*Ancylus fluviatilis*.—Clifton Scope and Foss.

*Acroloxus lacustris*.—Askham Bogs and Foss.

*Pomatiopsis elegans* (*Cyclostoma elegans*).—Boston Spa.

*Neritina fluviatilis*.—Blue Bridge, York.

— var. *trifasciata*.—Blue Bridge, York, and Foss.

*Vivipara Vivipara*.—Foss.

(*V. conlecta* used to occur. Habitat now destroyed.)

*Bythinia tentaculata*.—Foss and Askham Bogs.

*B. leachi*.—Foss.

*Valvata piscinalis*.—Foss and Askham Bogs.

*V. cristata*.—Foss and Askham Bogs.

*Unio tumidus*.—Foss (rarely in Ouse).

*U. pictorum*.—Foss and Ouse.

— var. *radiata*.—Ouse (at Scarborough Bridge, York).

*Anodonta cygnea* (with varieties).—Foss, Hob Moor.

— var. *anatina*.—Foss and Ouse.

*Sphærium corneum* (with varieties).—Askham Bogs and Foss.

*S. rivicola*.—Foss (at Blue Bridge, York) and Ouse (Clifton Scope).

*S. pallidum*.—Foss (at Blue Bridge, York).

*S. lacustre*.—Hob Moor and Foss.

*Pisidium amnicum*.—Foss and Ouse, York.

*P. subtruncatum* (*P. fontinale*).—Foss and Ouse, York.

*P. pusillum*.—Hob Moor, Askham Bogs and Strensall.

*P. nitidum*.—Bootham Stray, York.

For those who have the time and opportunity to go further afield, it may be well to note that the Castle Howard district is rich in shells, and that Scarborough abounds in many well-known species besides those already specially mentioned as occurring there.

N.B.—The nomenclature (and, in the main, the arrangement) of the above list follows that of the Conchological Society's latest classification.

## METEOROLOGICAL NOTES.

J. EDMUND CLARK, B.A., B.Sc., F.R.MET.S.

THE systematic study of York weather appears to have begun at least as far back as 1800, for the late Professor J. Phillips, in his *Rivers, Mountains and Sea-coast of Yorkshire*, makes use of observations by Mr. Jonathan Gray, "for a quarter of a century from 1800." But the rain records seem to have run only from 1811 to 1824.

Unfortunately no trace of these records can be found. Possibly they may be among the Professor's papers.

In 1831 John Ford, Headmaster of the Friends' Boys' School, began records which have been kept at the School with fair regularity ever since. His own original records from 1832 were presented by him to the Yorkshire Philosophical Society. The first meeting of the Association was no doubt part inspiration for a work that he supervised almost to his death in 1874. He had also established observations at the Museum, and these, in 1872, became the official figures used by the Meteorological Office. Altogether the data for this district rank amongst the longest records in the country.

Climatically York must be considered rather relaxing; not over-dowered with sunshine; damp, without excessive rainfall; liable to haze and fog; relatively cold in winter, but with proportionately hot summer weather. In a word, we find in it a typical climate for a broad central plain, well removed from the sea, especially from the remoter western channels, yet not entirely beyond its influence.

Thanks to its open situation and careful sanitation, the city is healthy. This is the more creditable when we consider its antiquity, and the difficulties caused by a river less than seventeen feet above ordnance datum, though distant nearly 100 miles from open water.

The *barometric range* has been from 27.777 inches on December 8th, 1886, to 31.005 inches (at time of official record, but 31.02 at 3 p.m.) on January 9th, 1896. The mean value for the sixty years, 1841-1900, is 29.908 inches. The variation from decade to decade is only 0.07 inch, the higher readings being given in the first decade and the last. The values appear to be reliable throughout.

The *temperature range* is from -4° on December 26th, 1860, to 89° in July, 1873, and August, 1886; 88° has been recorded several times in the years since 1872, previous to which 87½°, in July, 1852, is the highest. The records in the earlier years were not in so open a spot, nor in a Stevenson screen. Zero was reached or passed also on January 3rd, 1853 (-3½°), and December 7th, 1879 (0°). Since then there have been records of 1° (January, 1880) and 2.7° (February, 1895). The coldest individual months were February, 1855 (mean, 25.9°), and January, 1881 (28.2°). The hottest were June, 1846 (64.9°); July, 1852 (65.0°); August, 1870 (64.3°); July, 1901 (65.8°); and July, 1905 (64.4°). The extreme range of monthly mean is 19.3° in February, since in 1893 the average was 45.2°. The corresponding range in July is 8.8° only. While, therefore, we find a range of 93° between the hottest *day* and coldest *night*, there is also a range of nearly 40° (39.9°) between the hottest and coldest *month*.

The mean monthly values given in the table for 1841-90 differ but slightly from the official values, 1871-1900, published in the *Monthly Weather Review* for 1901.

Taking the mean of the maximum and minimum thermometers for the whole year, the values are

1800-24 (Gray),  $48.2^{\circ}$ ; 1840-90,  $47.7^{\circ}$ ; 1871-1900 (official),  $48.0^{\circ}$ .

Frosts have occurred in every month but July, for which month the lowest record is  $40^{\circ}$ , several times repeated.

The *rainfall* is now known for eighty-nine years in all, 1811 to 1824 and 1831 to 1905. It gives a mean value for that period of 24.584 inches. The official total is higher, namely 24.84, for 1871-1900. This is too large, a result due mainly to the abnormal wetness of the seventies, especially in September (average fall, 3.36 inches), which was not offset, even, by the exceptional dryness of the late nineties. The respective annual means are 28.036 for 1871-80, and 24.326 for 1891-1900. Omitting the seventies, the range from decade to decade is only from 23.265 (1851-60) to 24.952 (1881-90). The possible variation is more strikingly shown by noting that the mean for 1850 to 1861 is 22.56 inches; for 1872 to 1882 it is 28.60 inches, or nearly 30% greater. The mean from 1831 to 1870 works out to 24.013.

The monthly table shows two distinct maxima, namely, in August and October. The former is due to the heavy rains of thunderstorms, the latter to the frequent rainy days. There is a strong tendency to relatively dry Augests at times of solar activity, and relatively dry Octobers during solar quiescence.

Records of *bright sunshine* have been kept since 1881, and the twenty years show a percentage of 29 out of the total possible. The hours per month range from 25 in December to 183 in May. These values are quite normal for north-eastern districts, the amount increasing to the south and west. The range is from 20% at Fort Augustus, to 40% at Hastings and Falmouth, and 44% in Jersey.

There is nothing that is particularly noticeable with regard to wind, except that the wind usually

prevalent (south-west) brings an unwelcome addition of grime from the West Riding manufactories to that of local production. In consequence of this, trees are blackened on the south-west aspect nearly as much on one side of the city as on the other.

The appended table of averages is based on varying periods, selected so as to give values most likely to represent the true means. Thus, for "rainfall," the full records are taken. But for rainy days the later records are selected, since previously to the sixties ideas appear to have been hazy as to what constituted a rainy day. Curiously, these average exactly one out of every two days.

### YORK WEATHER.

	Mean Bar. 1841 - 1900.	Thermometer.			Rain. 1811-24 and 1831 to 1900.	Rainy Days. 1861 - 1905	Bright Sunshine. 1881-1900.			
		Mean of Max. and Min. 1871 - 1900.	Absolute. 1841-1905.				Hours.	Percent.		
		Max.	Max.	Min.						
Jan.	29.87	37.5	58	-3½	1.73	16	30	12		
Feb.	.92	38.9	59	1½	1.55	15	59	22		
March	.89	41.1	68	8	1.61	16	107	29		
April	.91	45.9	76	22	1.61	14	134	32		
May	.95	51.0	81	24	1.85	13	183	37		
June	.97	57.6	88	32	2.23	12	172	34		
July	.92	60.5	89	40	2.61	14	175	35		
Aug.	.91	59.8	89	32	2.61	15	148	33		
Sept.	.93	55.5	84	28	2.21	15	118	32		
Oct.	.84	47.9	70	19	2.64	18	86	27		
Nov.	.88	42.6	65	14	2.12	18	38	15		
Dec.	.89	37.9	60	-4	1.98	17	25	11		
Year	29.91	48.0	(89)	(-4)	24.728	183	1,275	29		





7-B24419

GETTY RESEARCH INSTITUTE



3 3125 01257 1523

